

# ROSICRUCIAN FUNDAMENTALS

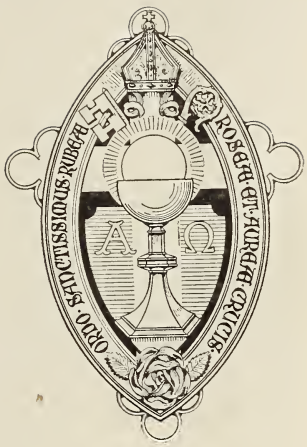
*A Synthesis of Religion,  
Science and Philosophy*

“Round about,  
Eyeing the light, on more than million thrones,  
Stood, eminent, whatever from our earth  
Has to the skies return'd. How wide the leaves,  
Extended to their utmost, of this ROSE,  
Whose lowest step embosoms such a space  
Of ample radiance !”

—*Dante.*



1002  
20



Authorized for use in Colleges and the  
Congregation of the Outer of the Societas  
Rosicruciana In America.

*Nihil Obstat ;*

NESTORIUS, X<sup>o</sup>, Praemonstrator.

PARACELSUS, IX<sup>o</sup>, Cancellarius.

*Attest ;*

REFICIO, IX<sup>o</sup>, Secretary General.

September, 1920.

New York City.

Fraunhofer's Lines

Regional Correspondences

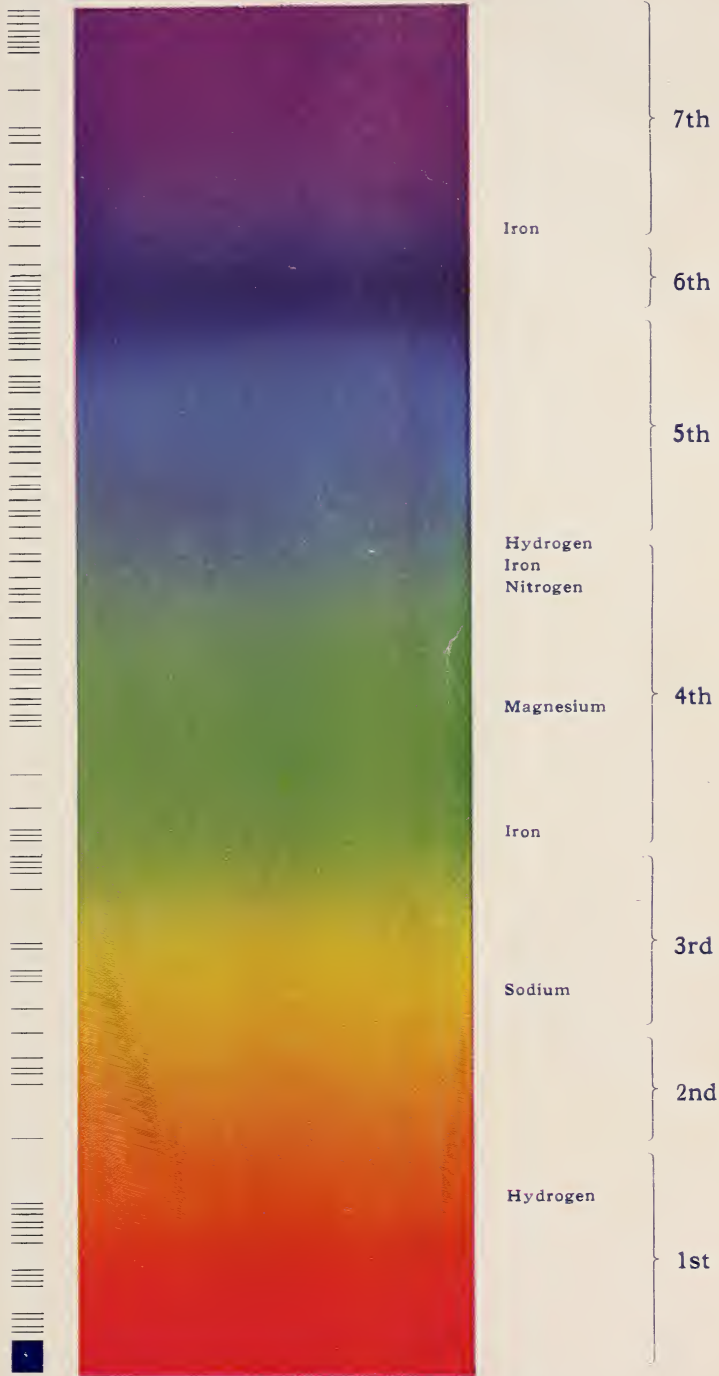


Plate 1 The Solar Spectrum.

(From color drawing by Mr. Raymond Gaydell)



# ROSI CRUCIAN FUNDAMENTALS


An Exposition of the Rosicrucian Synthesis  
of Religion, Science and Philosophy

---

---

In Fourteen Complete Instructions

By

K H E I 

*Author of*

*The Master's Word, Rosicrucian Symbology*  
*True Christmas Story, Greatest Birthday, etc.*



Authorized by the High Council  
of the  
Societas Rosicruciana In America



Done into Print and Published by the  
Flame Press, at the Sign of the Rose  
Bush, on Manhattan Isle, New York City,

M C M X X



BF1623  
R7P5

Copyrighted 1920,  
by the Societas Rosicruciana In America.

OCT -5 1920

© Cl. A 597669

TO THE FRATERS  
of the  
Societas Rosicruciana In America

whose kindly help and  
fraternal co-operation  
have made this work  
possible,

ROSICRUCIAN FUNDAMENTALS  
is inscribed as an act of Karma.





## PREFACE

In offering ROSICRUCIAN FUNDAMENTALS to members of Colleges and the Congregation of the Outer of the Societas Rosicruciana In America, as well as to all others who may be interested in what is commonly called "Occult Science", the author is mindful of the fact that at no time has the Rosicrucian Brotherhood ever put forth what might be termed an official text book of the philosophy of the Fraternity. Nor is it the purpose of ROSICRUCIAN FUNDAMENTALS to vacate the tradition. Any one with the slightest concept of what the "Rosicrucian Brotherhood" really is will readily understand that a permanent encyclopaedic text book would be an anomaly and an impossibility, for Rosicrucianism is a progressive Art—a synthesis of Religion, Science and Philosophy.

In the following pages will be found fourteen graded instructions, with questions pertaining to each Instruction. At first intended for the exclusive use of Fraters of the S.·R.·I.·A.·., it was deemed permissible and advisable in view of the rapidly increasing demand for the Rosicrucian teachings to place this work within the reach of all who seek a rational working hypothesis for every day life, based, not alone upon faith but upon the correlation of religious ideals and truths with demonstrable scientific data.

In the present volume, the first of a series in preparation, no attempt has been made to give an exegesis of the Three Principles, Salt, Sulphur and Mercury, the Alchemical processes of Putrefactio, Coagulatio, etc., nor of the esotericism of the Elements, all of which belong more properly to the Hermetic Section of the Fraternity and will be given a complete elucidation in a subsequent volume. Neither is there specific instruction regarding what is commonly called "personal development", for that belongs appropriately to the Alchemical Section or Secret Work of the Fraternity. It is the teaching of the Brotherhood that no system of personal development really worth while can possibly be given out publicly, for the very nature of the process makes it one of intensive, individual effort, and, like a physician's prescrip-

tion, guidance must be afforded each case according to the requirements of receptivity, temperament, psycho-intellectual faculties and personal characteristics.

It is quite probable that some students may feel that a more detailed explanation of some statements and principles contained in these Instructions would have been advisable, but the author has believed it more expedient in a work of this character to avoid philosophical dissertations and amplifications of various occult laws, for the reason that such amplifications are to be given in the more advanced treatises of Hermeticism and Alchemy in this same series. This is especially true regarding the Instruction on Rosicrucianism and Religion, where brief mention is made of the Rosicrucian Sacramental System, simply because the exegesis of that system will be given according to the Hermetic standpoint.

The primary purpose of this volume is two-fold; first, to show Man's lineage, constitution and his relative position in physical and cosmic environment; second to show forth the esoteric significance of the Incarnation of the Christ or Christos. This Incarnation is regarded by orthodox Christians as an accomplished fact of about three years' duration by impossible, supernatural and miraculous means. By Rosicrucians, the Incarnation is seen to be an accomplished fact of comparatively endless duration, at least so long as our planet endures; a process whereby Humanity contacts Divinity, and Divinity took upon itself Humanity and furthermore remains ever-present with all earth's inhabitants, making the "REAL PRESENCE" an actual fact in Nature.

These Instructions are offered to the members of the Fraternity and others with the approval of the Masters whose labors are not confined exclusively to any single school or cultus but are a part of the general operative plan of the Great Cosmic School directing our evolution.

In closing, the author desires to express his appreciation of the cordial co-operation and help extended by Dr. A. B. Allen, Messrs. Edw. Benedict, Jos. Berg, A. C. Grover, H. V. A. Parsell and David Shapiro, and to Miss G. E. S. Miller and Mrs. G. F. Plummer, for their assistance in editing, proof reading, illustrating and the manufacturing processes involved in the production of this book. Their constant and fraternal support has been a continuous inspiration.

# INDEX

---

Instruction I	Cosmology Rosicrucianism, Divinity and the Lineage of Man.	Page 1
Instruction II	Periods, Epochs and Revolutions. The Status of Man-in-the-making during the various Formative Processes in the Solar System.	Page 19
Instruction III	Man and His Bodies. Celestial Hierarchies, Vehicles of the Ego, Man-in-the-making.	Page 43
Instruction IV	The Four Kingdoms. Divisions of the Life Stream, Their Natures and Attributes.	Page 63
Instruction V	Reincarnation. The Life Cycle, Consciousness, Purgatory, Panoramas, Rebirth.	Page 89
Instruction VI	The Nebular Hypothesis. The Correlation of Occult Teachings with the Findings of Academic Science.	Page 113
Instruction VII	Father, Son, and Holy Ghost. Rosicrucian. Concept of the Orthodox Trinity; Jehovah.	Page 141
Instruction VIII	Terrestrial and Sub-Terrestrial. Vulcanism, Seismatics, Activities of the Planetary Regent.	Page 165
Instruction IX	Terrestrial and Sub-Terrestrial. (Cont.) The Physical Action of Vulcanism Defined. Notable Planetary Considerations.	Page 195
Instruction X	Lemuria and Atlantis. Early Transitional Forms. Karma, Laws of Consequence and Compensation; Guardian of the Threshold.	Page 221
Instruction XI	Formative Processes in Man. The Cell; its Development and Amplification. Transitions, Vestigial Remains, Basic Structure of Protoplasm. Organisms	Page 255
Instruction XII	Rosicrucianism and Religion. Agreement between Occult and Academic Science; Points of Contact, Development. The Kabalah. The Noble Eight-Fold Path of Buddhism. Concentration.	Page 291
Instruction XIII	The Human Temple Rosicrucianism and Freemasonry. Summary of the Teachings of both Fraternities as Applied to Man. Biblical and Physiological Analogies. The Temple of Solomon.	Page 317
Instruction XIV	Christian Rosencreutz. His Real and Alleged Connection with the Rosicrucian Order and His Status Therein. Details of the Rosencreutz Legend and Tradition.	Page 351
Addenda	Notes, Tables, Charts and References to Scientific Works.	Page 377

# ILLUSTRATIONS

Pl. 1, The Solar Spectrum	<i>Frontispiece</i>
Fig. 1. Macroprosopus and Microprosopus.....	Page 12
Fig. 2. Pithecanthropus, McGregor, 1914. ....	29
Fig. 3. The Heidelberg Jaw. ....	30
Fig. 4. The Piltdown Man. ....	31
Fig. 5. Neanderthal Man, McGregor. ....	32
Fig. 6. Lake Dwellers of the Old Stone Age. ....	32
Fig. 7. Cro-Magnon Man. ....	33
Fig. 8. Neolithic Man. ....	33
Fig. 9. Bison Hunt in the Vezere Valley. ....	34
Fig. 10. Cro-Magnon and Neanderthal Men. Knight. ....	34
Fig. 11. Rhinoceros Ticleorhineus. ....	36
Fig. 12. Hunting the Giant Cave Bear. ....	37
Fig. 13. Tertiary and Mauer Men. ....	38
Fig. 14. Diagrammatic Section of the Human Brain. ....	55
Fig. 15. Diagrammatic Chart showing Evolutional Positions of Man. ...	59
Fig. 16. Nature Forces Assisting in Breaking Up the Mineral Kingdom. Tree Growing Up Through a Rock. ....	70
Fig. 17. Beautiful Effect Produced, Showing Lines of Invisible Force made Visible by Freezing Water. ....	75
Fig. 18. Among the Giant Trees of California. ....	77
Fig. 19. Examples of Nebulae. ....	114
Fig. 20. The Great Nebula in Orion. ....	116
Fig. 21. The Planetoid Eros. ....	120
Fig. 22. A good example of a Comet. ....	122
Fig. 23. The Famous Willamette Meteorite. ....	124
Fig. 24. A "Close-up" of the Moon. ....	167
Fig. 25. Comparative sizes of the Planets. ....	168
Fig. 26. The Sun as seen from the Planets. ....	168
Fig. 27. Wonderful Art of the Ancient Indians. ....	171
Fig. 28. Interior of a Cave Temple. ....	173
Fig. 29. Diagram showing North Pole vertical to the Sun. ....	175
Fig. 30. Reversal of the Poles. ....	176
Fig. 31. Attainment of Comparative Equilibrium. ....	177
Fig. 32. Summit of Mt. Knaweoweo, Hawaii. ....	200
Fig. 33. Vesuvius. ....	203
Fig. 34. Stromboli. ....	205
Fig. 35. Diagrammatic Sectional View of the Earth. ....	209
Fig. 36. River Marks, St. Lawrence Basin. ....	222
Fig. 37. Typical New England Boulder Field. ....	223
Fig. 38. Great Boulder at Madison, N. H. ....	224
Fig. 39. Summit of Mount Washington, N. H. ....	224
Fig. 40. "Split Rock" Boulder, Mattapoisett, Mass. ....	225
Fig. 41. View of "Split Rock" showing Opening. ....	225
Fig. 42. Types of the Dinosaurs. ....	227
Fig. 43. Ornitholestes and Archaeopteryx. ....	229
Fig. 44. Triceratops. ....	230
Fig. 45. Trachodon. ....	231
Fig. 46. Ichthyosaurus Quadricissus. ....	232
Fig. 47. Ornithomimus. ....	233
Fig. 48. Ankylosaurus Magniventres. ....	233
Fig. 49. Monoclonius, (Restoration). ....	234
Fig. 50. Corythosaurus, (Restoration). ....	234
Fig. 51. Chromatin and Protoplasm contrasted. ....	236
Fig. 52. Types of the Human Hand. ....	242
Fig. 53. Unconformable Strata, Contorted Schist. ....	243
Fig. 54. Changes in the Earth's Crust. Watkin's Glen and Ausable Chasm. ....	244
Fig. 55. Map Showing North Polar Explanation of Mammalian Migrations. ....	245
Fig. 56. The Pentact. ....	247

Fig. 57.	Model Skeleton of Radiolarian. ....	Page 257
Fig. 58.	Lanugo. Embryo. ....	" 258
Fig. 59.	Lanugo. Russian Dog Face Man. ....	" 258
Fig. 60.	Chart of Changes in the Proportions of the Human Figure from Embryo to Maturity. ....	" 259
Fig. 61.	Chart showing Cell Division. ....	" 263
Fig. 62.	Type of the Average Human Foot, showing Gradual Deletion of Little Toe. ....	" 267
Fig. 63.	Natural Protective Features. Insecta. ....	" 268
Fig. 64.	A Solar Eclipse, showing Prominences. ....	" 269
Fig. 65.	How the Human Facial Angle was Evolved. ....	" 271
Fig. 66.	Sectional View of Human Bone. ....	" 272
Fig. 67.	Diagrammatic Section of Human Bone. ....	" 273
Fig. 68.	Mesa Verde Cliff Dwellings. ....	" 274
Fig. 69.	Casa Grande Ruins. ....	" 275
Fig. 70.	Spermatozoa. Recent and Dried. ....	" 276
Fig. 71.	Human Egg or Ovum. ....	" 277
Fig. 72.	Examples of Diatomaceae. ....	" 278
Fig. 73.	Glass Model of a Foraminifera. ....	" 279
Fig. 74.	Ripple Marks at Ausable Chasm. ....	" 280
Fig. 75.	Tide Water Pool Group, Nahant, Mass. ....	" 282
Fig. 76.	A Living Algal Pool Colony. ....	" 283
Fig. 77.	Tuatera. ....	" 285
Fig. 78.	Trilobite. ....	" 286
Fig. 79.	Chart showing Evolution of the Horse. ....	" 287
Fig. 80.	The "Sephiotic Tree of Life." ....	" 295
Fig. 81.	A Gnostic "Abraxas" Gem. ....	" 298
Fig. 82.	The Mandalay Buddha. ....	" 299
Fig. 83.	Rose Cross Tablet with Masonic and Alchemical Symbols. ....	" 318
Fig. 84.	Egyptian and Christian Temples showing Man as the Archetype. ....	" 322
Fig. 85.	The Great Pyramid. ....	" 324
Fig. 86.	Man Correlated to the Cross. ....	" 326
Fig. 87.	Ruins of Stonehenge, England. ....	" 328
Fig. 88.	The Ichthus; Early Christian Fish Sign. ....	" 343
Fig. 89.	Johann Valentin Andrea. ....	" 352
Fig. 90.	Jacob Boehme. ....	" 352
Fig. 91.	Dr. Robert Fludd. ....	" 354
Fig. 92.	Michael Maier. ....	" 354
Fig. 93.	Symbolic Title Page from Fludd's "Opera." ....	" 355
Fig. 94.	Elias Ashmole. ....	" 356
Fig. 95.	Dante Alighieri. ....	" 356
Fig. 96.	Engraved plate from "Macrocosmi Historia." ....	" 358
Fig. 97.	Portrait of Christian Rosencreutz. ....	" 365
Fig. 98.	Diagrammatic Presentment of the Tomb Symbolism. ....	" 370
Pl. 2.	Rosicrucian Tree of Life. ....	" 379
Fig. 99.	Our Solar Source. ....	" 380
Fig. 100.	The Great Sun Spot. ....	" 381
Fig. 101.	Overtured Fold, New York City. ....	" 390
Fig. 102.	Niagara River and Gorge. ....	" 391



# Rosicrucian Fundamentals.

## INSTRUCTION I.

### C O S M O L O G Y

#### ROSICRUCIANISM, DIVINITY AND THE LINEAGE OF MAN.

*EDITORIAL NOTE:—The following Instructions have been Copyrighted 1920, by Societas Rosicruciana In America. Permission to use matter therefrom will be cheertully given on application, providing due credit is given to the holder of the Copyright.*



**ASSUREDLY**, an Exposition of the Veritable Teachings of the Most Holy Order of the Ruby Rose and the Golden Cross is about to be made.



**Subject.**—The SUBJECT of Rosicrucianism is MAN, the HOMO.

**Object.**—The OBJECT of Rosicrucianism is the PERFECTION and IMPROVEMENT of Man, the SUMMUM BONUM.<sup>1</sup>

**Work.**—The WORK of Rosicrucianism consists of the Psychologic, Philosophic, and Scientific study of Man, Physical, Intellectual, and Spiritual—the MAGNUM OPUS.

**Art.**—The ART of Rosicrucianism consists of the application of the fruits of such study to the development of the Individual and the Race,—TRANSMUTATION.

**Cosmology.**—The COSMOLOGY of Rosicrucianism is explained through a series of COSMIC REGIONS, WORLD REGIONS, SUB-REGIONS, PERIODS, EPOCHS, REVOLUTIONS, and VEHICLES OF THE HUMAN EGO.

**How Rosicrucianism differs.**—The Rosicrucian Order differs from all other organizations in this important respect, that it centers all its research and study on Man alone, seeking through him the key to the Arcana of Nature.

**Exact knowledge.**—Exact knowledge is science based upon the perception and understanding of a truth. It should never be confounded with learning, which means the adoption of certain theories or opinions on the strength of more or less logical speculation.

**Proper study is Man.**—We cannot really KNOW anything except that which we are able to perceive with our external or internal senses. Thus the proper and ONLY study of mankind IS Man.

**Superior Creative Power.**—Man, the creature, indicates the existence of a Superior Creative Power, the Light and Substance of Life, from which emanated all Expression anterior to and including our Day of Manifestation.

**Divinity.**—This Superior Creative Power is comprehended by Rosicrucians as Divinity in absolute UNITY, but Triune in manifestation; One Substance, One Nature; expressing as the ABSOLUTE, THE SUPREME BEING, THE SOLAR GODS AND GOD.

**Intelligence.**—Man's intelligence presupposes the superior intelligence of his Creator, and as Man is the highest achievement of that Creative Power which he recognizes objectively as such—"Made in the image of his Creator" as he has been instructed,<sup>2</sup> Man can really KNOW very little outside of himself. Therefore—

**Greatest Work.**—TO KNOW HIMSELF is the GREATEST WORK of Man.

**Order, First Law.**—ORDER is the First Law of Nature.

**Intent. Purpose.**—The first requisite of Order is INTENT or PURPOSE.

**Universe and Man.**—Thus, if we eliminate Man from the Universe, the Universe would cease to exist, for no intent or purpose for its existence would continue to be manifest. The Universe IS, because MAN IS.

**Man sums up all.**—In other words; Man, summing up within himself the records of long eras of evolutionary processes, and containing within himself the latent potentialities for future unfoldment, expansion and development, comprises also within himself all worlds, subliminal, objective and subjective.

**UNO.**—The Creative Power or UNO, broadly speaking, becomes the Macrocosm or Greater World, and Man the Microcosm or Lesser World; the latter being the "image" or representation of the former, but on a smaller scale.



**Microcosm and Macrocosm.—**

Note—The writings of occultism are replete with references to both of these terms, but many such references seem extremely vague and obscure. The confusion of the terms “God, Deity, Creator and Absolute” make the definitions given extremely contradictory, as also the indiscriminate use of the terms “Universe, Heaven, World, Cosmos, and Chaos.” That the medieval Kabalists understood and differentiated them is certain, but the manner in which they have employed them in their writings leaves much to be desired. The usual expression, “the Microcosm of the Macrocosm” applies equally to the reflection of the Greater in the Lesser in all the kingdoms of Life and Creative Manifestation. The use in which these terms will be employed in the Rosicrucian teachings will be as follows:

MICROCOSM.....	Man
MACROCOSM.....	God. (Solar)
MICROPROSOPUS.....	Supreme Being (Universe)
MACROPROSOPUS.....	Absolute (Cosmos)

The following are some of the attributes of the differentiations as given in the Kabala and Hermetic Writings:

- Microcosm—
- The Lesser World, or Man.
  - One of the two Tetragrammatons.
  - The Heavenly Man, the Manifested Logos.
  - The Triangle in the Square; the Sevenfold Cube.
  - The Male-Female.
  - Man, a compound of Intellect and Matter, is the Microcosm of the Macrocosm or Great Universe.
  - Medieval Kabalists, following the Jewish, also called Man the Microcosm. Ancient philosophers called Earth the Microcosm of the Macrocosm, and Man the outcome of the two.
  - Macrocosm and Microcosm, the Universe and our Globe are the dual characters of the Universal Matrix of Cosmos personified.
  - Represented by a Pentagon. Pentagon within a Hexagonal Star, the Macrocosm.
  - Triad or Triangle becomes Tetraktys, the sacred Pythagorean Number; the Perfect Square and a six faced Cube on Earth.
- Macrocosm—
- The Greater World or God.
  - One of the two Tetragrammatons.
  - Absolutely Perfect Square or Tetraktys in a Circle.
  - AIN—the Negatively Existent.
  - God,—Universe; Solar System.<sup>3</sup>
  - Represented by a Hexagon.

**Microprosopus and Macroprosopus.—**

## Microprosopus—

Universe; Supreme Being.  
 Ateh—"Thou," Ani—"I" when speaking.  
 The Lesser Countenance.  
 Supernal Adam.  
 Six of the Sephiroth.  
 The Crown, Kether.<sup>4</sup>

## Macroprosopus—

The Greater Countenance.  
 The Vast Countenance.  
 The Great Face; in Chaldean a pure abstraction.  
 The Word or Logos.  
 Cosmos, in form of a Man.  
 Adam Kadmon.  
 Hua—"He," the Hidden and Concealed.

The whole ten Sephiroth represent the Heavenly Man or Primordial Being Adm Oilah. Adam Anilah. Arik Anpin.

Six and Five, Male and Female, Hexagon and Pentagon.

Hua, Ateh, and Ani—A—Aleph is the ending of one and the beginning of the other two, the connecting link as it were. It is the symbol of the UNITY, and the unvarying idea of the Divine operating through all these. But behind the Aleph in the name Hua are the letters ם and ן, the symbols of the numbers six and five.<sup>5</sup>

**Man's resemblance.**—The Microcosm of Man resembles the Macrocosm of the Universe in all its aspects except that of external form.

**Man's midway position.**—Thus Man occupies a unique place in the Arcana of Nature—he stands alone midway as it were—between the long ages past when his involitional development began, and the untold ages to come, when his evolutional processes shall be accomplished.

**Man, the key to all worlds.**—Rosicrucians therefore regard Man as the embodiment of all conditions objective and subjective, and find in him the key to worlds terrestrial and celestial, material and spiritual, seen and unseen.

Our first contemplation of Man, objectively, reveals three conditions:

1. A visible organism.
2. Evidence of an actuating power or motive force.
3. Evidence of a directing intelligence operating from within.

**Body, Life, Mind.**—The first of these conditions we commonly describe as the BODY, the second as the LIFE and the third as the MIND. Careful analysis shows the error of these concepts.

**Spirit—Principle.**—Rosicrucians teach that MATTER is the external manifestation of an internal or invisible "PRINCIPLE." That "Principle" is SPIRIT.

Everything that exists, visibly or invisibly, objectively or subjectively, MUST HAVE SUBSTANCE.

**Force.**—The modus of its operation is FORCE.

**Matter, crystallized Spirit.**—MATTER may be termed the external manifestation of SPIRIT substance, in other words, CRYSTALLIZED SPIRIT.

**Spirit, sublimate Matter.**—SPIRIT may be regarded as Matter, so sublimated and etherealized as to be invisible and intangible—PRIMORDIAL SUBSTANCE.

**Grades of Density.**—As there are many grades of density in Matter, so there are many grades of density in Spirit.

**Life.**—The FORCE by which and through which SPIRIT manifests itself as Matter or through the various so-called phenomena of Nature, is LIFE.

Therefore, LIFE may be termed the visible expression of SPIRIT POWER.

**Universal Principle.**—Rosicrucians define it as the UNIVERSAL PRINCIPLE, the activity of UNIVERSAL SPIRIT OR PRIMORDIAL SUBSTANCE.

Note—Life is present everywhere, in a stone or plant as well as in an animal or Man, and there is nothing in Nature which is entirely destitute of Life; because all things are a manifestation of the ONE LIFE or ONE FORCE which fills the Universe. In some bodies the activity of Life is so slow that it may be looked at as dormant or latent, in others it is rapid; but a form which is deserted by the Life Principle ceases to exist as a form.

ATTRACTION, COHESION, GRAVITATION, etc., are all manifestations of Life, while in animals this activity progresses toward a state of self-consciousness which culminates (is perfected) in Man. To suppose that Life is a product of the mechanical or physiological activity of an organism is to mistake effects for causes, and causes for effects.<sup>6</sup>

**Man a Spiritual Being.**—Man is an ABSOLUTELY SPIRITUAL BEING, who by the operation of SPIRIT POWER, UNIVERSAL PRINCIPLE OR LIFE; has, by a specific process, CRYSTAL-

LIZED his external substance into a form of MATTER known as his DENSE or PHYSICAL ENVELOPE or BODY.

**Involution.**—This “specific process” is INVOLUTION.

Involution is defined as the Descent of Spirit into Matter, or the process of crystallization whereby Spirit attains a vehicle for visible manifestation, expression, or contact with other objective conditions.

\* \* \*

**Universal Substance.**—It has been written that everything that exists, either visibly or invisibly, must have substance. The one reality that can fulfil the requirements of this substance is Spirit. Therefore Spirit is the UNIVERSAL SUBSTANCE. It is the Cosmic Ocean in which all things from Universes and Solar Systems to Man are but its crystallized forms.

**Absolute and Man, both Spirit.**—As the ABSOLUTE exists, it must be Spirit. We are told by theologians that “God is a Spirit.”<sup>7</sup> The ABSOLUTE and Man, both being spirit, are therefore of the same substance, but vastly differentiated. Man being the Creature, leaves the primacy to the ABSOLUTE or Creator. What, then, is the differentiation?

**Absolute, an Essence.**—The ABSOLUTE is the essence of all potentialities in the Cosmic Root Substance. Man is the individualized, self-conscious, differentiated Spirit at the other extreme of the long line of Spiritual Hierarchies, Angelic Hosts, Logoi, Gods of Solar Systems, and the Lesser Spiritual Powers which intervene.

**Divinity and Humanity.**—Man is thus Divinity incarnated in Humanity. The purpose of such incarnation will be made manifest in the Rosicrucian Instruction.

**Man’s Mission.**—Man has a Mission of Cosmic Mediumship; through him Divinity becomes Human. Through Man again, Humanity becomes Divine.

**Boundless Being.**—The ABSOLUTE is the One Existent, beyond exact comprehension, impossible of tangible manifestation to mortals, conceived as BOUNDLESS BEING or the ROOT OF EXISTENCE. Its condition of existence is beyond all known cosmic planes, regions or worlds.

**Supreme Being.**—From the ABSOLUTE proceeded the Supreme Being at the beginning of the Day of Cosmic Manifestation, under the Threefold Aspects of—

**Power, Word, Motion.**—1. Power—which “thinks out”<sup>8</sup>

2. Word—the “only begotten”<sup>9</sup> which  
“moulds Cosmic Root Substance”<sup>10</sup>

### 3. Motion — which prepares Cosmic Root Substance<sup>11</sup>

**Great Architect of the Universe.**—This SUPREME BEING is the one known to Rosicrucians and Freemasons as the "GREAT ARCHITECT OF THE UNIVERSE."

From the Supreme Being these three aspects manifest as follows:

From the first aspect, Power, proceeds the WORD, the second aspect. It is the VERBUM, WORD, LOGOS, or "SON," but not the personality known as Jesus, or the principle known as "Christ" the "Christos."

This Word, or Son, is the manifested intelligence of the ABSOLUTE through the Supreme Being and the eternal cause of all subjective and objective existence subsequent to the primal activities of the ABSOLUTE and the Supreme Being.

This is the Word "begotten of the Father before all worlds"<sup>12</sup> "which brought all forms of life into being"<sup>13</sup> and without which "was not anything made that was made."<sup>14</sup>

From the first and second aspects proceeds the third aspect, Motion.

**Seven Great Logoi.**—From the Supreme Being proceed what are known as the Seven Great Logoi. The Supreme Being and the Seven Great Logoi occupy what is known as the First Cosmic Region.

**Chaos.**—The ABSOLUTE lies or exists immeasurably beyond this First Cosmic Region in what Rosicrucians term CHAOS, the Universal Matrix or Womb of Nature.<sup>15</sup>

**Abyss.**—That condition of Chaos between the ABSOLUTE and the First Cosmic Region is called the "ABYSS."

**Regions.**—There are Seven Cosmic Regions.

**First Cosmic Region.**—In the First Cosmic Region the Seven Great Logoi bring into manifestation and direct what are known as "HIERARCHIES" which diffuse and differentiate in sevenfold progression through the succeeding Regions. Thus in the

**Second Cosmic Region**, there are forty-nine Hierarchies.

**Third Cosmic Region**, three hundred and forty-three Hierarchies.

**Fourth Cosmic Region**, two thousand four hundred and one.

**Fifth Cosmic Region**, sixteen thousand eight hundred and seven.

**Sixth Cosmic Region**, one hundred and seventeen thousand six hundred and forty-nine.

**Seventh Cosmic Region**, eight hundred and twenty-three thousand, five hundred and forty-three.

Among these Hierarchies, expressing in unity the Seven Great Logoi as they diffuse through the various Cosmic Regions, we find in the seventh Cosmic Region, in its highest sub-division, the Gods of the various Solar Systems, each of these Cosmic Regions having seven sub-divisions.

**God of our Solar System.**—In the latter, the highest sub-division of the Seventh Cosmic Region dwells the God of our own Solar System.

**His Triune Aspect.**—Our God, as well as the Gods of all other solar systems, expresses in triune aspect—WILL, WISDOM and ACTIVITY.

**When God Creates.**—When a God among these Hierarchies decides in his ineffable wisdom to bring another Solar System into being, he causes his aura to occupy a definite position in Cosmos, vivifying each individual atom of the Primordial Substance or Cosmic Root Substance in the location selected, with his own Life or Universal Principle, thus producing activity throughout the entire atomic mass, and differentiating the vibrations of this particular mass from the generalized vibrations of chaos and cosmos about it. This isolates in space, as it were, the entire future solar structure-to-be. Primordial Substance, or Spirit, is negative in its latency. The Creating God is a manifestation of the positive nature or polarity of the Supreme Being and the Absolute.

**Attraction.**—By attraction, the Creating God draws upon the Primordial Spirit or Substance adjacent to his chosen position, and this added to the Cosmic Root Substance of that position, causes the latter to become denser than the Substance generally diffused through the Cosmos, between the various already existent solar systems.

**Vibration.**—Every atom of this denser or intensified Cosmic Root Substance is then endowed with a phase of the God-consciousness which regulates its activity according to His intent, in varying degrees of vibration.

**Hyle.**—This differentiated vibration establishes the World-Regions to be, in the new solar-system-in-the-making. It was known as HYLE by the ancient Rosicrucians, meaning Primordial Matter containing the germs of everything that was to come into objective existence.<sup>16</sup>

**Body of God.**—These World-Regions, when constituted and differentiated, compose in a broad sense the “Body of God,” and

continue to exist so long as He continues his creative activity. They are not separated by Space, nor are they or any part of the nascent system an instantaneous creation.

**World Regions.**—These World-Regions are conditions of Primordial or Cosmic Root Substance, intensified according to the differentiated states of vibration, but all interpenetrating one another, in the same position in Space or Cosmos.

**Specialized Dimensions.**—They are thus “specialized dimensions in Space.”

**Position in Space.**—The highest of these Regions may occupy the same position in Space as the lowest. Highest in this case means the most rarefied. Lowest means the densest. The higher or finer Regions are developed first, then by the process of crystallization already mentioned, one after another of these Regions attains greater density until the ultimate of material expression or visible Matter is reached.

**Involution.**—Down to this point, Involution has been actively bringing the Universal Principle or Life deeper and deeper into Matter for the purpose of building concrete forms, the different Regions forming connecting links with the creating God and Primordial Spirit, the Substance from which these forms are constructed and crystallized.

**Evolution.**—From the ultimate of material expression, Evolutionary processes return the Universal Principle or Life to its Source.

**When Regions end.**—The necessity for the existence of the denser Regions then ceases. The higher, finer Regions are the first developed and the last to be de-materialized. When the Universal Principle in any Region has accomplished all that the creating God designed that Region for, the existence of that Region is ended. This is accomplished by the cessation of that particular vibration or activity within the Body of God.

**Creation not an instantaneous act.**—This in general is the cosmic scheme of creative activity in the establishment of a solar system. As stated, it is not an instantaneous creation.

**Central Flame.**—Rosicrucians conceive of the creating God as the Central Flame, or Central Spiritual Sun of our Solar System.

**Great Central Flame.**—They regard the Supreme Being as the Great Central Flame or Sun of our Universe.

**Nebular Hypothesis.**—Occult science agrees with Physical science in the application of the Nebular Hypothesis to the Creative Scheme, insisting, however, upon the directing of the nebular ac-

tivities by the wisdom and intelligence of the Hierarchies described.

**Virgin Spirit.**—Prior to the beginning of Manifestation, God, our Central Flame or Spiritual Sun, embodies within Himself the Universal Principle or Life as VIRGIN SPIRIT.

**Differentiated.**—At the commencement of Manifestation, God differentiates within Himself this Virgin Spirit as sparks from His own Flame, each of which is destined to become an individual Ego or Flame; each endowed with the germ of His Will, Wisdom and Activity.

**Unfoldment.**—In each spark is enfolded the latent possibilities of the Divine Father, which possibilities are unfolded into dynamic powers during the involutory and evolutionary processes, while the Divine Will element renders each spark capable of instituting new departures in constructive development.

**The Physical Sun.**—The first Manifestation of this Central Spiritual Sun is the projection or crystallization of the Physical Sun of the Solar System-to-be. This Physical Sun becomes the parent of the lesser bodies in its System or Family Group.

**The vehicle of the Solar God.**—As the student progresses he will later observe that the Physical Sun is the Physical or lowest vehicle of the God of our Solar System, just as the Physical Body is the lowest or densest vehicle of the individual Ego in Man.

**Planets.**—The lesser bodies or planets in a solar system are necessary, inasmuch as the differentiated states of vibration require specialized conditions for the degree of manifestation each is destined to produce or accomplish.

From the Physical Sun are projected rays of differentiated spirit substance as nebulous matter, at varying distances from the Sun, within the confines of the Cosmic Space designated by the creating God.

**Condensation.**—Those farthest out in this Space naturally maintain vibrations on a much lower scale than those nearest to the Sun. The nebulae thus operating gradually condense, and by centripetal and centrifugal motion crystallize surfaces, spherical, in varying degrees of density.

**Physical World Region.**—These bodies or planets thus represent the development of Primordial Matter into visible or physical expression and form the core or center of the Physical World Region, the Regions before referred to enfolding and interpenetrating them all.

**Earth.**—Consider the case of our own planet, Earth or Terra.



The Supreme Being and the Seven Great Logoi occupy the First Cosmic Region. There are seven of the Cosmic Regions. The Seventh is occupied by the Gods of the various Solar Systems.

**Regions.**—This Seventh Cosmic Region consists of Seven World Regions, each of which is again divided into Seven Sub-Regions.

**First World Region.**—The First World Region is the World of the Solar God.

**Second World Region.**—The Second World Region is the World of the Virgin Spirits—the Cosmic Root Substance differentiated within the Body of God, before entering the descent into dense matter.

**Third World Region (First Aspect, Threefold Spirit).**—The Third World Region is the World of Divine Spirit, wherein Virgin Spirit begins its pilgrimage through Matter. Here it is endowed with Divine Consciousness, the highest spiritual influence in Man-to-be. This Divine Consciousness, however, is NOT Self-Consciousness, which is a faculty only attained by evolution. This attainment is one of the purposes referred to as a reason for the Incarnation of Divinity in Humanity, or the Descent of Spirit into Matter. Here originates the first aspect of the Threefold Spirit in Man-to-be.

**Fourth World Region (Life Spirit, Second Aspect, Threefold Spirit).**—The Fourth World Region is the World of Life Spirit with seven sub-regions like the foregoing. It is the condition wherein originates the Second Aspect of the Threefold Spirit of Man-to-be.

**Fifth World Region (World of Thought).**—The Fifth World Region is the World of Thought, with seven sub-regions in two principal divisions.

**Abstract and Concrete.**—The higher of the two divisions is known as the Division of ABSTRACT THOUGHT, and the lower as the Division of CONCRETE THOUGHT.

**Thought Divisions.**—The Seventh, Sixth and Fifth sub-regions belong to the Division of Abstract Thought.

**Seventh Sub-Region (Form).**—In the Seventh sub-region is developed the germinal concept of FORM, in Mineral, Vegetable, Animal and Human types.

**Sixth Sub-Region (Life).**—In the Sixth originates the germinal concept of LIFE for Vegetable, Animal and Human Forms.

**Fifth Sub-Region (Desire and Emotion; Third Aspect, Threefold Spirit).**—In the Fifth originates the germinal concept of DE-

SIRE and EMOTION for Animal and Human vivified forms; the development of the Third Aspect of the Threefold Spirit of Man-to-be.

The Fourth, Third, Second and First sub-regions apply to the Division of Concrete Thought.

**Fourth Sub-Region (Archetypal Forces).**—The Fourth sub-region is that of ARCHETYPAL FORCES and the MIND STUFF of Man-to-be.

This sub-region is the point through which Spirit or Primordial Substance becomes reflected in Matter.

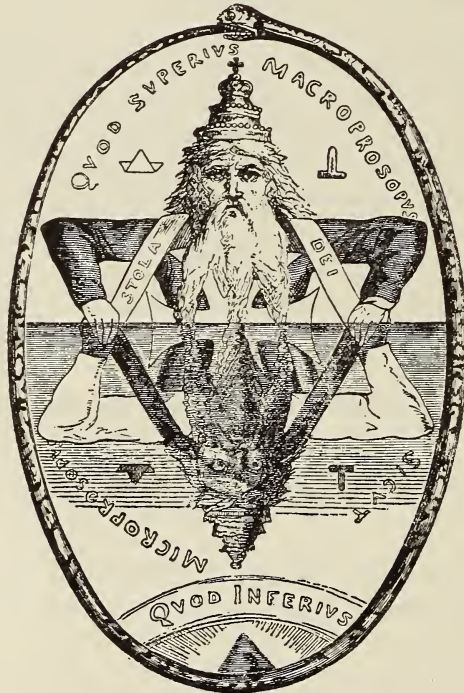


FIG. 1

MACROPROSOPUS AND MICROPROSOPUS. THE GREAT SYMBOL OR DOUBLE TRIANGLE OF SOLOMON. THE TWO ANCIENTS OF THE KABBALAH. THE GOD OF LIGHT AND THE GOD OF REFLECTIONS. MERCY AND VENGEANCE. SPIRIT REFLECTED IN MATTER.

**Third Sub-Region (Archetypes of Desire, Aerial Sub-Region).**—The Third sub-region is that of the ARCHETYPES OF DESIRE AND EMOTION, SOMETIMES called the AERIAL SUB-REGION.

**Second Sub-Region (Archetypes of Pulsation, Oceanic Sub-Region).**—The Second sub-region is that of the ARCHETYPES OF UNIVERSAL PULSATION, or the UNIVERSAL ACTIVITY OF

the LIFE PRINCIPLE. It is known to occultists as the OCEANIC sub-region.

**First Sub-Region (Continental Sub-Region, Archetypes of Form).**—The First sub-region is known to Rosicrucians and occultists as the CONTINENTAL sub-region, as it contains the Archetypes OF ALL FORM.

**Archaeus.**—The Third, Second and First sub-regions constitute what is known to Rosicrucians as ARCHAEUS, the great invisible storehouse of Nature, wherein the characters of all things are contained and preserved.<sup>17</sup>

**Mind.**—The last four sub-regions are all concerned with the domain of Mind.

**Sixth World Region.**—The Sixth World Region is the AS-TRAL WORLD, likewise with its seven sub-regions.

**Seventh Sub-Region (Soul).**—The Seventh sub-region is that of SOUL POWER.

**Sixth Sub-Region.**—The Sixth is that of SOUL LIGHT.

**Fifth Sub-Region.**—The Fifth is that of SOUL LIFE.

These three soul groups operate through the power of attraction.

**Fourth Sub-Region (Feeling, Neutral Region, Interest and Indifference).**—The Fourth sub-region is that of FEELING, which may be said to be the NEUTRAL division, as it is the division of demarcation as to INTEREST OR INDIFFERENCE, between the Powers of Attraction in the Soul Group and the Powers of Repulsion in the next three lower sub-regions.

**Third Sub-Region (Wishes).**—The Third sub-region is that of WISHES.

**Second Sub-Region (Impressionability).**—The Second sub-region is that of IMPRESSIONABILITY.

**First Sub-Region (Passion).**—The First sub-region is that of PASSION.

These three sub-regions are the scene of operation of the powers of Repulsion.

**Seventh World Region.**—The Seventh World Region is the PHYSICAL WORLD, with its appropriate seven sub-regions in two principal divisions.

**Etheric Division.**—The higher of the two principal divisions is the ETHERIC DIVISION. This includes the Seventh, Sixth, Fifth and Fourth sub-regions as follows:

**Seventh Sub-Region (Reflecting Ether).**—The Seventh sub-region is that of the REFLECTING ETHER, wherein trained students may read in the MEMORY OF NATURE.

**Sixth Sub-Region (Light Ether).**—The Sixth sub-region is that of the LIGHT ETHER which forms the medium for sense perception of the Man-to-be.

**Fifth Sub-Region (Life Ether).**—The Fifth sub-region is that of the LIFE ETHER, wherein operate the forces for the propagation of the species of Man.

**Fourth Sub-Region (Chemical Ether).**—The Fourth sub-region is the region of the CHEMICAL ETHER, wherein the forces of Assimilation and Excretion hold sway.

**Chemical Division.**—The lower of the two principal divisions is the CHEMICAL DIVISION, with the three remaining sub-regions.

**Third Sub-Region (Gases).**—The Third sub-region is that of GASES.

**Second Sub-Region (Liquids).**—The Second sub-region is that of LIQUIDS.

**First Sub-Region (Solids).**—The First sub-region is that of SOLIDS.

Now Rosicrucians designate Matter as follows: SPIRIT, Primordial or Cosmic Root Substance is called—

**Materia Prima.**—MATERIA PRIMA, A'Wasa.

In manifestation this is distinguished as

- a Materia Remota.
- b Materia Proxima.
- c Materia Ultima.

Applying this to the preceding World Regions and their respective sub-regions, we find that:

From the ABSOLUTE, the UNO or O, we come through Materia Prima to the World of Divine Spirit.

**Threefold Spirit.**—The world of Divine Spirit, the World of Life Spirit, and the Abstract Division of the Thought World which develops the Human Spirit, combine to bestow upon Man-to-be his Threefold Spirit, composed of the Divine Element, Atma; the Life Element, Buddhi; and the Human Element, Manas.

**Spirit Man (Life Spirit).**—These are described by some occultists as the Spirit Man (Divine), Life Spirit (Life), and the Spirit Self (Human).

**Spirit Self.**—This Threefold Spirit is constituted from Materia Remota, which is Materia Prima in the stages of Involution.

**Threefold Body.**—Continuing the process of Involution or crystallizing, somewhat as does the crustacean its soft tissue into the outer hard, protective shell, this Threefold Spirit projects from itself the THREEFOLD BODY of Man.

**Astral Body.**—From the Human Spirit is developed the **ASTRAL BODY**, through the operation of the forces in the Astral World Region.

**Etheric Body.**—From the Life Spirit is developed the **ETHERIC BODY**, called by some the "Vital" Body, through the use of the forces in the Etheric Division of the Physical World Region.

**Physical Body.**—From the Divine Spirit is developed the **PHYSICAL BODY** by virtue of the forces of the Chemical Division of the Physical World.

**The Shadow.**—Just as a shadow is projected from an object whose farthest surface is illumined, so this Threefold Body is really the shadow of the Threefold Spirit, for the Material is evanescent, and only the purely Spiritual forms are destined to final persistence, as we shall learn later on.

This Threefold Body is expressed by *Materia Proxima*, or Matter in the apparent stages of Involution-Evolution.

**Threefold Soul.**—In the process of evolution, the Threefold Spirit transmutes the assimilated experience of the Threefold Body into an **ESSENCE**, which it extracts therefrom, as the **THREEFOLD SOUL**, described as the—

- a Conscious or Sentient Soul.
- b Intellectual or Rational Soul.
- c Self-conscious or Emotional Soul.

The Threefold Soul is expressed as *Materia Ultima*.

"Soul is that which gives knowledge duration."<sup>18</sup>

"Soul is the Ego, not yet conscious of its spiritual Nature."<sup>19</sup>

"Soul is the Ego revealed in its real nature as the Hidden Central Flame of the Man. It emerges unveiled, a drop from the ocean of primordial essence."<sup>20</sup>

"The Divinity dwelling in Man speaks, when the Soul recognizes itself as an Ego. The Ego is related to God as a drop of water to the ocean."<sup>21</sup>

**Mind.**—All these Threefold conditions are united by the **LINK OF MIND**.

"Thou something from Nothing, in Thee, I am I."<sup>22</sup>

**Rosicrucian Motto.**—10—1, the Uno. "Omnia ab Uno" the Rosicrucian motto.

The Threefold Spirit thus projected and manifested in the attainment of individuality and self-consciousness, becomes the Ego, which is nourished by the Soul Essence extracted from the Threefold Body as its pabulum.

This in brief form is the lineage of Man.

It will be seen that from the ABSOLUTE to Man, everything is the same Cosmic Root Substance in varying forms of Manifestation, expression and projection, ONE SOURCE, ONE SUBSTANCE, ONE GOAL.

### QUESTIONS ON INSTRUCTION No. 1

1. What is to be made in these Instructions on the Rosicrucian Philosophy?
2. What is the SUBJECT of Rosicrucianism?
3. What is the OBJECT of Rosicrucianism?
4. What is the WORK of Rosicrucianism?
5. What is the ART of Rosicrucianism?
6. How is Rosicrucian Cosmology explained?
7. How does the Rosicrucian Order differ from all others?
8. What is exact knowledge?
9. What does Man, the Creature, indicate?
10. How is the Superior Creative Power comprehended by Rosicrucians?
11. What is Man's greatest work?
12. What is the first law of Nature?
13. What is the first requisite or intent of Order?
14. What would result if Man were eliminated from the Universe?
15. What does Man sum up?
16. What is said regarding the teachings and writings of occultism concerning Microcosm and Macrocosm?
17. What are some of the attributes of the differentiations as given in the Kabala and Hermetic writings.
18. What do the whole ten Sephiroth represent?
19. How does the Microcosm Man resemble the Macrocosm of the Universe?
20. Explain Man's midway position in the Arcana of Nature.
21. What three conditions does Man display?
22. What do Rosicrucians teach regarding Matter?

23. Explain the difference between Matter and Spirit.
24. What is Life?
25. Give the Rosicrucian definition of Universal Principle.
26. In what way is Man said to be a Spiritual Being?
27. What is said of both the Absolute and Man?
28. In what way is the Absolute to be considered an Essence?
29. What is Man, in view of the foregoing?
30. What is Man's Mission?
31. How do we conceive of the Absolute?
32. What first proceeds from the Absolute?
33. By what name is this Being known to Rosicrucians and Freemasons?
34. What are the three aspects of the Supreme Being?
35. What proceed from the Supreme Being?
36. What is the region occupied by the Supreme Being and the Creative Logoi?
37. Where does the Absolute exist?
38. What is the Abyss?
39. How many Cosmic Regions are there?
40. Name them, and the Hierarchies that diffuse through them.
41. Where dwells the God of our Solar System?
42. Name his Threefold aspects.
43. How does He create?
44. How does He operate through Attraction?
45. How through Vibration?
46. What is Hyle?
47. What constitutes the Body of God?
48. What are World Regions? (Specialized dimensions in space.)
49. Give their relative positions in space.
50. What is the function of Involution?
51. What is the function of Evolution?
52. How is a world region brought to an end?
53. Is creation an instantaneous act?
54. What is the Rosicrucian concept of the Central Flame?
55. What is Virgin Spirit?
56. What are the possibilities of unfoldment in Virgin Spirit?
57. What is our Physical Sun?

58. What is the purpose of the Planets?
59. What do the Planets or Bodies represent?
60. Apply the Cosmic and World Regions to our Earth.
61. Give the known sub-divisions in each world plane or region.
62. Give the ethers and the functions of each ether.
63. How do Rosicrucians designate Matter?
64. What is the Threefold Spirit?
65. How is it defined by some occultists?
66. What is the Threefold Body?
67. What is the Threefold Soul?
68. How is Mind described? (As a link.)
69. What is the Rosicrucian Motto?
70. What does this Lineage of Man show forth?

For chart of World Regions see Appendix.





## INSTRUCTION II.

### PERIODS, EPOCHS, AND REVOLUTIONS.

THE STATUS OF MAN-IN-THE-MAKING DURING THE VARIOUS  
FORMATIVE PROCESSES IN THE SOLAR SYSTEM.

---

**Stages of Earth.**—In this Instruction we shall consider the stages through which the Earth has passed during the present Day of Manifestation. The Cosmic and World Regions which have been described in the previous Instruction apply equally to all the planets in our Solar System; thus, in studying the conditions of our own Earth, we are also studying those of our planetary neighbors, with differentiations as to density, velocity, chemical composition, etc., due to their different positions in "Space," at varying distances from their parent Sun.

**"Planes."**—We do not as a rule use the term "Plane" in these Instructions, although it is frequently employed by legitimate occult bodies, for it is apt to cause misinterpretation of the idea it represents. Many students interpret the "Planes" of occult science as being superimposed, one upon another, whereas just the opposite is meant. The term "Region" answers the purpose much better. It must be borne in mind whenever the term "Plane" is used, that it means a "condition" or "state" and the plural usage is that they interpenetrate each other, just as one may mix several gases of different specific gravities and densities within the same space. Thus the Cosmic Regions interpenetrate each other and all the World Regions as well.

**Seven Periods.**—In the previous Instruction we outlined the lineage and descent of Man to the Physical World Region, or rather to the Chemical Division of the same, with its three sub-regions. In this descent Man has passed through varying degrees of developing consciousness which will be fully described in the Instruction on Consciousness. These varying degrees of consciousness have been and will be accomplished in the course of specific periods of evolution. There are seven of these periods.

- 1 The Saturn Period,
- 2 The Sun Period,
- 3 The Moon Period,
- 4 The Earth Period,
- 5 The Jupiter Period,
- 6 The Venus (or Venusian) Period,
- 7 The Vulcan Period.

**Do not refer to the seven planets.**—These periods do not refer to the planets for which they are named. They have received their names from the analogies they bear to conditions of creative process through which astronomical science shows the planets of our Solar System have been and are now passing.

**Reincarnations of our Earth.**—Also, when the truth of Reincarnation or rebirth is more fully understood, these periods will be found to be the reincarnations or rebirths of our planet Earth.

Analytically: the attributes, natures and properties of the periods are as follows:

**Saturn Period.**—Warmth, darkness, highest and lowest vehicles of Man-in-the-making taking concrete form: Germinal Consciousness developing (similar to the trance consciousness of the present mineral), begun in the rest period of this general period.

Divine Spirit and Physical Body.

**Sun Period.**—Glowing light balls of the consistency of gas: Dreamless Sleep Consciousness, Life Spirit and Etheric Body concreting.

**Moon Period.**—Moisture, heat, steam, water; Human Spirit and Astral Body concrete; Ego becomes individualized. Dream Consciousness.

**Earth Period.**—In two halves, the Mars half and the Mercury half.

Mars half: Precipitation, crystallization, concretion, attainment of full Waking Consciousness—Self Consciousness. Iron elements introduced; wars, mechanical progress.

Mercury half: Development of Mind; intellectual progress, emphasis of Form, Color and Tone in the application of aestheticism to human life and environment.

**Jupiter Period.**—Universal altruism, love of humanity, brotherhood.

**Venus Period.**—Reign of beauty in all departments of life, necessity for and supremacy of perfection of Form, Color and Tone, as essentials to expansion and amplification of the self-consciousness in the ALL-consciousness.

**Vulcan Period.**—Development of creative impulse and energy in the human akin to that of the greater Hierarchies; the entering into the Cosmic Consciousness of the present humanity as a whole.

**Day of Manifestation (Septenary).**—These periods constitute the Septenary Day of Manifestation, and at their termination comes the Cosmic Night wherein the forces reorganize for another Day of Manifestation. While called the Cosmic Night it is a period of intense activity, for the cosmic operations executed on such a scale of inconceivable magnitude necessitate preparation of the most thorough nature.

**Cosmic Night.**—Neither does the Cosmic Night mean the end of the consciousness of the present evolving humanity, for this wave of evolution will then be far advanced along still higher pathways.

**Seven Periods are dual.**—These Seven Periods are dual in their application, for they relate to the seven stages of development of the Solar System, and also to the seven stages of development of our own Earth.

**Earth has its own Periods.**—Thus, the Earth has its own Saturn, Sun, Moon, Earth, Jupiter, Venus and Vulcan Periods, each with the characteristics above described and applying to its humanity specifically.

**Periods finished.**—In the Earth's evolution we have already passed the Saturn, Sun and Moon periods, also the Mars half of the Earth Period and are now in the Mercury half.

**Four Elements.**—It will be noted that the *four elements* manifested in our Earth evolution as follows:

Saturn Period, One	Element	———	FIRE.
Sun Period, Two	Elements.....		FIRE and Water.
Moon Period, Three	Elements.....		FIRE, Air and Water.
Earth Period, Four	Elements.....		FIRE, Air, Water and Earth.

**Cosmic Night.**—Besides the Cosmic Night at the close of the Septenary Day of Manifestation, there is also a Cosmic Night of briefer duration between each Period.

**Each Period is Septenary** in its nature as well, for the life impulse makes seven complete circuits or rounds during each period. Thus each period is said to have seven revolutions, each being spherical and each world region being globular.

**Globes.**—When the life wave has traveled once around through all the world regions, it has made a revolution; and seven of these revolutions make a Period.

**First Day of Creation.**—With the Seven revolutions around the seven world region “globes,” the First Day of Creation is at an end; the Saturn Period closes; a Cosmic Night sets in, and after a rest and assimilation of forces and experience, the Sun Period, or Second Day of Creation begins.

**777 Incarnations.**—The Seven revolutions around the seven globes of the seven Periods constitute what is called the 777 Incarnations, or the Pilgrimage of the Virgin Spirits.

**Reabsorption (Universal Night).**—At the end of the last revolution the life wave is reabsorbed into the Body of God, the globes dissolve, and the life wave remains absorbed in God for a length of time equal to the time occupied by the activity of the whole Seven Periods. God himself then merges into the Supreme Being during the Cosmic Night, or as it is better called, the Universal Night, in contradistinction to the interim between periods. When the similar process is completed in the entire Universe, the Supreme Being merges into the Absolute, in preparation for another Great Day of Manifestation.

**Seven Creative Days.**—Thus we see how the Seven Creative Days are accomplished, each Day being a distinct period of evolution.

For the purpose of collateral reading in the Holy Scriptures the following entries may be made in the student’s Bible:

**Biblical Parallels.**—

Saturn period.....	Genesis, i, 2nd vs.
Sun Period.....	Genesis, i, 3rd vs.
Moon Period.....	Genesis, i, 6th vs.
Earth Period to 4th Revolution.....	Genesis, i, 9th vs.

**Epochs.**—The Earth evolution now being prepared for Man’s manifestation, he appears on the stage an Ego but with his self-consciousness latent, that is, in process of unfoldment. This unfoldment was accomplished in a series of EPOCHS.

The Epochs according to the Rosicrucian teachings are—

- 1 The Polarian Epoch,
- 2 The Hyperborean Epoch,
- 3 The Lemurian Epoch,
- 4 The Atlantean Epoch,
- 5 The Aryan Epoch—Man’s present state.

**Mineral-Man.**—In the Polarian Epoch Man had only his Physical Body, as minerals now have, and is therefore called the mineral-man.

**Plant-Man.**—In the Hyperborean Epoch Man had his Physical Body and the Etheric Body, or the power of growth, hence he is known as the plant or vegetable-man.

**Animal-Man.**—In the Lemurian Epoch Man had the Physical Body, the Etheric Body and the Astral Body, with powers of locomotion, hence is called the animal-man.

**Man.**—In the Atlantean Epoch Man had the Physical, Etheric, Astral bodies with MIND unfolding and in this Epoch is, generally speaking, first known as MAN, as we can begin to visualize him.

In the present or Aryan Epoch Man will partially develop his Ego.

**Biblical Parallels.**—For the purposes of Biblical notation the following references may be noted:

- |   |                        |                              |
|---|------------------------|------------------------------|
| 1 | Polarian Epoch.....    | Genesis, i, 1-9.             |
| 2 | Hyperborean Epoch..... | Genesis, i, 11-19.           |
| 3 | Lemurian Epoch.....    | Genesis, i, 20-23.           |
| 4 | Atlantean Epoch.....   | Genesis, i, 24-31.           |
| 5 | Aryan Epoch.....       | Genesis, ii, entire chapter. |

**Biblical Creative Days.**—The Polarian Epoch includes the First, Second and part of the Third creative days according to the Genesiac account.

The Hyperborean Epoch includes the remainder of the Third and the Fourth day.

The Lemurian Epoch includes the Fifth day.

The Atlantean Epoch includes the Sixth day.

The Aryan Epoch includes the Seventh day entirely.

While we have considered the various Periods of evolution pertaining to our Earth, and consequently to other members of our Solar System, these planets had not as yet been thrown off from their parent Sun, although they were forming within its sphere. Thus the

**Polarian Epoch** is so called because human evolution began at the Polar Region of the Sun. The Sun beings, who were at that time the highest evolved, formed Man's mineral body from the attenuated chemical matter, organizing a vehicle absolutely different from that we now recognize as human. Anthropology shows us that the physical body of Man of today is vastly different from that of the Pithecanthropus Erectus of Java, or the Oligocene Propliopithecus, the ancestral primates of Egypt at least 525,500 years ago. And correspondingly, the body (physical) of Man 25,000 years hence will also be vastly different from that of today.

In the Polarian Epoch the physical body was a coarse, porous, bulbous shaped vehicle with an opening at one end. The description of these organs of the early bodies belongs to the Instruction on the vehicles of Man, so we will not pursue them farther at this time.

**Hyperborean Epoch (Why Called).**—Hyperborean Epoch is so called from the formation of surface or “crust islands” on the periphery of the Sun’s sphere, islands as it were in a sea of Fire.

**When the Earth Left the Sun.**—After Mars, the Earth was thrown off from the parent Sun near the end of the Hyperborean Epoch, as its continued incrustation had become a hindrance to the evolutionary process thereon. Later Venus and Mercury followed, due to the same reason. Our Earth when thrown off also included our Moon.

**Lemurian Epoch (Persistence of Name).**—Lemurian Epoch is notable for the institution of separate personality, division of humanity into sexes, establishment of sexual relations, organization of races and tribal groups. The persistence of the name Lemuria is seen in the application of the term “Lemur” to many of the anthropoids. The atmosphere of Lemuria was dense and hot like fire fog. The Earth’s crust was a partial sea of boiling water, with islands and many volcanoes. Animal and vegetable growths were gigantic. During the Lemurian Epoch occurred the so-called “Fall of Man.”

**Fall of Man.**—In his early stages Man’s consciousness was directed inwards. Thus, although the sexes were differentiated, the propagative functions were in accordance (under guidance of creative hierarchies) with solar and lunar influences; gestation and parturition caused neither pain or inconvenience. As Man in Biblical verbiage “knew his wife,” that is, directed his senses outwardly, he surrendered to the sensuous mode of propagation, and thenceforth earned bread by the sweat of his brow, and wombman or woman was made to bring forth young in sorrow and travail.

**Sixteen Races.**—We have said that Races began in this Epoch; there are Sixteen to our evolutionary wave, past, present and future, divided as follows:

One race, end of Lemurian Epoch.

Seven races, during Atlantean Epoch.

Seven races, during Aryan Epoch.

One race, during Sixth Epoch.

No further races will follow.

**Atlantean conditions.**—Atlantean Epoch was notable for marvelous climatic conditions. Midway between the icy Polar Region and the hot, volcanic southern region the atmosphere was a thick, heavy fog, through which the sun rarely shone. Atlantean Man had a small head, no forehead, or frontal brain, gigantic arms and legs, and leaped rather than walked.

**Ego not yet indrawn.**—The Ego was not yet entirely *indrawn*. In the fully developed Man, the two cardinal points in the physical body and the etheric body become concentric at a place just between the eyes, half an inch below the skin, at what may be called the root of the nose. When the Ego is fully indrawn, this is its home or seat, with its ramifications of the threefold spirit throughout the circulatory system. In the Atlanteans these two concentric points occupied the positions much as we find them today in animals. The Atlanteans developed Mind especially in the aspect of cunning. They also developed Memory and attained the rudiments of language.

**Nations and Kings.**—Nations were organized, and Kings became an institution. Greatest of all, in the latter part of the Atlantean Epoch Man was left to guide himself. Through the Saturn, Sun and Moon Periods; the three and one-half revolutions of the Earth Period, (the Polarian, Hyperborean, Lemurian, and early Atlantean Epochs) Man's career had been under the direction of the greater Hierarchies.

**Free Will.**—From now on he was to develop and utilize FREE WILL.

**Atlantean Races.**—Of the Atlantean Races we note—

- 1st The Rmoahals.
- 2nd The Tlavatlis.
- 3rd The Toltecs.
- 4th The Turanians, (Original).
- 5th The Semites, (Original).
- 6th The Akkadians.
- 7th The Mongolians.

**Deluges.**—The condensation of great fogs in deluges of waters drove many groups of inhabitants of Atlantis in every direction. Thus the present Mongolians are said to be descendants of those so driven. It is also claimed by some occultists that the Negroes and Savage races are remnants of the Lemurians, but we do not believe the logic of facts warrants this premise.

**Aryan conditions.**—Aryan Epoch conditions are too well known to students of ethnology, archaeology and geology to re-

quire description at this time. The races of this Epoch up to the present are—

- Aryan Races.**—1 The Aryan.  
 2 The Babylonian-Assyrio-Chaldean.  
 3 The Perso-Graeco-Latin.  
 4 The Celtic.  
 5 The Teutonic-Anglo-Saxon.

**Future Races.**—Two races are yet to come, in this Epoch—

- 6 The Slav.  
 7 The race to be developed from the Slav.

**Sixth Epoch.**—Sixth Epoch will be marked by notable conditions relating to human Brotherhood, and from the peoples of the Americas will evolve the last Race in the present wave of evolution.

**Sixteen Paths to Destruction.**—The sixteen races herewith enumerated have been called by some medieval and three modern occultists, the “Sixteen Paths to Destruction” on account of the danger of large groups of humanity in each becoming crystallized into race bodies.

In long lines of ancestry, family customs, ideas, concepts, etc., are perpetuated in the continuity of blood. This acts to prevent individual progress. Rosicrucians are taught that family ties are those of a given incarnation only; that each Ego is an entirely separate individual, and while affection may unite us in the after-death state with those who have gone before us, nevertheless even there we shall finally realize that cosmically each must progress individually, and that we should not attempt to hold any back by bonds of sentiment, but on the contrary, it is the duty of those who know, to speed the progress of each other as the constructive act of sentiment itself, when expressed as a sincere desire to help.

In this way, and by so helping, we may not only advance others but also progress ourselves and oftentimes the journey may be made together.

These Epochs are sometimes referred to as “Ages,” and again as “Pre-Atlantean” and “Post-Atlantean” epochs, eras, or ages, without attempting to assign an individual name.

**Oracles.**—During the Atlantean Epoch the Initiates of the Humanity of the Saturn, Sun and Moon Periods instituted what are known as “Oracles” for the purpose of giving to Earth Humanity stated forms of initiation. These were known as the Sun Oracle, Saturn Oracle, Moon Oracle. There were also the Venus, Mercury and Vulcan Oracles.



We have thus shown the Periods, Revolutions, Epochs and Races through which the Life Wave in our present system of evolution has passed.

**Scientific correlation.**—In order to reduce occult science to a practical basis of understanding in the light of academic science, we will indicate man's exact status as shown by geology and anthropology, correlated with the evolutionary time periods of occult science.

**Times, Ages, Eras, Periods.**—Geology divides the evolutionary processes and formations of the Earth's crust into a series of "Times," "Ages," "Eras" and "Periods." Thus we have—

<b>Times.</b> —	1	Archaen	3	Mesozoic
	2	Palaeozoic	4	Cenozoic

<b>Ages.</b> —	1	Invertebrates	4	Reptiles
	2	Fishes	5	Mammals
	3	Acrogens		

<b>Eras.</b> —	1	Lower Silurian		
	2	Upper Silurian		
	3	Devonian		
	4	Carboniferous		
	5	Jura-Trias—	{	Triassic
			{	Jura-Triassic
	6	Cretaceous		
	7	Tertiary		
8	Quarternary, or Post-Tertiary			

**Periods.**—

1	Azoic	13	Portage	25	Lower
2	Eozoic	14	Catskill and Chemung	26	Dakota
3	Cambrian	15	Sub-carboniferous	27	Colorado
4	Calciferous	16	Carboniferous	28	Fox Hills
5	Chazy	17	Permian	29	Laramie
6	Trenton	18	Lower (Trias)	30	Eocene
7	Niagara	19	Middle (Trias)	31	Oligocene
8	Onondaga	20	Upper (Trias)	32	Miocene
9	Lower Heidelberg	21	Rhaetic	33	Pliocene
10	Oriskany	22	Lias	34	Glacial
11	Corniferous	23	Oolite	35	Champlain
12	Hamilton	24	Purbeck	36	Recent

**Sub-Divisions.**—There are many sub-divisions, the principal ones being the

1	Laurentian	6	Various Coal Strata
2	Huronian	7	Neocomian
3	Lower, Middle and Upper Cambrian	8	Chalk
4	Upper Llandovery	9	Nummulitic
5	Old Red Sandstone	10	Pleistocene

**Time Periods (Grouped).**—The Times, Ages, Eras, Periods and sub-divisions are grouped as follows:

**Archaen Time.**—

1	Azoic	} periods, and the {	1	Laurentian	} sub-divisions.
2	Eozoic		2	Huronian	

**Palaeozoic Time.**—

1 Age of Invertebrates,

Lower Silurian Era—

Cambrian

Calciferous

Chazy

Trenton Periods; and the

Lower, Middle and Upper

Cambrian, and Lower Llan-

doverly sub-divisions.

Upper Silurian Era—

Niagara

Onondaga and Lower Heidel-

berg Periods; and the corre-

sponding sub-divisions.

2 Age of Fishes, Devonian Era,

Oriskany

Corniferous

Hamilton

Portage

Catskill and Chemung Periods

and the Old Red Sandstone

sub-divisions.

3 Age of Acrogens, Carboniferous Era,

Sub-carboniferous, Carbonifer-

ous and Permian Periods, and

the various Coal Measures.

(Sub-divisions.)

**Mesozoic Time.**—

4	Age of Reptiles, Jura Trias—	{	Triassic	} Period,
			Juratriassic	

Cretaceous Era, Lower Middle

and Upper Triassic Periods

and the Rhaetic, Lias, Oolite

and Purbeck Periods; Lower,

Dakota, Colorado, Fox Hills

and Laramie Periods in the Cretaceous.

Neocomian and Chalk subdivisions.

### Cenozoic Time.—

#### 5 Age of Mammals, Tertiary Era,

- 1 Eocene
- 2 Oligocene
- 3 Miocene
- 4 Pliocene Periods and Nummulitic and Lignitic subdivisions.

Quarternary or Post Tertiary Era, with Glacial, Champlain and Recent Periods, Pleistocene and Holocene subdivisions.



FIG. 2

PITHECANTHROPUS. RESTORATION BY MCGREGOR, 1914.  
—(Courtesy, American Museum of Natural History, N. Y.)

**Man Enters.**—Man as known to academic science enters the scene of action during the comparatively modern sub-division known as the Pleistocene, which includes the Glacial and Post Glacial Periods, or the “Diluvium” of early writers.<sup>1</sup>

**Glacial Period.**—The duration of the entire Glacial Period or “Ice Age” is estimated at from 525,000 and 620,000 to 800,000 years.

The Glacial Period itself is divided into four general groups and “Inter Stages.” Thus—

**Glacial Stages.**—

MAN	PERIOD	DURATION
	1st Glacial Stage	Approx. 25,000 years
Pithecanthropus or Trinil Man	1st Inter-Glacial Stage	Approx. 75,000 years
	2nd Glacial Stage	Approx. 25,000 years
Heidelberg Man	2nd Inter-Glacial Stage	Approx. 200,000 years
	3rd Glacial Stage	Approx. 25,000 years
Pitldown Man	3rd Inter-Glacial Stage	Approx. 100,000 years
Neanderthal Man	4th Glacial Stage	Approx. 25,000 years
	Post-Glacial Stage	Approx. 25,000 years
Conservative approximate total		500,000 years
Post-Glacial Stage to B. C.		16,000 years
Plus 1900 years of our Era		1,900 years

**Approximate Time.**—From beginning of Ice Age to present 517,900 years.



FIG. 3  
THE HEIDELBERG JAW.

—(Courtesy, American Museum of Natural History, N. Y.)

**Types of Prehistoric Man.**—Arranging the types of Man noted, in time periods of modern usage, we have, with minor classifications, the

Type	Locale of Remains	Approx. Date
PITHECANTHROPUS	Trinil River, Java	516,000 B.C. to 419,000 B.C.
HEIDELBERG (Homo Heidelbergensis)	Heidelberg	391,000 B.C.
PILTDOWN (Eoanthropus)	"Dawn Man," Piltdown, Sussex	166,000 B.C.
NEANDERTHAL	Gibraltar, Neanderthal near Dusseldorf	66,000 B.C.
Furfooz	Furfooz, Belgium	
Cro-Magnon	Cro-Magnon, Dordogne	
Krapina	Krapina, Austria-Hungary	
Mousterian	Le Moustier, Dordogne, and La Cha- pelle, Correze.	
Cannstatt	Cannstatt	

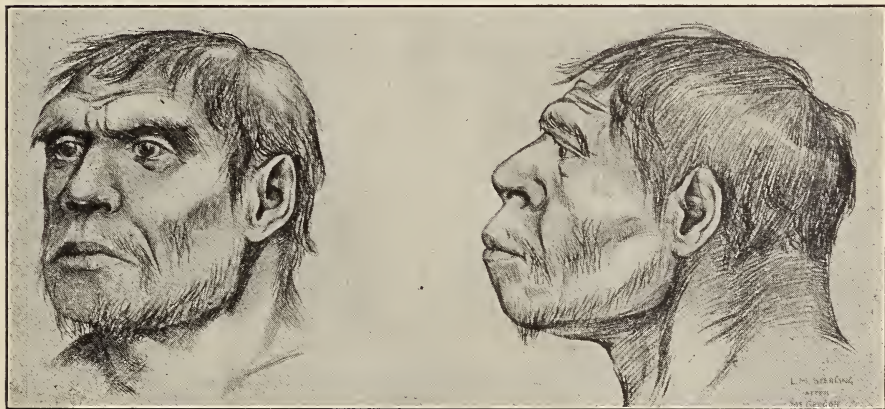


FIG. 4

THE PILTDOWN MAN. THREE QUARTER AND PROFILE VIEWS.

—(Courtesy, American Museum of Natural History, N. Y.)

**Missing Links.**—These are the earliest types of Man; (Homo Sapiens) species some of which are now recognized as the "missing links" between homo sapiens and the anthropoids.

**Skulls.**—They are classified according to the conformation of the skulls; the short, round, or four cornered; Brachycephalic—and the long, oval, or Dolichocephalic. All belong to the "Old Stone Age," both Neolithic and Palaeolithic.



FIG. 5  
NEANDERTHAL MAN. RESTORATION BY MCGREGOR.  
—(Courtesy, American Museum of Natural History, N. Y.)

The Glacial and Post Glacial Periods include the

- 1 OLD STONE AGE, including the upper and lower Palaeolithic Times, Upper, 12-16,000 B. C., Lower 40-100,000 B. C. Chipped and Flaked Flints.

Between the Old Stone Age and the Roman Times, we have the

- 2 NEW STONE AGE, including the
  - a Early Neolithic Stage. No metal known but gold.
  - b Typical Neolithic Stage, (Swiss Lake Dwellers, 7000 B. C.

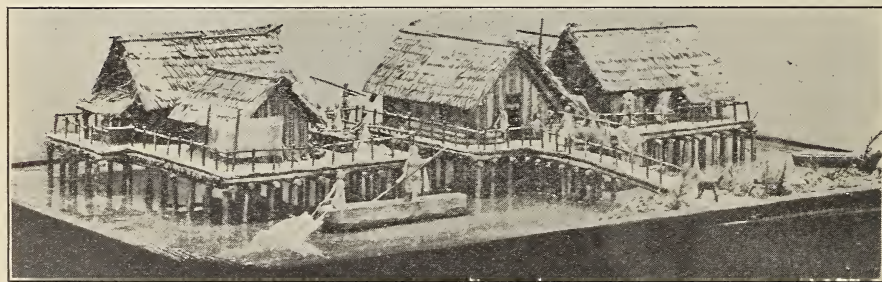


FIG. 6  
LAKE DWELLERS OF THE OLD STONE AGE. RESTORATION BY  
M. GOTZINGER, UNDER DIRECTION OF F. KELLER, ZURICH.  
—(Courtesy, American Museum of Natural History, N. Y.)

- c Late Neolithic Stage, or the so-called COPPER AGE.  
3000-2000 B.C.
- 3 BRONZE AGE, Europe 2000-1000 B.C.  
Orient 4000-1800 B.C.
- 4 Early IRON AGE, Europe 1000- 500 B.C.  
Orient 1800-1000 B.C.
- 5 Late IRON AGE, Europe 500 B.C. to Roman times
- 6 AGE OF MAN, Holocene, or "Recent" period. Roman times to the present.
- Rise of world civilizations.

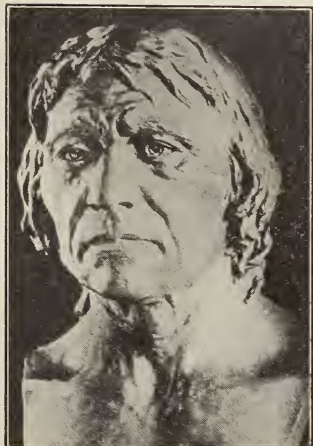


FIG. 7  
CRO-MAGNON MAN.

—(Courtesy, American Museum of Natural History, N. Y.)



FIG. 8  
NEOLITHIC MAN.

**Four Divisions of Upper Palaeolithic.**—The "Upper" Palaeolithic times are known as the "art period" of the Old Stone Age, and are comprehended under four divisions relating to the forms of animal life depicted in the caves of those times and still extant.

- d Age of Aurochs and Bison.
- c Age of Woolly Mammoths and Rhinoceros.
- b Age of Reindeer.
- a Age of Cave Bear.<sup>2</sup>

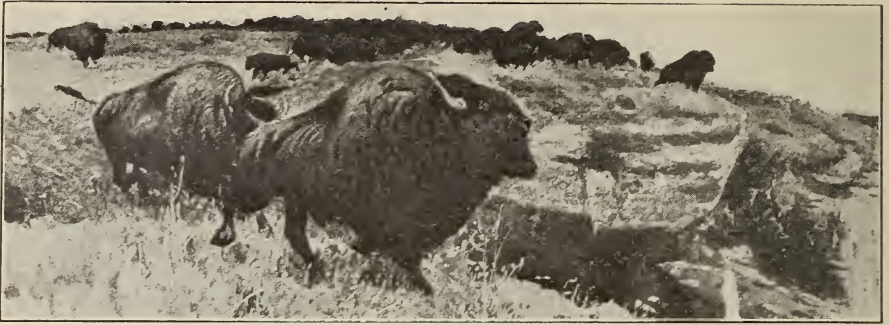


FIG. 9  
BISON HUNT IN THE VEZERE VALLEY DURING THE MAGDA-  
LENIAN PERIOD. SOUTH OF FRANCE.

(By permission.)

**Man's Remote Ancestry.**—Geology, anthropology and archaeology demonstrate "that men with faculties and powers like our own, but in the infancy of education and tradition, were living in this region of Europe (Palaeolithic caves of the Pyrenees, Dordogne and the Cantabrian Mountains of Spain), at least 25,000 years ago. Back of these intelligent races were others also of eastern origin but in earlier stages of mental development, all pointing to the very remote ancestry of man from earlier mental and physical stages."<sup>3</sup>



FIG. 10  
LEFT. CRO-MAGNON MEN, RIGHT, NEANDERTHAL MEN.  
BOTH FROM PAINTINGS BY CHARLES R. KNIGHT.

—(Courtesy, American Museum of Natural History, N. Y.)



**Oldest Center of Human Habitation.**—The places referred to form the “oldest center of human habitation of which we have a complete, unbroken record of continuous residence from a period as remote as 100,000 years, corresponding with the dawn of human culture, to the hamlets of the modern peasant of France.” “In contrast Egyptian, Aegean and Mesopotamian civilizations appear as of yesterday.”<sup>4</sup>

From geological and chemical science, then, we may say that the

**Polarian Epoch** began in the parent Sun.

**Hyperborean Epoch** began when the present earth was thrown off from the parent sun; considerably more than 350,000,000 years ago, according to latest scientific findings.

Vestiges of continents formed during the late stages of this Epoch are seen in Greenland, Iceland, Spitzbergen and Alaska.

**Moon thrown off from Earth.**—During the Hyperborean Epoch the moon was thrown off from the Earth approx. 56,000,000 years ago.

**Consistentior Status**, approx. 20 to 40 million years ago.

**Condensation of Oceans**, approx. 80 to 90 millions of years ago.

**Pliocene Period** (4) extended over 900,000 years and witnessed the transformation of the man-ape into prototypic Man.

**Miocene Period** (3) occupied 1,800,000 years and saw the culmination of mammalian life.

**Oligocene Period** (2) occupied 3,000,000 years and saw the beginning of anthropoid life.

**Eocene Period** (1) occupied 4,200,000 years and was the time of types of mammals and the vanishing of archaic forms.

**Lemurian Epoch (Duration, Destruction).**—Lemurian Epoch extended from the Carboniferous of the Palaeozoic Time to the Eocene Period in the Cenozoic. Lemuria was destroyed by volcanoes about 10,417,000 years ago. Japan and Spain are still part of what was ancient Lemuria.

**Atlantean Epoch (Extent and Destruction).**—Atlantean Epoch began prior to the end of the Lemurian Epoch and its active life so far as the story of human development is

concerned may be given as approximately 4-5,000,000 years. Atlantis was destroyed by four cataclysms, as follows:

<b>Four Cataclysms.</b> —1st	Pliocene Period	800,000 B. C.
	2nd	200,000 B. C.
	3rd	87,000 B. C.
	4th	9,600 B. C.

**Troano MSS.**—According to the Troano MSS. the latter cataclysm occurred in the 6th Kan, 11th Mulac, in the month of Zac, culminating on the 13th Chuen. The continent was destroyed by a series of tidal waves. Fragments of the continent still exist under different geographical names.

**Aryan Epoch** began with the formation of the Aryan Races and is a matter of comparatively accurate historical record.



FIG. 11

RHINOCEROS TICLEORHINEUS.

—(Courtesy, American Museum of Natural History, N. Y.)

**Prehistoric Man.**—The prehistoric types of Man described must not be considered as races, but more as indices in the pathway of the evolutionary progress of humanity. Practical occult-

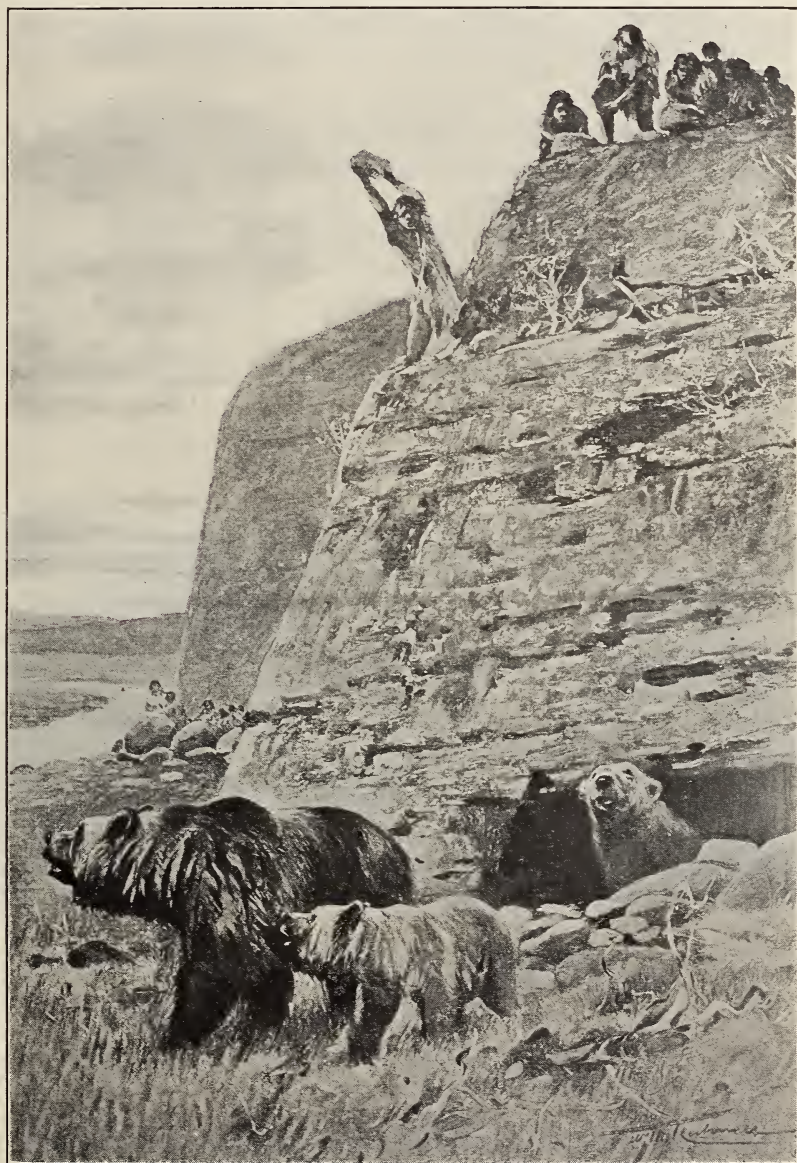


FIG. 12

HUNTING THE GIANT CAVE BEAR IN PRIMITIVE TIMES.

(By permission.)

ism and genuine spiritual science do not hide behind the subterfuges of wild vagaries of the imagination as to impressive time data, ascribing miraculous civilizations to bygone races.

If such civilizations ever existed what progress they had made would be preserved to futurity, or else we would be recording regression instead of progression, and devolution instead of evolution.

**Nature's Processes.**—It has taken Nature and all that she represents, millions of years to make the earth a suitable habitat for conscious, intelligent Man, and while Man has gone through many evolutionary processes in the interim, it is in practical accord with the data given that he has made his entrance as the dominant factor in the world's work and progress. Much of that progress was accomplished on spiritual planes before his advent, but his entire career has been in strict accord with the established principles of evolution.



FIG. 13

TERTIARY AND MAUER MEN.

—(Courtesy, American Museum of Natural History, N. Y.)

**Man and the Apes.**—Man does not descend from the monkey. The higher forms of mammalia produced a type analogous to the man-ape in the relics herein described, a higher form of anthropoid; but the modern ape is the degeneration of lost types of pseudo anthropoids and prototypic humans. Another wave of evolution will care for lost opportunities.

## QUESTIONS ON INSTRUCTION No. 2

1. What is the subject of this Instruction?
2. Through what stages is the earth shown to have passed?
3. Why should we not use the term "Planes"?
4. How many Periods are designated?
5. Name them.
6. Do they refer to the seven planets?
7. What are they found to be?
8. Describe the attributes, nature and properties of the Saturn Period.
9. Describe the attributes, nature and properties of the Sun Period.
10. Describe the attributes, nature and properties of the Moon Period.
11. Describe the attributes, nature and properties of the Earth Period.
12. Describe the attributes, nature and properties of the Jupiter Period.
13. Describe the attributes, nature and properties of the Venus Period.
14. Describe the attributes, nature and properties of the Vulcan Period.
15. What do these Periods constitute?
16. What is the Cosmic Night?
17. Are these Periods single or dual?

18. How many Periods has our Earth?
19. What Period are we now in?
20. How did the Four Elements manifest in our Earth Evolution?
21. Explain the meaning of "Globes."
22. What are the 777 Incarnations?
23. How is a Life Wave disposed of?
24. What is meant by Universal Night?
25. What are the Seven Creative Days?
26. What are Epochs?
27. What is the Mineral-Man?
28. What is the Plant-Man?
29. What is the Animal-Man?
30. How do the Epochs correlate with the Biblical Creative Days?
31. Why is the Polarian Epoch so called?
32. What is said of Man's antiquity?
33. Why is the Hyperborean Epoch so called?
34. Why is the Lemurian Epoch so called?
35. How is the name shown to persist?
36. What was the "Fall of Man"?
37. What are the sixteen races?
38. Describe Atlantean conditions.
39. What was the status of the Ego therein?
40. What is said of Nations and Kings?
41. When did Man first learn to utilize Free-will?
42. Name the Atlantean Races.
43. What were the Deluges?
44. Describe Aryan conditions.
45. Name the Aryan races.

46. What are to be the future races?
47. What will mark the Sixth Epoch?
48. What are the sixteen paths to destruction? Why?
49. What were the Oracles?
50. How does geology divide the evolutionary formations of earth's crust?
51. Review the above as well as possible to fix them generally in mind.
52. In what geologic division does Man enter the earth drama?
53. What was the duration of the Glacial Period?
54. Name the Glacial Stages and durations.
55. What is the approximate time from the beginning of the Ice Age to the present?
56. Name the types of prehistoric Man.
57. What are the "Missing Links"?
58. How are they classified?
59. What Ages do the Glacial and Post-Glacial Periods include?
60. Give their approximate time periods.
61. What is the "Age of Man"?
62. What are the Upper Palaeolithic divisions?
63. Give an idea of Man's remote ancestry.
64. What are the oldest centers of human habitation?
65. When did the Polarian Epoch begin and where?
66. When was the Moon thrown off from the Sun?
67. When was the consistentior status approximated?
68. When did the oceans condense?
69. What was the extent of the Pliocene Period?
70. What was the extent of the Miocene Period?
71. What was the extent of the Oligocene Period?

72. What was the extent of the Eocene Period?
73. What was the extent of the Lemurian Epoch? When was Lemuria destroyed?
74. What was the extent of the Atlantean Epoch? When was Atlantis destroyed?
75. What record do we get from the Troano MSS?
76. How must prehistoric types of Man be considered?
77. How do Nature's processes operate?
78. How does Man stand in relation to the apes?





INSTRUCTION III.  
MAN AND HIS BODIES.

CELESTIAL HIERARCHIES, VEHICLES OF THE EGO,  
MAN-IN-THE-MAKING.

---

**Tracing Man's Lineage.**—In the previous Instructions the student has learned of Man's progress from the Absolute to his present status. His transition from the higher order of anthropoids in the Animal Kingdom to Homo Sapiens or intelligent Man, is symbolized by the greatest and most significant emblem of our Order in its exoteric life, the *Cross* and *Rose*.

**Cross and Rose.**—These symbols will be better understood after the student has received the Instruction on the Four Life Kingdoms. The base of the Cross represents the Mineral Kingdom, the lower shaft represents the Vegetable or Plant Kingdom, the roots of which are embedded in the Mineral; the blossom or reproductive organs pointing upward toward the light. The cross-bar of the Cross represents the Animal Kingdom, with the horizontal spine pertaining thereto. The upper upright shaft represents Man, the inverted plant or vegetable. He has the upright spine, but his reproductive organs point downwards to darkness.

The Vegetable Kingdom looks to the Sun for Life, in stretching its reproductive organs thereto. Man turns his creative powers toward the earth and its center, a symbol of the allegorical "Fall of Man." This means the purely physical Man. The higher spiritual powers and vitalizing potencies come to Man from the Sun, through the head and solar plexus.

**The Rose.**—The Rose symbolizes the crowning differentiation between the higher animals and Man, the crown of Reason or Intelligence.

**Ego indraws.**—The lower Kingdoms of Life are governed from without by what are known to Rosicrucians as "Group Spirits." Man is controlled by his real Self, or Ego, which has INDRAWN into the vehicles which will be the subject of this Instruction.

**Three Essentials.**—The essentials that differentiate Man from the Animal Kingdom are Three viz:—an *upright spine and walk*, that he may receive the high spiritual currents of vitality from the Sun which enter through the head and work downward, as well as from the solar plexus and upward, forming a complete circuit; an *upright larynx*, for speech is capable of being produced only by such an organ; and *warm red blood* which is the medium through which the Ego directly functions.

**Celestial Hierarchies.**—Man's present status is the result of two distinct lines of activity: his own, and those of high celestial beings who belong not only to the present but also to previous Days of Manifestation. These are known as the Celestial Hierarchies. We will give them in their proper order.

These Hierarchies we find designated in Holy Scripture as "Thrones, Dominions, Principalities and Powers, also Archangels and Angels." (See Colossians i-16; Romans viii-38.)

**Hierarchies.**—These Hierarchies are Twelve in Number, as follows:—

Name		Christian Esoteric Name
1	Unknown	
2	"	
3	Seraphim	Lords of Love
4	Cherubim	Lords of Harmony
5	Thrones	Lords of Flame or Will
6	Dominions (Kyriotetes)	Lords of Wisdom
7	Principalities (Dynamis)	Lords of Individuality or Motion
8	Powers (Exusiai)	Lords of Form
9	Powers of Darkness (Archai)	Lords of Mind
10	Archangels (Archangeloi)	Sons of Fire
11	Angels (Angeloi)	Sons of Twilight or Life
12	Virgin Spirits	

**Correspond to Zodiacal Signs.**—They correspond by number to the Twelve Zodiacal Signs, thus—

1	Aries	5	Leo	9	Saggitarius
2	Taurus	6	Virgo	10	Capricorn
3	Gemini	7	Libra	11	Aquarius
4	Cancer	8	Scorpio	12	Pisces

**First two Hierarchies unknown.**—Of the first two Hierarchies nothing is known except that they belonged to a former Day of Manifestation and have progressed immeasurably beyond our knowledge or concept, and gave certain assistance at the be-

ginning of the present Day of Manifestation and the beginning of the present wave of evolution.

**Hierarchies three to five active in last three Periods.**—Hierarchies three to five, Seraphim, Cherubim and Thrones (or Lords of Love, Harmony, Flame or Will) completed their evolution in the present Day of Manifestation, passed to liberation, and then assisted in the evolution of Man during the three Periods prior to the Earth Period, viz: Saturn, Sun and Moon Periods.

**Seven Hierarchies still active.**—The remaining seven Hierarchies have been and are now active in the Earth Period of evolution, as will be seen later in this Instruction.

**Bodies, Vehicles, etc.**—According to Rosicrucian science, Man, the Ego, possesses and functions through certain well defined bodies, vehicles, sheaths, or shells, all these designations having been employed by early writers.

**3, 5, 7 9.**—In studying these vehicles we find ourselves confronted at the very start, by the mystic numbers 3, 5, 7, 9, familiar to every member of the Order, thus—

With 3, the threefold constitution of Man as	{	Spirit Soul Body
With 5, the fivefold constitution of Man as	{	Ego Mind Astral Body Etheric Body Physical Body
With 7, the sevenfold constitution of Man as	{	Divine Spirit Life Spirit Human Spirit Mind Astral Body Etheric Body Physical Body
With 9, the ninefold constitution of Man as	{	Divine Spirit Life Spirit Human Spirit Conscious Soul Emotional Soul Intellectual Soul Astral Body Etheric Body Physical Body

The Conscious, Emotional and Intellectual Soul is also sometimes known as the Sentient, Rational and Self-Conscious Soul.

In connection with these 3, 5, 7 and 9-fold Constitutions, it must not be inferred that the terms "Mind" and "Soul" are interchangeable. In the Threefold Constitution only the three complete principles of Man, in unity, are shown.

In the Fivefold Constitution, the development of the Threefold Body is shown, with the addition of the Ego or Controller, and the Mind through which it operates.

In the Sevenfold Constitution, the Threefold Spirit and the Threefold Body are given in that order, to show forth the place of Mind as the "Link between."

In the Ninefold Constitution, the Ego having operated through Mind to extract the Soul as pabulum, we list the Threefold Body, Soul and Spirit in their complete expansions.

**Soul.**—The correct order is—

- 1 Conscious (or Sentient) Soul
- 2 Intellectual (or Rational) Soul
- 3 Self-Conscious (or Emotional) Soul

**A Product.**—We make this brief recapitulation, for so many regard the soul as a vehicle in unity, that is, of one nature, whereas it is threefold in its nature like the Threefold Body and the Threefold Spirit, and is a PRODUCT, an ESSENCE, extracted by the Threefold Spirit from the Threefold Body, as stated in Instruction Number One.

**Not to be confounded with Seventh Cos. Reg. Hierarchies.**—Before going further it must be understood that the Twelve Hierarchies listed in this Instruction are not to be confounded with the 823,543 Hierarchies noted in the Seventh Cosmic Region, as given in the First Instruction. The Twelve Hierarchies of this Instruction are those pertaining to and affecting our present and the immediate past wave of evolution.

**Man as ordinarily conceived.**—In ordinary usage we conceive of Man as a threefold triune being; i. e., having a Threefold Body, a Threefold Spirit, and a Threefold Soul.

**Mind Sheath.**—When referring to his vehicles, however, we have in mind the Ego or Self functioning through the "Sheath" of Mind "Stuff," in the Astral, Etheric (or Vital) and Physical Bodies.

**Why So Called.**—We term Mind, "stuff" and a "sheath," because, contrary to many teachings and concepts, mind is not yet organized as a true "body." Ultimately it will be, as also the

Astral Body, but at present neither are organized to the extent of the Physical and Etheric Bodies, each of which have their own specific organs and centers of activity.

**Mind a Mirror.**—Mind at present is to the Ego as a mirror, through which the Threefold Spirit reflects itself in Matter, crystallizing into manifestation the Threefold Body.

**Ego in Operation.**—In operation, the Ego functions through the Mind to impress the Astral Body with desire, forming and developing impetus to action which is communicated to the Etheric Body, causing it to vitalize the Physical Body into activity through the powers of the forces of attraction or repulsion as the nature of the thought form concentered by the Ego may determine.

**Activities of the Hierarchies.**—To return to the Hierarchies:

- |    |                             |   |
|----|-----------------------------|---|
| 3  | The Seraphim                | in the Moon Period developed in nascent Man, or "Man-in-the-making," the germ of the Human Spirit.    |
| 4  | The Cherubim                | in the Sun Period developed the germ of the Life Spirit.  |
| 5  | The Lords of Will and Flame | in the Saturn Period developed the germ of the Divine Spirit, and also the germ of the Physical Body. |
| 6  | The Lords of Wisdom         | developed the germ of the Etheric Body in the Sun Period.   |
| 7  | The Lords of Motion         | developed the Astral Body in the Moon Period.   |
| 8  | The Lords of Form           | assumed the direction of human evolution complete, in the Earth Period.                               |
| 9  | The Lords of Mind           | were the Humanity of the Saturn Period.   |
| 10 | The Archangels              | were the Humanity of the Sun Period.  |
| 11 | The Angels                  | were the Humanity of the Moon Period.   |
| 12 | The Virgin Spirits          | are the Humanity of our present or Earth Period.  |

**Their status.**—Thus it will be seen that some of these Hierarchies pertain to past waves of evolution and began their apprenticeship as creative hierarchs in developing the germs of our present vehicles; others belong to past Periods of our present wave

of evolution, and are at present guiding us and co-operating with us in the development and perfecting of our vehicles.

**Globes.**—The development of the germs of Man's present vehicles began in the Saturn Period. At that time humanity in the mass took the form of what has been described by some writers as "GLOBES." Perhaps no better term could be found, although it does not convey to the student an adequate conception of the existent condition.

**Likened to a berry.**—These globes may be likened to a thimbleberry, which is made up of a large number of small individual berries. So with the human mass or globe, it was made up of countless nascent human embryonic germs, potential with the later development of form as we now have it.

**Ear most highly developed organ.**—Up to the present time the Physical Body is the most highly developed but it is far from being perfected. For instance, the ear was principally developed in the Saturn Period, which may be said to have been the mineral stage of development of earth's present humanity.

The ear is today the most highly developed of all the human organs, yet it is far from its ultimate. For ultimately all the human senses must be completely generalized. We feel, for instance, all over the body, some sections thereof being more sensitive than others, nevertheless the sense of feeling is completely generalized. This was necessary in order that the human dense or physical vehicle could successfully fortify and adapt itself to any given environment.

**Sense to be generalized.**—In the distant future, however, we shall see, hear, smell, and even taste in every part of the physical vehicle. Science is already proving this to be possible by the invention of apparatus that enables the blind to see via the ear, and vice versa. The united action of taste and smell is also well known.

**Physical Body correlates with Chemical Region of Physical World.**—The Physical body correlates with the solids, liquids and gases of the Physical world. The Etheric Body acts through the ethers of the Etheric Region of the Physical World. It is already well advanced in its development of special organs.

**Physical Body seen clairvoyantly.**—Seen clairvoyantly, the Physical Body presents a porous appearance, and the degree of porosity has much to do with the temperament and character of the individual. Some have great porosity and therefore great power to absorb vitality and also, unfortunately, to absorb con-

ditions of environment, which react favorably or unfavorably upon the individual according to the nature of each.

**Porosity.**—Others are not so porous, and are known in the world as “hard to penetrate,” that is, it is difficult to penetrate them by the power of thought, influence, environment or by any other avenue.

**Etheric Body Luminous.**—The Etheric Body, on the other hand, presents a luminous appearance, as of countless myriads of luminous “points.” When the Physical and Etheric Bodies are concentric with each other, the luminous points of the Etheric Body fit exactly into the porous orifices of the Physical Body. Thus when a portion of the body, say the arm or leg, “goes to sleep,” it is because the Etheric Body, by the shutting off of the nerve action of that part of the body, has ceased to remain concentric and the vitality supplied by the Etheric Body also ceases.

**Atomic structure of Body.**—Seen clairvoyantly, the Physical Body also presents another appearance, that of its atomic structure. And when the Etheric Body is perfectly concentric, the luminous points of the latter will be found to penetrate to the hollow centers of each individual atom. In our present status of evolution the two vehicles are concentric, but this was not formerly the case, for in the Atlantean Epoch, the Ego had not entirely indrawn, and the seat of the Ego in the triangular space known to students of the Alchemical Section of the Fraternity was not concentric with the similar position in the two vehicles.

**Sign of Pisces.**—By referring to the table of the Hierarchies, the student will see why reference is made to Neophytes of the birth of Messiahs of our present wave of evolution under the “Sign of Pisces.” These Messiahs belong to the “seven remaining Hierarchies and are active in the evolution of the Virgin Spirits (No. 12) corresponding to the Zodiacal Sign of Pisces.

**Where Involution ends and Evolution begins.**—INVOLUTION, broadly speaking, may be said to END, and EVOLUTION BEGIN, when the Ego has fully indrawn into its group of vehicles and attained SELF-CONSCIOUSNESS. There have been from the beginning of Man’s long journey to his present status, well defined states of consciousness, but none were SELF-CONSCIOUSNESS, which, with INDIVIDUALITY, is only attained when the EGO is FULLY indrawn into its vehicles. Thus while the Atlanteans attained a high degree of intelligence, it was more of the animal intelligence, expressing itself in cunning and subtlety, than the fully awakened consciousness of SELF.

**Ego's Vehicles as Commonly Stated.**—In our present usage, we speak of the EGO, i. e., Threefold Spirit, as having the following vehicles:

- 1 Mental Sheath
- 2 Astral Body
- 3 Etheric (or Vital) Body
- 4 Physical Body

the Threefold Spirit extracting from the Threefold Body (Astral, Etheric and Physical) the Threefold Soul.

**Ego (What it is).**—The Ego has already been shown to be the Virgin Spirit differentiated in its evolutionary progress as the Threefold Spirit, Divine, Life, and Human. It is the Threefold Spirit after it has attained individuality and become a distinct, imperishable entity by emerging from the lower stages of involution, indrawn, and begun to evolve as the human.

**Recapitulation.**—The other vehicles may be briefly recapitulated:

**Mental Sheath.**—At present unorganized as a true body and serving as the "mirror" through which Spirit reflects itself in Matter, or through which the Threefold Spirit projects itself into the Threefold Body.

**Memory (Three kinds).**—The Mental Sheath further serves as the modus of the MEMORY, which is also threefold:

- a CONSCIOUS:—whereby the Ego is able to revive pictures of experience implanted therein at any moment, and re-vivify them into action.
- b SUB-CONSCIOUS:—where experience imprinted on the negative atoms of the Etheric Body form a definite record of the Ego's activities not ordinarily brought into action. This Sub-Conscious Memory or Mind is all powerful when properly set to work, as it acts without apparent co-ordination with the Conscious Memory and is therefore uninhibited in its ability to accomplish really marvellous results under the operation of the trained Will.
- c SUPER-CONSCIOUS:—which is the Ego's memory of the experiences of PAST LIVES, and while usually dormant unless awakened by proper spiritual development under guidance, can nevertheless be brought into use by the Ego in the interim between death and rebirth, to review its past experiences.

**Astral Body (Purpose of).**—This vehicle was developed by the Lords of Motion in the Moon Period. Its purpose is to give



impulse and desire to the Physical Body through the vitalizing power of the Etheric Body, and is therefore sometimes called the "Desire Body." The finest structure of blood, bone and tissue would be useless without the impulse and desire to action afforded by the Astral Body as one of the vehicles therefor of the Ego.

**No Consciousness of its own; Mediums and Seances; Shells, Earth Bound Souls, Cemeteries.**—The Astral Body has no consciousness of its own, but after death takes on, by a process of induction, the semblance of intelligence and consciousness of the late homo, and it is this assumed intelligence and personality which is so often "sensed" by untrained clairvoyants and mediums in the ordinary "seance" that is recognized as the "real departed," and which at the same time accounts for the ludicrous and pitiful mistakes so often made by really honest mediums who do not understand the forces with which they are dealing. Such astral forms are really nothing more than "shells" which in due course disintegrate as the Ego progresses on its heaven journey in higher worlds, and while the relatives believe they are communing with the dead, the departed is in reality way beyond (with the exception of what are known as "earth bound souls"), and the communication is really with the astral shell. These shells may be seen in large numbers by the trained clairvoyant, in any cemetery.

**Etheric Body (Functions of), Sleep, Ethers, Revitalizing.**—This is the vehicle in closest association with the Physical Body and its appearance clairvoyantly has already been given. Its principal function is to restore the Physical Body, which it does during sleep. The Etheric Body functions in the Etheric Region of the Physical World, in the Four Ethers pertaining thereto, namely, the Life, Light, Chemical and Reflecting Ethers. Through these ethers, it is enabled to revitalize the Physical Body after the latter has become depleted in vitality during the activities of the day. It is thus the medium between the Astral and Physical Bodies, giving vitality and force to the impulse of the Astral Body in obedience to the Ego during waking life, and revitalizing and replenishing the Physical Body during sleep and repairing the waste.

**Physical Body (Correlated).**—This vehicle functions in the Chemical Region of the Physical World, and correlates, as stated, with the Liqueous, Gaseous and Solid elements therein. Its purpose is to afford the Ego opportunity for self-expression and contact with exterior environment, and is obedient to the vitalizing force of the Etheric Body under the impulse and impetus of the

Astral Body through the thought forms concentered in the Mental Sheath by the Ego.

**Individuals.**—The EGO indrawn is what constitutes the homo an INDIVIDUAL.

**How Man differs from Animals.**—As an *individual* Man, he differs from the animals, plants and minerals, which are SPECIES. In organization his vehicles may be described as follows:

**Organization of Vehicles.**—EGO, Virgin Spirit Self-Conscious and Individualized.

MENTAL SHEATH, not yet a true body; unorganized.

ASTRAL BODY, rudimentary psychic and spiritual centers.

ETHERIC BODY, well developed psychic and spiritual centers.

PHYSICAL BODY, fully developed physical organs and partially awakened psychic and spiritual centers.

**Future Evolution.**—When the Physical Body shall have perfectly developed organs, completely generalized sense faculties and fully awakened psychic and spiritual centers, Man will evolve to a higher status, functioning entirely in the Etheric Region, in an Etheric Body which will then have developing organs and highly developed psychic and spiritual centers.

Leaving the Etheric Region, Man will evolve to the Astral Region, with developing organs of the Astral Body and highly developed psychic and spiritual centers. Then the Mental Sheath will also have been in process of evolution and ultimately Man will function solely in a Mental Body.

**Consciousness (Four kinds).**—In arriving at the stage of Self-consciousness, the consciousness of Man has undergone three previous transitions from the state of spiritual consciousness, as Virgin Spirit, namely:

- 1 Deep, Trance-like consciousness, Mineral Stage.
- 2 Dreamless sleep consciousness, Vegetable Stage.
- 3 Dream sleep consciousness, Animal Stage, finally the
- 4 Full waking consciousness, Human Stage.

These are what are known as the four states of consciousness of Man.

**Man a synthesis.**—Man is thus a synthesis of the Four Elements, viz:—

- 1 Physical Body—Bone and Tissue, EARTH.
- 2 Physical Body—Bodily fluids, WATER.
- 3 Physical Body—Blood, and combustive processes, FIRE.
- 4 Etheric and Astral vehicles, with Mental Sheath, AIR.

The Functions of the various vehicles are maintained in the following regions:

**Functions of Vehicles (Where Located).—**EGO, in the Region of Abstract Thought.

MIND, in the Region of Concrete Thought.

ASTRAL BODY, in the Astral World Region.

ETHERIC BODY, in the Etheric Region of the Physical World.

PHYSICAL BODY, in the Chemical Region of the Physical World.

**Man not completely Born at Birth.**—Contrary to general understanding, Man is not completely born at the moment of his physical birth. Each of the separate vehicles has a separate birth. Thus—

**Births of the Vehicles.**—The Physical Body is born at the moment of physical birth.

The Etheric Body is born at the age of Seven.

The Astral Body is born at the age of Fourteen.

The Mind is born at the age of Twenty-one.

This is due to the ethers.

**How Ethers Act.**—a The Physical Body is due to the activity of the Chemical Ether.

b The Etheric Body is due to the activity of the Life Ether.

c The Astral Body is due to the activity of the Light Ether.

d The Mind action is resultant upon the activity of the Reflecting Ether.

**Seed.**—Roscrucian philosophy teaches that everything originates from a primal SEED. This must therefore hold true in regard to Man and each of his bodies.

**Seed Atoms.**—EACH BODY OR VEHICLE OF MAN HAS ITS OWN SEED ATOM from whence its growth originates.

There is a separate Seed Atom for each vehicle, located in a specific organ or center of the respective vehicle.

The Seed Atom of each vehicle is implanted in the microcosmic womb by the Ego in its process of rebirth, and is recovered by the Ego on the dissociation of its vehicles after death, for future vehicles. Each Seed Atom is impressed with the experience pertaining to its particular vehicle during any given life and all preceding lives or expressions.

**Of the Physical Body.**—The Seed Atom of the PHYSICAL BODY, in life, is located at the apex of the Heart, in the left ventricle, and after death ascends via the pneumogastric nerve

out through the skull between the sutures of the occipital and parietal bones.

**Of the Etheric Body.**—The Seed Atom of the ETHERIC BODY, in life, is located in the Spleen.

**Of the Astral Body.**—The Seed Atom of the ASTRAL BODY, in life, is located in the Liver.

**Spleen and Liver.**—The Spleen and Liver being respectively the centers of the Etheric and Astral Bodies in life, it will be seen why some people are styled as “spleeny,” or “good” (or bad) “livers.” The excess of activity in the one causes affections of the spleen and desire whether well or misdirected in the other has a direct result upon the liver.

**Silver Cord.**—During life the higher vehicles and the Ego are attached to the Physical Body by what is known as the “SILVER CORD,” which, seen clairvoyantly, is silvery and glistening and shaped like two figure sixes, one reversed. One end is fastened to the heart by the Seed Atom, the other being attached to the higher vehicle. Its actual rupture at the point of connection between the two figure sixes, is the actual moment of death.

**Man’s First Physical Body (Pineal Gland).**—To illustrate the tremendous extent of Man’s involutory journey, and the consequent differentiation in the shapes of his vehicles, we may state that in the Polarian Epoch what is now the Physical Body was but a large, loose, misshapen, baggy object with one protuberance or organ. This organ, which then protected the evolving vehicle from extremes of heat, is what is now known as the PINEAL GLAND, and its protective powers are now generalized throughout the entire physical organism.

**Fission.**—Somewhat after the method of fission by which one cell becomes two, these baggy objects and their organ separated in halves, and each half into other halves, continually decreasing in size. This was a primal form of propagation.

**Thymus Gland.**—Another organ of greatest importance in the development of the Physical Body and the entrance of the newly born into full consciousness is the THYMUS GLAND.

**Blood Corpuscles and “I” Consciousness.**—Up to the age of fourteen, this gland furnishes most of the blood corpuscles, and gradually diminishes as the blood-making faculty in the growing child develops. The fact is, that the Thymus Gland is stored with a full supply of corpuscles from the microcosmic womb, and supplies them to the infant until the latter is able to supply its own. Thus during the age mentioned the full “I” consciousness is not

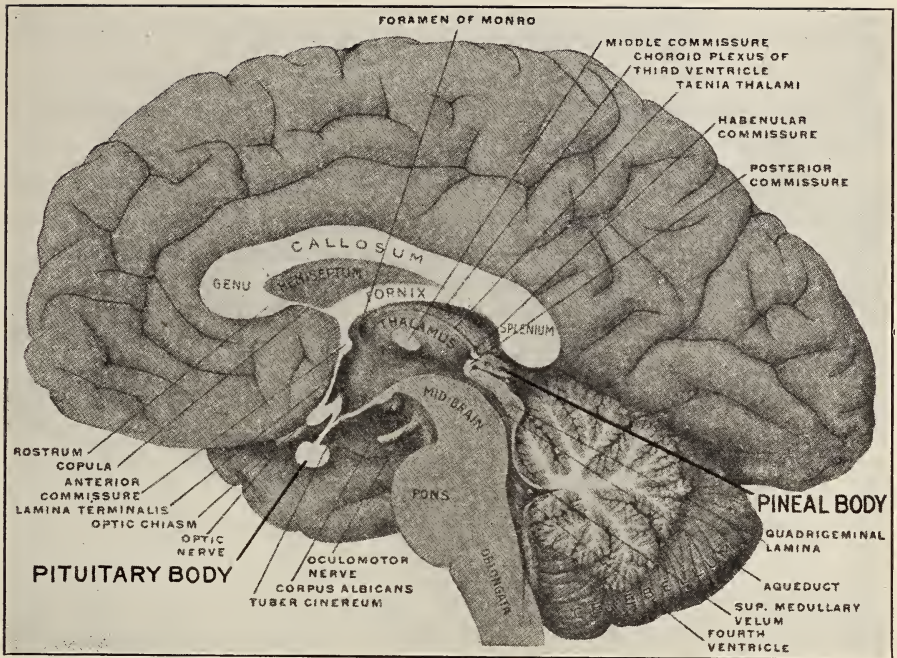


FIG. 14  
 DIAGRAMMATIC SECTION OF THE HUMAN BRAIN, SHOWING  
 EXACT LOCATION, COMPARATIVE SIZE AND RELATIONS  
 OF THE PINEAL GLAND AND THE  
 PITUITARY BODY.

—(After Gray's Anatomy.)

present, and only when the child produces its own supply of corpuscles through which its individual Ego can function is the real sense of personality present, and the child really begins to sense the importance of the term "I."

Mention must not be omitted, too, of the importance of the Thyroid Gland, for in the experiments conducted by Mr. Julian S. Huxley, grandson of the great English scientist, at Oxford University, it has been demonstrated that the Mexican Axolotl, an aquatic amphibian which normally grows up in an undeveloped, tadpole-like form, with gills and a fin to its tail, can by Thyroid increase be apparently turned at will at any stage of its history, into a creature living on land and breathing by lungs, and it is said that this transformation can also be made after the creature is mature and capable of reproduction. This is of especial interest as showing the possibilities of aiding or retarding growth and regulating the rate and form of existence. These discoveries relating to the lower forms of life will in generations to come be

scientifically applied to the greater and more expeditious development and perfection of the human physical vehicle, for all advance in the knowledge of Nature's laws is solely to one distinct end, that Man may know himself better and thus bring himself to a greater degree of comparative perfection and efficiency.

**Homogenous.**—It should be noted that while all of Man's vehicles are of the same substance—homogenous—they differ in degrees of density. No one vehicle may be conceived of as FINER than another, but simply less dense and cohered.

**Four notable Hierarchs.**—There are four notable Hierarchs known as the "Recording Angels" or "Lords of Destiny." They were not listed among those already noted, because they belong to a different Cosmic Manifestation. The Hierarchies previously noted have their functions in the development of the various vehicles, but the actual placement and allotment of each individual to a given expression or life, is relegated to these beings of boundless wisdom and intelligence who see to it that each individual has ample opportunity in each expression to secure the environment best fitted to his particular requirements.

**Epochs and Periods of Man.**—Man may be correlated to both the EPOCHS and PERIODS as follows:

1st Epoch Physical, but ethereal because gaseous. Gases of mineral substance. Polarian.

2nd Epoch Etheric Body, of vegetable substance. Hyperborean.

3rd Epoch Astral Body, of animal substance. Lemurian.

4th Epoch Mind actively functioning. Atlantean.

1st Period Virgin Spirit immerses in Matter. Saturn, Trance.

2nd Period Consciousness begins to act. Sun. Dreamless Sleep.

3rd Period Consciousness continuing. Moon. Dream Sleep.

4th Period Consciousness triumphs. Earth. Full awakening.

**Man, seen clairvoyantly.**—Seen clairvoyantly, Man's vehicles are indicative of his character, temperament and health.

The Physical Body is of course too well known physiologically to require special emphasis in this Instruction, but in passing we may state that by the higher vision even the physical shows many interesting phenomena. To the clairvoyant, the state of health is clearly seen by the color and state of the blood, and just below the surface of the epidermis the various muscular striae present

unfailing indications of the condition of the subject. The still deeper vision reveals the status of the various organs.

**Clairvoyance and X-Ray.**—The clairvoyant vision penetrates the physical structure just as easily as the X-Ray and reveals the true condition of many things which would otherwise escape the diagnosis of the orthodox practitioner.

**Auras.**—The higher vehicles are observed more particularly by their auras. The Etheric Body is practically identical in shape with the Physical Body, but its aura extends beyond the periphery of the Physical Body for a short distance all around. In the Etheric Body all the ethers are active, and thus in the healthy person the aura of the Etheric Body is one of singular beauty and glows and radiates.

**Disease indicated.**—If the person is in ill health, the position and extent of the organ affected will be indicated by an indentation in the aura of the Etheric Body exactly over the place affected, in other words, the diseased or affected organ being out of harmonious co-ordination with the corresponding etheric location, the latter shows the lack of such harmony by the absence of regularity in its aura.

**Astral aura.**—The Astral Body during life is not the identical shape of the Physical Body, but is indicated by a more or less regular aura of ovoid shape extending beyond the Physical Body for from 12 to 16 inches. The trained seer can easily read in this astral aura the real character, temperament, disposition, nature, wishes, passions, and desires of the subject.

**Mental aura.**—Away beyond the aura of the Astral Body extends the Mental aura. In the case of highly developed persons it extends for a distance of many feet. It is said that in the case of a Master, or Adept, it extends for really incredible distances, but of this latter contention we have no corroborative proof.

**Black aura.**—A noteworthy phenomenon is that on observing closely the auras of a given subject, what appears to be a solid black line seems to be close around the entire periphery of the subject's body, not more than one-half inch wide.

**Misconceptions.**—A correct understanding of the interaction of the various vehicles of Man will reveal the cause of many misconceptions of perfectly natural conditions.

**Male Negative and Female Positive, Man's office in Procreation.**—Man is termed the positive member of the two sexes. In reality only his Physical Body is positive. His Etheric Body is purely negative, and it is well known that in the process of

procreation man's function is purely impregnative, and he has absolutely nothing to do with the actual creation of the new body, other than to impregnate the egg or ovum. This impregnation or fertilization is accomplished by the Seed Atom of the future Physical Body which has been placed by the incoming Ego in the triangular head of one of the spermatozoa in the semen of the male; as pointed out years ago by the Rosicrucian Exponent P. B. Randolph in his designation of the "Zoas" of Man.

On the other hand, while the female is commonly supposed to be the negative of the two sexes, it is really her Physical Body that is negative, for her Etheric Body is positive, and the real creative pole of the sexes. The mother is the one who creates the new body in the microcosmic womb. It is she who formulates the egg or ovum that awaits possible fertilization.

**Woman the creator.**—It is for this reason that woman has always been honored by the Rosicrucian Brotherhood far above the honor accorded her by orthodoxy, which de facto regards her as more or less simply an incubator. Woman as creator partakes intimately of the Divine attributes, and Deity itself is regarded essentially as the Great Mother, feminine in its creative aspects.

**Menstruation.**—This explains the phenomena of Menstruation, which is even yet not conclusively or at any rate acceptably accounted for by medical science. The regular menstrual flow is simply nature's safety valve for the excess of blood generated for creative purposes by the Etheric Body of the female, and by some Rosicrucian exponents it is also taught that the ready and copious weeping of the female is due to the same cause.

**Anaesthesia.**—It can easily be seen that when the contact between the Etheric and Physical Bodies is broken, consciousness in the Physical ceases. This is the real basis for the operation of anaesthesia. The latter partially forces the Etheric Body from its concentric alignment with the Physical Body, and the latter is thus unconscious of what may be taking place in connection with it until the realignment is restored.

**Man's status.**—Consider the status of Man. First Virgin Spirit, differentiated from the Body of God; then Man, ultimately God, and in unconscionable aeons hence, an original Divine spark unfolded into a Divine Flame that will bring a universe yet to be into manifestation.

**Man's spherical processes.**—This sublime truth is also shown forth by Man's own involutory processes. In the period of his gestation in the womb his position is more or less spherical. His



body is bent *inwards*, extremities touching. This is the period of *his* creation. After birth the poles of consciousness are separated, and he stands erect, polar. Ultimately, when he too shall have run his evolutionary course and become a lofty planetary intelligence, the INDwelling spirit of a sphere yet to be, he will resume the bent position but *outwards*, extremities touching; the poles of consciousness reunited, and occupying the spherical condition of the star it may be his to govern. This is the status of the Great Being whom we call the INDwelling Spirit of Mother Earth.

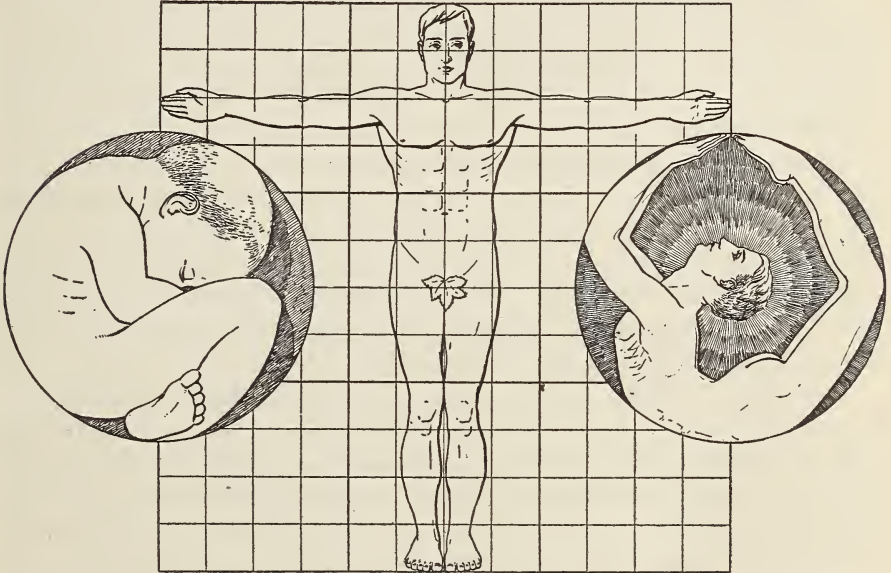


FIG. 15

DIAGRAMMATIC CHART SHOWING EVOLUTIONAL POSITION OF MAN. LEFT, AS THE HUMAN EMBRYO. CENTER, UPRIGHT, MATURE MAN, THE PERFECT SQUARE AND CUBE. RIGHT, EVOLVED, SPIRITUAL MAN, THE SYMBOLIC POSITION OF THE EARTH REGENT.

**Purpose of Man.**—At present it is the purpose of Man to absorb to the utmost the solar energy which surrounds him and which is absorbed by the Etheric Body at first as a colorless atmosphere, but which after its transit through the Spleen is transformed into a beautiful pale rose color and diffuses throughout the entire nervous system as the energizing, vitalizing force and power.

**Man's future vehicles.**—As a resume of this Instruction on Man and his Bodies, we may note that long before Man discards his present physical vehicle, he will have brought it to such comparative perfection that it will be as different from the present

vehicle a few millenia hence as the present is from the Pithecanthropus of the previous Instruction.

**Vehicles afford opportunity for experience.**—Man's vehicles are in themselves the answer to the oft propounded query—"what is the necessity for mortal life or expression?" The purpose of all life is experience. The vehicles afford the Ego an opportunity for the requisite experience, an opportunity in manifestation, creating, moulding, adapting, controlling, governing, and regenerating; all of which Man in his ultimate creative destiny will be called upon to accomplish.

**Ego's higher destiny.**—The Ego learns to build its own vehicles—an appropriate one for each separate world region, and to perfect them in order that ultimately it may become a creator on a cosmic scale, and guide and govern the creative processes of planets and their individual waves of evolution.

**Parable of the Talents.**—The purpose of Man's experience in the building of his vehicles is simply the moral of the parable of the "Talents." (Matt. xxv-21). That he may hear his Lord—the Absolute—say unto him, "well done, thou good and faithful (successful) servant (builder); thou hast been faithful (successful) over a few things (his vehicles), I will make thee ruler (creator) over many things (worlds and races)."

**Process is from within outwards and develops resistance.**—Remember always that the process of building or developing the various vehicles is from within, outwards, a crystallizing or hardening process of the outer, in contact with the expressed and manifest forces of the region of Matter. This develops latent powers of resistance, toughens the moral and spiritual fibre, gives self-control and makes the experience of each individual Ego peculiarly its own.

### QUESTIONS ON INSTRUCTION No. 3

1. How have we traced Man's lineage?
2. Give the symbolism of the Cross and Rose.
3. What does the Rose particularly symbolize?
4. What is the significance of the Indrawn Ego?
5. What are the three essentials in differentiating between the Animal and Human Kingdoms?
6. What are the Celestial Hierarchies?
7. Name them.
8. To what do they correspond?
9. Which of them are unknown?

10. With what periods do Hierarchies 3-5 correlate?
11. With what periods do Hierarchies 6-12 correlate?
12. What does the Ego possess?
13. Correlate the vehicles of the Ego with the mystic numbers 3, 5, 7, 9.
14. Give the three aspects of the Soul.
15. What IS the soul?
16. How is Man conceived of?
17. How does the Ego function in the lower vehicles?
18. Why is it so called?
19. How does the Ego operate?
20. Give the activities of the Hierarchies.
21. What is the status of these Hierarchies?
22. What is said of the Globes?
23. To what are they likened?
24. What is Man's most highly developed organ?
25. How is sense to be generalized?
26. To what region does the Physical Body correlate?
27. How does it appear clairvoyantly?
28. What is said of porosity?
29. What appearance does the Etheric Body present?
30. What is the definition of a part of the body "going to sleep"?
31. What is said of the atomic structure of the body?
32. What is meant by being born under the "Sign of Pisces"?
33. Where does Involution end and Evolution begin?
34. Name the vehicles of the Ego as commonly used.
35. What IS the EGO?
36. Recapitulate the Mental Sheath.
37. What are the different Memories?
38. What is the purpose of the Astral Body?
39. Has it consciousness?
40. What is said of mediums and seances?
41. What are "Shells"?
42. What are "Earth Bounds"?
43. What may we see in cemeteries?
44. What are the functions of the Etheric Body?
45. What does it do during sleep?
46. With what does the Physical Body correlate?
47. How does Man differ from animals?
48. Describe the organization of Man's vehicles.
49. Give an idea of his future evolution.
50. How many kinds of consciousness are there?

51. Of what is Man a synthesis?
52. In what worlds do Man's vehicles function?
53. Are these vehicles all born at once?
54. To what are these various births due?
55. How do the ethers act?
56. From what does everything originate?
57. What does each vehicle of Man possess?
58. Where is the Seed Atom of each vehicle located?
59. What is said of the spleen and liver?
60. What is the Silver cord?
61. What was Man's first Physical Body?
62. How did these bodies propagate?
63. What is the importance of the thymus gland?
64. How do the blood corpuscles and the "I" consciousness correlate?
65. Are Man's vehicles homogeneous?
66. How does Man correlate to the Periods and Epochs?
67. How is Man seen clairvoyantly?
68. Describe auras. Of each vehicle.
69. How is disease indicated?
70. What is the black aura?
71. How do the terms positive and negative relate to male and female?
72. What is Man's office in procreation?
73. What is woman really known to be?
74. What is the explanation of menstruation?
75. How does anaesthesia act?
76. Describe Man's spherical states.
77. What is the purpose of Man?
78. What do Man's vehicles afford?
79. What is Man's higher destiny?
80. Apply the parable of the talents.
81. What does Man's process of building develop?

INSTRUCTION IV.  
THE FOUR KINGDOMS.

DIVISIONS OF THE LIFE STREAM, THEIR NATURES  
AND ATTRIBUTES.

---

**The Life Stream Divides (Four Kingdoms).**—Rosicrucian science teaches that the Life Stream in its progress through Involuntary Processes and the commencement of Evolution, differentiates into four distinct streams known as “Kingdoms.” These are:

- 1 The Mineral Kingdom.
- 2 The Vegetable or Plant Kingdom.
- 3 The Animal Kingdom.
- 4 The Human Kingdom.

**Four Rivers.**—In another sense the Life Stream may be considered as branching out like the River of Eden into four distinct branches, running through Mineral, Vegetable, Animal and Human Matter.

**Held in common by all bodies.**—In either sense, these are the Four Life Kingdoms or four divisions of the Life Stream held in common by all legitimate occult bodies and by academic or material science as well.

**Purpose of Matter.**—The PURPOSE of Matter is to supply to the developing Spirit proper vehicles for expression, in order that it may have ample opportunity to contact all necessary experience.

**Substance of Matter.**—The SUBSTANCE of Matter in all the Kingdoms is identical, as Matter itself is simply crystallized Spirit. All substance is homogenous, Universal Cosmic Root Substance. No one world is finer than another, but the various worlds differ in density and gravity.

**Organic and Inorganic Divisions of Physical Science.**—Physical science divides the realm of Matter into two general divisions, ORGANIC and INORGANIC, each division being again subdivided into Type, Genus, Species, etc. Such subdivisions are necessary in the study of biology, zoology and kindred sciences, and they are also necessary in Rosicrucian Science; for the occult student is

called upon to consider the minutiae of species in order to obtain an accurate knowledge of the generalized conditions of life as pertaining to a given Kingdom.

**Planetary Ether interpenetrates.**—The atoms of all the world regions described in the previous Instructions interpenetrate all the Four Kingdoms, and for this reason it must be understood that in order to express ALL the conditions of a particular Kingdom a separate Etheric and Astral Body must be present, else the expression of that Kingdom will be limited.

**Ethers active in the Four Kingdoms.**—In the Four Kingdoms the Ethers are active as follows:

- 1 Mineral Kingdom, Chemical Ether.
- 2 Vegetable Kingdom, Chemical and Life Ethers.
- 3 Animal Kingdom, Chemical, Life and Light Ethers.
- 4 Human Kingdom, Chemical, Life, Light and Reflecting

Ethers.

**Vehicles of the Kingdoms.**—The vehicles of the Involving and Evolving Spirit in the Four Kingdoms are:

- 1 Mineral Kingdom, Physical Body.
- 2 Vegetable Kingdom, Physical and Etheric Bodies.
- 3 Animal Kingdom, Physical, Etheric and Astral Bodies.
- 4 Human Kingdom, Physical, Etheric, Astral Bodies and

Mental Sheath.

**Powers peculiar to each Kingdom.**—Thus the powers peculiar to the Four Kingdoms are:

- 1 Mineral Kingdom, latent until released by exterior conditions.
- 2 Vegetable Kingdom, Growth and Propagation.
- 3 Animal Kingdom, Growth, Propagation, Locomotion.
- 4 Human Kingdom, Growth, Propagation, Locomotion, Thought.

This explains the states of consciousness pertaining to each Kingdom as given in a previous Instruction.

**States of Consciousness defined.**—In the Mineral Kingdom only the Chemical Ether is active, producing the formation and crystallization of the substance; Chemical Forces are therefore latent and confined. The consciousness of the involving Spirit is therefore also latent and confined and is described as the Trance state of consciousness.

In the Vegetable Kingdom, the Chemical and Life Ethers being active make growth possible by the former, and propagation possible by the activity of the latter in connection with the sepa-

rate Etheric Body. Light Ether is present but latent, hence the consciousness is that of Dreamless Sleep.

In the Animal Kingdom, the Chemical, Life and Light Ethers being active make growth and assimilation possible by the first, propagation by the second, and by the third locomotion consequent upon awakening of sense perception and the resultant development of the necessary means therefor in obedience to the law that Nature creates in accord with necessity. The Reflecting Ether is present but dormant, hence the consciousness is Dream Sleep or not quite full possession of the complete sensoria.

In the Human Kingdom, all ethers are active, hence full waking consciousness with complete possession and activity of all sensoria, the faculty of thought in distinction to instinct and memory.

**Fourth Memory.**—We have previously cited three states of memory, the sub-conscious, conscious, and super-conscious. We now add a fourth state, the Cosmic Memory, the function of which is to give to the ultimate Initiate the consciousness not only of his past incarnations in human form but the consciousness of his states during his Involutionary processes and periods, as well as his Evolutionary ones. Such is not only possible but has been demonstrated.

**Elementals.**—It is principally in connection with the Mineral Kingdom and the transitional state to the Vegetable that we come into contact with the fairy creatures known to Rosicrucians as Elementals, elemental types or forms of Humanity wherein the Involved Spirit is leaving the Animal Kingdom to become Human, but inhabiting largely the realm of the Mineral erstwhile. These Elementals are:

- 1 The Gnomes, Spirits of Earth.
- 2 The Sylphs, Spirits of Air.
- 3 The Salamanders, Spirits of Fire.
- 4 The Undines, Spirits of Water.

Their direct and close approximation and association with the Four Elements indicates the reason why we find them so often present in the various conditions pertaining to the Mineral Kingdom.

**Transitional Processes.**—The transition of the stream of Life from one Kingdom to another is after this wise:

The Mineral Spirit being so confined by the process of Crystallization adjusts itself to the geometric and purely mathematic

form of Crystals, remaining inert until acted upon by exterior forces.\*

The Vegetable Spirits assimilate the crystallized elements, transmuting them into crystalloids.

These crystalloids are then assimilated by the Spirits of the Animal and Human Kingdoms, transmuted into cells, and compounded into organs.

**Protoplasm.**—Here we contact one of the most important features in the whole study of Matter, the feature or rather phenomenon of PROTOPLASM.

**Colloids.**—Above we stated that the Spirits of the Plant Kingdom assimilated the Mineral Crystals, transmuting them into Crystalloids. A crystalloid is one of a class of substances usually crystallizable, whose solutions are readily diffusible in opposition to COLLOIDS. In botanical science it is a crystal-like protein body in plant cells, a protein crystal. Living matter displays, in fact, the energy of colloidal, and the plan of crystalloidal matter.<sup>1</sup> In relation to minerals and metals a colloid is either, dissolved and in suspension.

Therefore cells actually begin with the Vegetable Kingdom in its most primitive forms and our contact at this point with the primitive cells leads us to a deeper consideration of the great scientific mystery PROTOPLASM. Protoplasm is defined as the "viscid, contractile, semiliquid, more or less granular substance, that forms the principal portion of an animal or vegetable cell; sarcode."

The name was first applied in 1846 to the matter in vegetable cells, which had been observed by Corte in 1772, and by Treviranus in 1807, and which was identified later with the animal substance previously known as *sarcode*. The protoplasm of most cells appears under high powers of the microscope as a network (Spongoplasm, or reticulum), containing a more fluid substance (Hyaloplasm or enchylema) in its meshes. Chemically, it is a mixture of 80 to 85% water, and 15 to 20% solids, chiefly proteids, as albumoses, globulins and peptones, with small quantities of fat, carbo-hydrates like glycogen and inosite, and mineral salts, espe-

\*The subject of crystallization on which so much stress is laid in Rosicrucian science obviously opens vast fields for investigation. Added impetus to this investigation has recently been given by the work of Mr. A. McLean Nicolson, a New York scientist, who has produced what are popularly termed "Talking Crystals," which are simply large crystals of Rochelle Salts specially grown and treated, and to which electrical connections are made. Under the electrical current the crystal twists or vibrates and can be made to give off a sound audible for several hundred feet.



cially those of potassium, which cause it to yield an alkaline reaction. Protoplasm has been called by Huxley, owing to its presence in all organized bodies, "THE PHYSICAL BASIS OF LIFE," and some have held that its phenomena show that the difference between organized and unorganized matter is simply a difference of complexity of chemical constitution.

**No difference in Protoplasms.**—Protoplasm, simple as it appears, yet mysterious as it is, "appears to be a highly complex substance, and is regarded as a mixture of different chemical substances. BUT NO APPRECIABLE DIFFERENCE IS TO BE PERCEIVED BETWEEN PROTOPLASM OF LOWER FORMS OF LIFE AND THOSE OF HIGHER ANIMALS. Protoplasm is contractile and irritable, and reproduces by self-division."

**Fact of biological interest.**—It is a fact of great biological interest that in animals the essential constituent of all living parts is a substance similar to the protoplasm of plants. WE CANNOT DISTINGUISH THE TWO BY ANY CHEMICAL OR PHYSICAL TESTS, and can only say that, taken as a whole, the protoplasm of plants differs from that of animals in its secretions.<sup>2</sup>

**Protoplasmic movement.**—The movement of living protoplasm must be classed with muscular and ciliary movement, with which it is closely associated.<sup>3</sup>

**Protoplasm, the Mystery.**—Protoplasm is the great mystery of all science. The greatest savant cannot explain whether a protoplasmic cell will evolve as a plant or a human, nor can he explain the reason of its choice or the laws impelling it thereto when its course of development has become obvious.

**Transitional types.**—It is through the connecting link of protoplasm that we have the transitional types:

- 1 The Mineral-Plant.
- 2 The Plant-Animal.
- 3 The Animal-Man.<sup>4</sup>

Living evidences and vestigial remains of these types are familiar to all occult and physical science students.

**Group Spirits.**—Involutionary progress in the first three Kingdoms, and in the Human until the Ego is fully indrawn and assumes individual control of its temporary organism or set of vehicles (which is what constitutes an individual), is under the guidance of GROUP SPIRITS, of which mention has already been made. Heindel gives an excellent illustration of the action of the Group Spirit by supposing a sheet hung across a room, in which were cut ten holes. The fingers inserted through the holes repre-

sent a given species of animal. To the observer, the fingers all seem to be actuated by individual desire or impulse, moving in various directions. But if the observer look behind the screen he will see all the fingers connected and the whole moving under the direction of the guiding spirit or brain of the operator.<sup>5</sup>

**Breaking up of Mineral Kingdom.**—Thus it is with the manifold species of the first three Kingdoms. Of course there is no motion in the Mineral Kingdom, but there is a slow, gradual breaking up or disintegration of the Minerals whereby the Mineral Spirits are being liberated. In the vegetable and animal Kingdoms the guidance is more apparent.

**All types identical.**—One tree, shrub or flower of a species can always be counted upon to behave exactly like any other member of the same species. The tiger is a complete example of ALL tigers, the Elephant of ALL Elephants. This shows the generic and common guidance of the entire species.

**Except types of Man.**—This does not hold true in the Human Kingdom because the Ego is the Spirit individualized, and become self-conscious. At the beginning of human incarnation the primitive incarnates are assisted by Race Spirits acting under the guidance of lower Celestial Hierarchies who are entrusted with the responsibility of guiding human evolution, but as soon as the Ego is fully INdrawn into all its vehicles, it assumes full, complete, and individual control of the organisms. Thus one Chinaman is not a complete example of the entire Mongolian Race, nor is one Anglo-Saxon a true type of the Caucasian. EVERY HUMAN BEING IS A DISTINCT, SEPARATE, INDIVIDUAL ENTITY, bound to a certain extent to act in obedience to cosmic or natural laws, yet endowed with a specific amount of free-will which enables him to progress by accomplishing a little NEW, independent work in each incarnation.

**Free-Will.**—This endowment of free-will is absolutely necessary, otherwise every human being would be simply the puppet of unknown and unseen forces playing about him, and no value would attach to his good or right actions, neither would punishment, disapproval or personal responsibility attach to his wrong actions.

**Personal and Moral Responsibility.**—We may confine an animal for certain actions, as a matter of safety or precaution, but we do not think for a moment of attaching to it a degree of responsibility as to its moral status or personal responsibility, simply because the animal is not a person, nor is it bound by laws governing

morality, but acts simply in blind obedience to the dictates of the group spirit which in the lower Kingdoms is necessary.

**Amount of Free-Will enjoyed is the measure of Personal Responsibility.**—FREE-WILL, therefore, is one of the distinguishing features of the Human Kingdom, and the farther the individual progresses in his incarnations, and learns to use his free-will constructively, the more the element of free-will is given him to use in fuller measure, and independently of circumscribing laws, simply because the individual by such a time has become thoroughly en rapport and in harmony with all law and is therefore more and more above the law.

**Voluntary and Involuntary Incarnations.**—As the individual nears the end of his incarnations of the involuntary or compulsory class, he enjoys an almost unlimited amount of free-will; in fact is not conscious of inhibiting or circumscribing laws of any sort. When his involuntary incarnations have been entirely completed and he engages for the service of humanity in purely voluntary incarnations, he enjoys an amount of free-will accompanied by spiritual powers which make him as St. Paul saith, "a little lower than the angels." (Heb. ii-7.)

**Feeling and Sensation in the Four Kingdoms.**—We have stated the activities of the Ethers in the Four Kingdoms and some of the phenomena resultant upon their activity. We are now confronted with several of the moot questions which occur both to physical and occult scientists equally, "Is there such a thing as FEELING, SENSATION, OR THOUGHT IN THE LOWER KINGDOMS?" These are questions often asked, and in view of biological progress at the present time they are not entirely without warrant.

We may reply unequivocally to the last, there is no such thing as thought below the Human Kingdom. Remember the states of consciousness peculiar to each Kingdom; Trance to the Mineral, Dreamless Sleep to the Vegetable, Dream Sleep to the Animal and WAKING CONSCIOUSNESS TO THE HUMAN.

**Liberation of Mineral Spirit and danger of too great crystallization.**—In the Mineral Kingdom there is neither active consciousness nor sensation. The Mineral has no separate vehicle, and without the Astral vehicle there is no feeling or sensation. Therefore the Mineral has no feeling through powers of its own. There is, however, a distinct sense of feeling in the Mineral Kingdom coming in one special way: the breaking up of its Body. This feeling is in reality the sense of liberation which comes to the

imprisoned or crystallized Mineral Spirit, and is the relief at being disengaged from its crystallized state. This imprisonment is the result of too deep an extent of the process of crystallization, and we shall soon see how that same danger of crystallization reaches all through the various Kingdoms.

**Mineral uses Astral Body of Indwelling Spirit.**—While the Mineral feels this condition of liberation through no powers of its own, it must be remembered that the Mineral Kingdom constitutes the substance of the physical body of the Indwelling Spirit of the whole Earth, and therefore experiences this sense of liberation through the Astral Body of the Indwelling Spirit, although not through any separate vehicle of its own.

**All Kingdoms unite to assist the Mineral.**—For this reason mining and the breaking up of the rocks is a great benefit to the Mineral Spirit, liberating it and assisting it in its further progress along the Path. Thus the operations of the Vegetable Kingdom in opening up the Earth through the expansive powers of roots, the power of frost and ice, the burrowings of animals, and the mechanical enterprises of man all unite to assist this, the lowest of all the Kingdoms, in its progress.



FIG. 16  
NATURE FORCES ASSISTING IN BREAKING UP THE MINERAL  
KINGDOM. A TREE GROWING UP THROUGH A ROCK  
NEAR TAUNTON, MASS. THE SPLITTING WAS  
ASSISTED BY FROSTS.  
—(Photo by Studley, Providence.)

**Feeling and Sensation in Plants.**—With the Vegetable Kingdom it is different. This Kingdom enjoys both the Etheric and Physical Bodies. Added power is given to its species by the Etheric Body and it experiences sensation and feeling to a much greater extent than the Mineral, although still by virtue of the Astral Body of the Indwelling Spirit and not by a separate Astral vehicle of its own. But it is able to respond in a much greater measure to the impulses of the Astral Body of the Indwelling Spirit, or as we may better term it, the Planetary Astral Body, and therefore we see many interesting phenomena exhibited.

**Phenomena exhibited by species of the Vegetable Kingdom.**—Witness the selective powers exhibited by many plants, some even known as plants of prey, laying traps for their victims; others responding in marvelous manner to various sympathetic personalities and positively refusing to thrive under the influence of opposite personalities. Tropical vegetation especially offers many marvelous phenomena, and scientists have lately expended much time and thought in experiment to determine whether or not plants may be said to have individual intelligence, but whatever their findings may be and however they may be stated, will not alter the fact that any intelligence or power of sensation manifested by species of the Vegetable Kingdom will be found to be exercised through the powers of the Planetary Astral Body.

**Pain and Pleasure to the Vegetable Kingdom.**—In this connection it is well to note that analogous to the phenomena of relief or liberation expressed or felt by the Mineral Spirit at the breaking up of its Physical Body, there is also a similar feeling manifesting in the Vegetable Kingdom as pain or pleasure in the treatment accorded its species by both animals and Man.

The fruition of the plant or tree is in its fruit and flower. That is the chief purpose of its existence, as is also the purpose of perpetuating the species the chief end of the animal and human Kingdoms on the purely physical side.

**How given.**.....The purpose of the tree or plant is to give forth its fruit, which, however, it cannot do of its own effort but must depend upon exterior agencies of Nature or the two higher Kingdoms, both of which are great factors in the plucking of fruit and the dissemination of the seed of the Vegetable Kingdom. When fruit or flowers are plucked, it gives relief and pleasure to the Vegetable Kingdom through the Planetary Astral Body, but when violently or wantonly torn up by the roots it causes pain to the

Vegetable species due to the forced separation from their natural environment, and so-called death ensues.

**Pain and Pleasure Among the Animals (Instinct).**—The Animal Kingdom having the separate Astral Body is capable in its species of experiencing definite pain and pleasure through emotional and sensational conditions, and is conscious of them through its condition of dream sleep consciousness. For this reason animals are able to stand much greater degrees of actual physical pain than the more highly sensitized and organized Human Kingdom, and Nature in lieu of definite waking consciousness has given them that conformity to type and generic obedience to the dictates of the Animal Group Spirits that impels them to certain action under given conditions, that we call INSTINCT. While the animals see as members of the Human Kingdom see, nevertheless they see as in dream pictures, and the close study of any small animal will confirm this fact and exhibit most interesting phenomena.

**Animals also clairvoyant.**—It is interesting in considering the matter of animal intelligence to observe that nearly all animals are clairvoyant, but especially the elephant, horse, dog and cat. The cat is perhaps the most remarkably clairvoyant of all, and the sudden jumpings, turnings, etc., of the household cat when no observable impulse or cause may be apparent is the direct result of the clairvoyance of the animal, it seeing the invisible conditions as clearly as the mundane or visible, and in its state of dream sleep consciousness, unable to distinguish between them.

**Animals intelligent by Induction.**—Another phenomenon observable in animals kept in close contact with humans, is the greater degree of intelligence displayed by them, in comparison with the wild or undomesticated members of the same species. The cat or dog allowed to "run loose" displays no more than ordinary, mongrel intelligence, but the horse, dog or cat, made the personal companions of one or more humans, segregated from the rest of its species, and treated as a personality, not as a mere animal, soon begins to manifest an individuality, personality and a degree of intelligence that under carefully observed conditions takes on the aspect of actual thought process.

**Condition apparent, not actual.**—This condition we know to be more apparent than actual. For the animal cannot have an indrawn Ego, in fact has no Ego whatever; therefore cannot think as the lowest members of the Human Kingdom can do. But animals are capable of taking on a degree of intelligence BY INDUCTION on the same principle as electrical induction, that enables them to

manifest a high degree of intelligence and even sagacity under extraordinary conditions. And it is also right to state that animals so treated by the human species are inestimably assisted in their evolutionary development. Every animal so assisted and made the companion of a human, is thereby enabled to accomplish great time gaps in developmental process ahead of its associated specie members. This is another contributory cause to the phenomena of advanced members of each Kingdom.

**Feeling and Sensation in the Human Kingdom.**—In the Human Kingdom we have the realization and appreciation of Feeling and Sensation in their most acute form. Not only has the Human Kingdom the full complement of separate vehicles, but the IN-drawn Ego ruling all of them and functioning through all, is able to contact consciously all exterior environment and gain experience through all the varied phenomena of feeling and sensation that the various avenues of sense perception can express.

**Sense of Right and Wrong.**—In addition to the ability to cognize consciously all the phenomena of feeling and sensation, the Human has also the ability to differentiate between the comparative right and wrong of a given set of feelings or sensations, whether they should be renewed, repeated or encouraged, or vice versa. This comes from the full possession of waking consciousness, which conveys the power of thought, or the translation of exterior impacts in terms of conscious relations; the privilege of individual action, choice, and a definite amount of Free-will.

**Reason.**—These attributes and properties just named combine to crown the Human Species with the supreme gift of Reason, which must be given a somewhat detailed description. Reason is defined<sup>6</sup> as the group of faculties, attributes, or activities which distinguishes man as a so-called rational animal from the brutes. This group may be classified under two broad general divisions:

1 Discursive Reason—by which man becomes capable of learning and scientific achievements. The logical understanding, which the lower animals have not.

2 a—Pure Reason, a collective term as applied to the so-called a priori constitution of thought and the capacity for framing and following ethical, aesthetical and religious ideals, of which the lower animals show few or no traces, and b—Practical Reason, as applied to conduct.

Reason is, collectively, the faculty that enables one to distinguish between the true and the false, in the degree possessed by all sane persons, the normal exercise of the rational faculties;

the mature consensus of public thought, regarded as a standard in the community.

**Reasoning.**—Reasoning is the mental act, process, or faculty of deriving conclusions from facts or propositions, admitted or assumed, for the sake of argument, ratiocination, or argumentation.

The reasoning may be either

- a False.
- b True.

and is—

- a Deductive.
- b Inductive.
- c Categorical.
- d Disjunctive.
- e Hypothetical.
- f Syllogistic.

**Value of the Mental Sheath.**—This process of Reason and reasoning is made possible by the indrawing of the Ego, its adaptation of all the physical avenues of sense perception, and above all, the addition of the mental sheath or mind stuff through which the Ego functions consciously in the lower vehicles. And when it is remembered that at present the mind stuff is merely a sheath, and not as yet a truly organized vehicle or body, we can perceive that our mental powers are as yet scarcely incubated, and eons remote from what they will ultimately be. Verily, in that day shall our eyes be opened, and we shall be as Gods, KNOWING Good and Evil. Genesis, iii-5. Verily in that day shall Man be crowned with glory and honour and set over the works of (God's) hands. (Hebrews, ii-7.)

**Form, Color and Tone.**—Only Man, by his possession of all the requisite vehicles, is able to contact the higher ethical principles of Form, Color and Tone, and translate and adapt them to terms of his use and understanding. The Physical World is the World of FORM; the Astral World is the World of COLOR, and the World of Thought is the World of TONE, all differentiated states and rates of vibration, but Man, having vehicles peculiar to all three worlds, can contact the particular conditions of those worlds. Thus the sculptor uses especially the Physical Body and adapts himself to the vibrations of the higher phases of the Physical World; the artist to the Astral World, where color holds sway, and the musician to the highest of them all, wherein an especially sensitive ear, the result of training throughout several incarna-



tions, can bring to earth the delicate and subtle tones of these high or inner worlds. -

**Crystallization.**—These Instructions have emphasized the importance of understanding that all creative process, involutory and evolutionary, is the result of crystallization from within outwards, just as the shell fish crystallizes his outward body or vehicle from the soft tissues of his inner corpus. The physical body of all species is built into the matrix formed by the inner or higher vehicles, and becomes the outward, protective, hard exterior, necessary to supply the requisite resistance to outer impact during the occupancy of the developing species.

**Crystallization shows the "Lines of Force."**—Now this phenomenon of crystallization presents many interesting phases. First it shows the action of the inner worlds upon the outer and reveals the presence and lines of activity of the invisible forces. For instance, the frost appearing on the window panè as the result of the warm moisture of the interior of a room condensing and freezing; the various solutions of chemicals, show in the regular, geometric formations that while in solution, the lines of force were all the time present but invisible, but the process of frosting, of freezing, or the chemical process of crystal projection, makes those lines of force hitherto invisible, now fully visible and very beautiful to behold, a demonstration of the exact, methodical, scientific, geometric basis upon which all of Nature's processes are planned and operated.

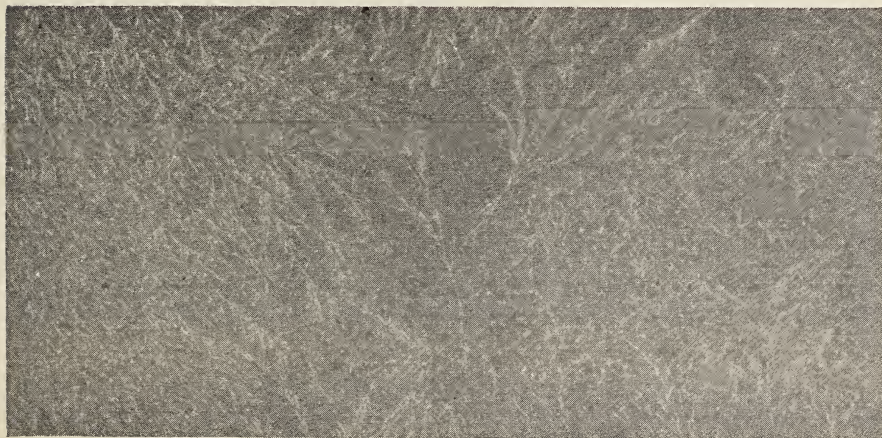


FIG. 17

BEAUTIFUL EFFECT PRODUCED, SHOWING THE LINES OF INVISIBLE FORCE MADE VISIBLE BY FREEZING WATER.

But the process of Crystallization also conceals specific dangers. In the Mineral Kingdom we observed that it has been carried to such an extent that the Mineral Spirit was practically powerless to help itself, except by waiting untold aeons until the rock should gradually "die" and disintegrate in that way, but was in reality dependent upon the activities of the three higher Kingdoms to release it, liberate it and allow it to proceed upon its developmental pathway.

**Crystallization in the Vegetable Kingdom; Sequoias, their age.**—This dangerous condition holds true in ALL the Kingdoms. While it is true that one of the basic laws is that of "conformity to type," nevertheless, while fully conforming thereto, we see a constant amplification and multiplication of types in the Vegetable world or Kingdom. We also find examples of types which have not improved, grown or developed in millions upon millions of years, as evidenced by fossiliferous vestigial remains in the lowest strata. The great trees of California are somewhat of this type, as some have imagined, and are the remains of an age when growth was comparatively unchecked. It would be difficult to estimate their true age, for occultists assign them an age far greater than that given by biologists. These Giant Sequoias, which attain a height of 200, 300 and even 400 feet, are said to be 1,335 years old. The famous "General Sherman Tree" in the Sequoia National Park having been 2,000 years old when Jesus was born, and still foliating, may be said to be the "Oldest Living Thing in the World." (*National Geographic Society.*) From occult sources we teach that the age of many of these trees is greater, and geologists and biologists as well as botanists concede that in "early geologic times these Sequoias occupied a far more important place in the vegetation of the earth."

**Their persistence.**—They occur in the lower chalk formations and in Tertiary times were widely diffused. The genus is represented in the Eocene flora of Great Britain, and in the succeeding Miocene period was widely distributed in Europe and Asia. IT IS PRESUMED THAT IN THE GLACIAL EPOCH, THE GENUS WAS EXTERMINATED, except in the areas in Western North America, where it still persists.

**Lesson of the Trees.**—These particular Trees have been mentioned as the most gigantic evidences of the crystallization of the Spirit of the Vegetable Kingdom in a specific type. The lesson is, that in all these ages, these trees have not progressed in perfection of type, grain, species, foliage, etc., but remain as mute evi-



FIG. 18

AMONG THE GIANT TREES. THIS TREE, "WAWONA" IS 300 FT. HIGH, 30 FT. THROUGH AND HAS A TUNNELED ROAD-WAY THROUGH IT 10 x 12 FT. THIS TUNNELING HAS HAD NO EFFECT UPON ITS VITALITY. SOME OF THESE TREES HAVE BEEN DESTROYED BY FOREST FIRES, BUT NONE HAVE BEEN KNOWN TO DIE FROM OLD AGE. THE INSERT SHOWS A GROUP OF "MEN" IN TRIUMPH OVER THEIR MURDER OF A MERE BABY SEQUOIA, A SAPLING AS IT WERE.

(From the "Big Trees of California," Southern Pacific Co.)

dence of gigantic, unchecked growth and nothing more. They too awaited the action of the tremendously powerful Glacial Epoch to release the genus and allow the imprisoned or crystallized Spirit therein to progress.

**Crystallization in the Animal Kingdom.**—Equally do we find this dangerous state of ultra or over-crystallization in the Animal Kingdom. Notably among the reptilia and semi-amphibians do we find types which have not changed during milliards, except as to size. They have crystallized into types or species and genus.

**Crystallization among Humans.**—Here crystallization carried to an unnecessary extent finds its greatest field and at the same time works the greatest harm. For among the Human Kingdom we find, not so much crystallization as to type, but as to Race. Today we find certain races which do not assimilate themselves among the other races of the world or even among those races with whom they elect to live and engage in business enterprise. Such are the Chinese, Thibetans, Hebrews, Arabians, Bedouins and many Asiatic and South American Races or groups. Some of these mentioned are gradually realizing the racial crystallization and attempting by change of name, rejection of racial religions and traditional practices and language, to break away from the thrall-dom of the Race Spirit deadlock, and some are attempting it more rapidly than others. The Japanese are a notable example of those who hold all that is of proven merit in the old, and embrace all that is worthy and desirable in the newer order of the world's affairs.

Such crystallization is dangerous to the races so involved, for it operates to hold such peoples over from one wave of evolution to another, making them stragglers in one wave, and "hold-overs" to another, which, not being of their original inception, is out of rapprochement with them in many essential ways.

**Life Currents of the Four Kingdoms.**—All that is, is a manifestation of Life. All Life has currents of vital force, either static or pulsating. Thus—

**The Mineral Kingdom** has its life currents, but they are the invisible currents of Force which manifest only when the phenomena of freezing or crystallization is introduced as previously described. Yet the results of the activity of these Mineral lines of force may be seen by a close analysis of the crystalline formation of the structure of the Mineral or Metal, especially in the case of gems. The student must not become confused, however, in studying the rocks, by the evidences exhibited by what are termed the

igneous rocks. Then, too, the currents of the Planetary Ethers flow continually through even the densest mineral structure, as no single atom contacts another atom, but all are separated by the ether.

**Vegetable Kingdom.**—In the Vegetable Kingdom, the current is known as the sap, which rises in summer and descends in winter, broadly speaking, with some exceptions. The circulation of the vegetable juices is due to the positive activity of the Light Ether, and the cessation of the flow in winter is due to the fact that the Light Ether is not surcharged, as normally, with the solar energy. The negative activity of the Light Ether causes the deposit of the chlorophyl or green coloring matter of plant life, and also the color on the flowers.

**Transition Stage.**—In the transition from the Plant to the Animal Kingdoms we encounter organisms or creatures possessing the power of motion, but without RED Blood. These creatures have as yet no Astral Body.

**Cold Blooded Animals.**—Immediately following this group of organisms, we have the Cold Blooded animals with both Liver and Red Blood, but cold. In these, there is an Astral Body, and the Group Spirit is at work directing the vitalizing currents INward. This pertains particularly to the Fish and Reptilia. The separate spirit of each example of the species is outside the organism.

**Warm Blooded Animals.**—When the separate Spirit outside each example of a species BEGINS to INdraw itself into its bodies or vehicles, it at the same time directs the vitalizing currents INward, producing WARM RED BLOOD, the beginning of pas-sional or emotional existence.

**Man.**—In the Human Kingdom, the Spirit is fully INdrawn, and bodily currents flow outward from the Liver, and the pulsating, vital force is the Warm, Red Blood, which, as we shall learn later, is the crystallized Fire of Cosmic vitality.

**Anaesthetics.**—The flow of blood is very largely dependent upon the activity of the Etheric Body and the Ethers. Thus when anaesthetics are used, they operate to dissociate the Etheric Body from the Physical Body, loosening the contact, and thus sensation ceases as far as consciousness of it is concerned. If carried too far, however, the Life Ether may be completely inhibited in its action, in which case death will ensue.

**Drowning and Freezing.**—The same phenomenon occurs in the case of drowning or freezing, or in bad dreams of the "nightmare" sort. The loss of consciousness is due to the separation of the

Etheric Body from the Physical, and the disagreeable feeling of returning consciousness of sensation, similar to that after an arm has "gone to sleep," is due to the reassociation or newly forming contact of the millions of points described in the previous Instruction.

**Status of the Kingdoms.**—The question is often asked by students of the evolutionary theories of Physical, as well as Occult Science—

**A Common Question.**—"Is everything that is now earthy or mineral, destined to become human at some future time period?"

Yes, and No.

Yes, in the sense that the Mineral Kingdom AS A KINGDOM is in process of involution and that its Spirit will ultimately evolve, even as the present wave of human evolution.

No, in the sense that every grain of sand or microscopic particle of the Mineral Kingdom is ultimately destined to become a human being.

This same question is often propounded in another form relating to the almost infinite number of species to be found in the Vegetable and Animal Kingdoms, especially among the Insecta.

The status of the Four Kingdoms is as follows:

1. The Mineral Kingdom, youngest of all Life Waves.
2. The Plant or Vegetable Kingdom.
3. The Animal Kingdom.
4. The Human Kingdom, oldest and most advanced of any Life Waves now operative upon this Planet.

One by one, each of the preceding Life Waves or Kingdoms, will, in order, attain the status now held by the Human Kingdom, AS KINGDOMS. Even the Human Kingdom has many aeons of evolutionary progress before it, for at present the Etheric Body of Man is far less organized than the Physical Body, being only in its third stage of development; the Astral Body is even less organized, while the Mind, as stated many times previously, is not a true body at all, but merely a sheath.

**How the Life Spirit evolves.**—Note carefully that we say that the Kingdoms will evolve AS KINGDOMS; that is, the Life Spirit ensouling each Kingdom evolves to the next higher Kingdom UNTIL IT REACHES THE HUMAN AND BECOMES INDIVIDUALIZED AS SEPARATE EGOS. This answers the questions fully. Not every atom or molecule, not every grain of sand; not every insect in multitudinous species, not every infinitesimal type of fungus is destined to become a separate, distinct human being.

**How the Human Kingdom is attained.**—When the Life Wave ensouling each of the three lower Kingdoms reaches the higher Animal stage, with separate Etheric and Astral Bodies or vehicles, begins to differentiate and closely approximate the Human, and finally each differentiation awakens to self-consciousness, giving up the ALL-Consciousness of original Virgin Spirit to take on Individual Consciousness, then it is that the Human Species becomes distinctly differentiated from the Lower forms of life, and the Higher Kingdom is at last attained.

**Cosmic Memory.**—Yet by the attainment of the Cosmic conscious Memory referred to, it is possible for the Initiate Human to remember its previous Involutionary and Evolutionary history throughout the aeons past, as Mineral, Plant and Animal.

**A development of Consciousness.**—It will have been noticed by the observing student that all this developmental and evolutionary progress has really been a development of Consciousness. And here we have the real reason for Mortal Expression or Physical Life,—to enable the involving and then evolving Virgin Spirit to attain the epitome of concentrative power, resistance, and creative force, summarized by the term “focus” which we also apply to Mind as the lens through which the Ego focusses itself in Matter. By the expression of Mortal Life the Spirit enters into conscious use of all the faculties contributed by its previous developmental stages.

**Attributes contributed by previous stages.**—Thus the Mineral stage contributed hardness, resistance, strength, cohesion, and static power; the Vegetable Kingdom contributes to nascent Man, or Man-in-the-making, growth, expansion, circulatory life currents, pliability, etc.; the Animal Kingdom gives the beginning of locomotion, emotional states, amplified consciousness, adaptation to environment, greater ability to survive in the struggle for the survival of the fittest, and finally the Human stage epitomizes them all.

**Types still evident.**—Thus we see the evidences of the pig at the dinner table, the fox in the law courts, the tiger in the haunts of vice, the dull plodding ox among the laboring classes, the faithful watch dog among sincere clergy, and types too numerous to mention.

**Steiner on Evolution.**—Steiner gives an excellent light on evolutionary processes when he writes:<sup>7</sup> “All evolution is indeed due to the fact that independent being IS FIRST SEPARATED FROM THE LIFE SURROUNDING IT: that next the environment is

impressed, as by reflection, UPON THE BEING SEPARATED OFF AND THAT THEN THIS DETACHED BEING INDEPENDENTLY EVOLVES FURTHER."

**Basis of potential force.**—We must not forget in all our study of the wonderful process and progress of involutionary activities, that the developing Life Stream is sustained and prevented from exhaustion by power deep in the unseen world, the very root of all being, the inexhaustible Source, the ABSOLUTE itself.

**"I" Consciousness.**—We have already given the correspondence between the Kingdoms and the vehicles of man. In addition let it be emphasized that the 4th correspondence, namely, the Human Kingdom to the Physical, Etheric, Astral Bodies and Mental Sheath, should also always include the EGO and the definite "I" consciousness whenever the student is studying or elucidating this particular feature.

**Correlative Activities.**—It is useful to hold in mind the following tabulation of interactivities of the vehicles or bodies:

1. The Physical Body.....would decay if not held together and vitalized by the Etheric Body.
2. The Etheric Body .....would drop into unconsciousness if not irradiated by the Astral Body.
3. The Astral Body.....would lose all the past to the Ego, if not constantly maintained in PRESENT activity by the Ego functioning through the Mental Sheath.

**Equations.**—Death is to the Physical Body, and Sleep to the Etheric Body, as is the power of Forgetting to the Astral Body.

**An Alternative.**—We may put this truth in another way by stating that—

1. Growth is the function of the Physical Body.
2. Life is the function of the Etheric Body.
3. Consciousness is the function of the Astral Body.
4. Memory is the function of the Ego.

**Man differs from all preceding Kingdoms, SOUL.**—Man differs from all the preceding Kingdoms in one feature of paramount importance, his possession of a soul, which was described in Instruction No. 1. Through the possession of the Soul, which is the essence extracted from the Threefold Body by the Threefold



Spirit and utilized as the sustenance and nourishment of the Ego, "Man is able to find the Divine Element within him, because his original essence was derived directly from the Divine, as outlined in the Instruction on the 'Lineage of Man.' Through the SOUL Principle within him, Man attains to an inner knowledge of himself, just as through his ASTRAL BODY, he gains knowledge of the outer world.<sup>8</sup>

**Battle of the Cells.**—Throughout the Four Kingdoms, the student witnesses the constant warfare of the infinitesimals, the warfare that never ceases, the battle of the cells. Cells die and perish that cells may live. All life means death to something, but as we shall later learn, there is no such thing as death as ordinarily understood, that is, in the sense of cessation of Life. Life is imperishable because it is all a part of the ONE LIFE of the ABSOLUTE and no modicum of it can be annihilated. Only its immediate vehicle can be destroyed.

**Dreams.**—The last phenomenon we shall consider in relation to the species of the Human Kingdom is that of Dreams, a form or state of consciousness not ordinarily understood, in spite of the clumsy attempts at its elucidation by academic psychology. Dreaming may be said to be an intermediate state of consciousness between sleeping and waking. It comes naturally under three classifications:

- Classifications.**—1. Physiological,  
 2. Psychological,  
 3. Psychical.

The first classification may be said to be due to lack of co-ordination between the brain cells as the result of imperfect inter-activity between the Etheric and Physical Bodies during sleep, owing to lack of co-ordination between the various organs of the Physical Body, digestive, and nerve conditions.

The second classification is the natural result of contact with the pulsating conditions of the Ethers, especially the Reflecting Ether and the Memory of Nature, the pictures therein contained, and conditions peculiar to the Astral World, and even in some cases to the lower regions of the World of Thought. Also the phenomena of dreams indicating strenuous conditions of choking and the like, when waking consciousness reveals the fact that a pet animal has gone to sleep upon the sleeper's chest. In the dream state the sleeper is freed from the usual laws which regulate our waking consciousness.

**Dreamless Sleep.**—In order to have absolutely sound, refreshing, dreamless sleep, the Astral Body must be fully withdrawn from the Etheric and Physical Bodies.

In the Dream state it is separated from the Physical Body but still persists in maintaining a sort of connection with the Etheric Body. It is to this connection that we are indebted for the ability to know in some degree of the experiences of the Astral Body, but the moment this connection is broken off, the Astral pictures fade into oblivion, unconsciousness sets in and we are in dreamless sleep. It is while in the state before the connection is broken that we experience the Psychological classification of dreams. Then we are able somewhat to become cognizant of the purely psychical conditions of the Astral and even higher regions, sometimes even contacting the archetypal regions.

**Inventions.**—In such cases many inventions have been given to man, in fact the great preponderance of remarkable and useful inventions have undoubtedly been given to man through the dream state.

**Nonsensical Dreams.**—Nonsensical dreams are a puzzle to occult and physical scientists alike. They may be due to a phenomenon describable as a photographic image out of focus. On account of its separation from the sense organs of the Physical Body, the Astral Body cannot register its conditions and pictures accurately in terms of outer or exterior environment, and therefore we get only a blurred image or presentation which oftentimes is a burlesque of the real condition sought to be demonstrated.

**Sparks from the Divine Flame.**—A further consideration of the mental and solar powers of the Human Species will be taken up in the next Instruction, on the Life Cycle and Reincarnation.

Rosicrucianism teaches that the Life Wave ENSOULING a Kingdom evolves, but as we have stated, that does not mean that every grain or molecule of substance is destined to become a human being ultimately. The Life Wave itself numbers countless Virgin Spirits differentiated from the Body of God, or "Sparks from the Divine Flame." A stated emanation of the Sparks or Virgin Spirits constitutes a stated Life Wave.

**Matter merely furnishes vehicles.**—For their "dip into Matter" they draw from and upon the surrounding Cosmic Root Substance, and crystallize from within outwards, the requisite vehicles. Thus, it must be clear that the Spirit within evolves, while the visible substance of Matter merely furnishes the vehicles, which,

in due time, disintegrate into their original cosmic condition, to be again used in future creative and evolutionary functions and processes.

#### QUESTIONS ON INSTRUCTION No. 4

1. How does the Life Stream differentiate?
2. What are the Four Kingdoms?
3. To what are they compared?
4. What is the purpose of Matter?
5. What is the Substance of Matter?
6. What are the two general divisions of the realm of Matter?
7. How are all the great Four Kingdoms interpenetrated?
8. How are the Ethers active in the Four Kingdoms?
9. How do the Kingdoms correspond to the Vehicles?
10. What are the powers and functions of each Kingdom?
11. Define the states of consciousness pertaining to each Kingdom.
12. What is the 4th Memory?
13. What are Elementals?
14. Name them.
15. What are the transitional processes of the Life Stream?
16. What is Protoplasm?
17. What does Prof. Huxley say of Protoplasm?
18. What differences does examination of Protoplasm reveal?
19. What is the great fact of biological interest?
20. Why is Protoplasm called the great mystery?
21. Name the transitional types of Life.
22. Describe illustration of Group Spirits.
23. How is the Mineral Kingdom broken up?

24. What is the difference between species in the three lower Kingdoms and types in the Human Kingdom?
25. What is said of Free-will?
26. What is said of personal responsibility and the moral status?
27. What is the measure of the amount of enjoyment of Free Will?
28. How does free-will relate to involuntary and voluntary incarnations?
29. What is said of Feeling and Sensation in the Four Kingdoms?
30. What is meant by the liberation of the Mineral Spirit?
31. What is the danger of too great a degree of crystallization?
32. What vehicle does the Mineral Spirit use?
33. How do the Kingdoms unite to assist the Mineral Kingdom?
34. What is said of Feeling and Sensation in plants?
35. Describe some of the phenomena exhibited by plants.
36. Are Pain and Pleasure experienced in the Vegetable Kingdom?
37. Are Pain and Pleasure experienced among the Animals?
38. What is instinct?
39. Are animals clairvoyant?
40. How are animals notably intelligent?
41. Is this a real condition or an apparent one?
42. What is said of Feeling and Sensation in the Human Kingdom?
43. Whence comes the sense of "right and wrong"?
44. What is reason?
45. Give its classifications.
46. What are the processes of reasoning?
47. What is the value of the mental sheath?
48. What are the regions of Form, Color and Tone?

49. What is the importance of crystallization?
50. What does it show?
51. What is said of crystallization in the Vegetable Kingdom?
52. What do the giant Sequoias illustrate?
53. What is crystallization in the Animal Kingdom?
54. What is meant by crystallization in the Human Kingdom?
55. What are the Life Currents in the Four Kingdoms?
56. What do we encounter in the transition from the Plant to the Animal Kingdoms?
57. What distinguishes Cold Blooded animals?
58. What distinguishes Warm Blooded animals?
59. What distinguishes Man?
60. What is the action of anaesthetics?
61. What phenomena occur in the case of drowning or freezing?
62. What are common questions concerning evolution?
63. What is the status of each of the Four Kingdoms?
64. How DOES the Life Spirit evolve?
65. How is the Human Kingdom attained?
66. What will the cosmic memory do for the Initiate?
67. What does the evolutionary progress really constitute?
68. What attributes are contributed by previous stages?
69. How are types of animals still evident in the Human Species?
70. What does Steiner say of Evolution?
71. What is the ultimate basis of potential force?
72. Where does the "I" consciousness become apparent?
73. Give the tabulation of vehicular interactivity.
74. Give a notable equation.
75. Give its alternative.
76. How does Man differ from all preceding Kingdoms?

77. What is the battle of the cells?
78. What are dreams?
79. Give their classifications.
80. What is dreamless sleep?
81. How are inventions given?
82. What is said of nonsensical dreams?



## INSTRUCTION V.

### REINCARNATION.

THE LIFE CYCLE, CONSCIOUSNESS, PURGATORY, PANORAMA,  
REBIRTH.

---

**Falsity of the saying, "Womb to Tomb."**—It is a common saying that Life is simply the "Journey from the womb to the tomb." It is a less common saying that the "womb is the tomb of spirit." Neither statement is true. But it IS true that both the womb and the tomb ARE ENTRANCES to widely differing phases of Life,—Life of an intense degree of activity.

**Illogical nature of the orthodox idea of Creation.**—It is the generally accepted teaching of orthodox Christianity, that human life exists only from mortal birth to physical death, and that thereafter, man awaits a general judgment for the deeds of the interim of the life expression. God, who is All Good, creates by special act, humanity, His creatures. Although All Good, He finds that He has produced something that is not All Good, and yet He pronounced the works of His hands to be VERY Good. According to orthodox teaching, God then appeases His own wrath by incarnating Himself as His own Son, that His creatures may sacrifice Him to Himself as a propitiation for their sin in being imperfectly created by God Himself.

**Teaching of Christianity; Inequalities and Injustices; Predestination.**—It is also the teaching of orthodox Christianity that each birth is, in a way, a special creation; that is, a physical body is born into the world by natural process, but that God gives to each a soul, and that, thus equipped, the being who has thus flashed into material expression out of an eternity past, to appear for a brief moment before disappearing for eternity to come, will be judged for the acts of that momentary fleeting expression for all future time, regardless of lack of opportunity, obvious inequalities, injustices, etc., and that the only help extended to mortals is through a vicarious system of salvation, with endless doctrinal shadings; some even going so far as to assert the predestination

and election to grace or damnation, relieving man of individual responsibility and in practice relegating him to the moral status of the animal kingdom.

**144,000.**—And many Christians still believe that out of the billions of humans that have lived and shall live, only 144,000 are ultimately to be saved.

**Occult science contradicts; What the Absolute cannot do.**—Occult science contradicts all such theories, assertions and teachings, on one unassailable basis, which is, **THAT THERE IS ONE THING THAT EVEN THE ABSOLUTE, GREAT AS IT IS, INCOMPREHENSIBLE AS IT IS, OMNISCIENT AS IT IS, CANNOT DO,—AND THAT IS, DESTROY LIFE.**

**The All-Life a Constant.**—All Life is an integral part of the **ALL-LIFE** and the **ONE-LIFE**, and no modicum of the All-Life or the Absolute can possibly fall or fail, because that would imply the death or failure of the Absolute itself, which is not only impossible but unthinkable. If the Absolute, as it surely is, is without beginning and without ending, boundless existence, ever-existent, then never by any possibility or circumstance can any part of its nature or substance cease to be. **ALL** is in the **ALL**, and the **ALL** is in **ALL**.

**Life Continuous; Absolute cannot commit suicide.**—As the Absolute is a constant in time and space, so must every part of His Nature and Substance be likewise. Therefore “all life is continuous, evolutionary, in a constantly ascending scale of progression.”<sup>1</sup> As the Absolute is constant, eternally existent, boundlessly existent, the Source and very being of **ALL-LIFE**, then it is impossible and unthinkable that the Absolute can take, stop, prevent, hinder, or inhibit **ANY PART OF ITS OWN LIFE, FOR THAT WOULD BE PARAMOUNT TO THE ABSOLUTE COMMITTING COSMIC SUICIDE**, which is inconceivable.

**No Life can be lost.**—Therefore no human or other form of life can ever be lost, damned, or destroyed. The temporary vehicle may be changed from time to time, but the Life itself being a part of the **ALL-LIFE**, must go on unfolding, expanding and growing, or as we say, evolving to higher and higher states of consciousness. The fact that All Life is a part of the **ALL-LIFE** and that no modicum of it can fall or ever be lost or destroyed is the esoteric truth concealed beneath the saying that is written, “and one of them (sparrows) shall not fall on the ground without your Father” (Matt. x-29).



**Womb and Tomb Entrances and Points of Departure.**—With this knowledge, both the womb and the tomb take on more cheerful aspects. BOTH are to the occultists ENTRANCES TO NEW LIFE and POINTS OF DEPARTURE from completed phases of temporary existence. We make our departure from the purely spiritual phase of existence through the womb, which becomes thereby the entrance to mortal life expression. We make our departure from mortal life through the tomb, which thereby becomes the entrance to the purely spiritual phase of life expression again.

**Cycle of Life.**—This indicates a constantly recurring CYCLE OF LIFE, which we shall give in detail, as to the principal epochal events and conditions.

The student learned in Instruction Number Three, that physical birth does not constitute the complete birth of all the vehicles at the same time. We will now indicate the complete order:

**FROM THE WOMB:**

- 1 Birth:—of the Physical Body. Entrance to Mortal Life.
- 2 Birth:—of the Etheric Body at the age of Seven.
- 3 Birth:—of the Astral Body at the age of Fourteen.  
Age of Puberty, beginning of attraction to opposite sex, and Propagative powers ripened.
- 4 Birth:—of the Mind faculties, at the age of Twenty-One.
- 5 The next series of seven years brings the human to the age of Twenty-eight, at which time the individual is generally settled in what is destined to be his life-work, although sometimes conditions operate to force an earlier choice or a later one, but it will be found that Nature makes Twenty-eight a fair general average, and occupations selected prior to that age are usually subject to later change. In a way it is a turning point, for its double, 56 years, will be found by insurance records to be very close to the average present age of humanity.

**Cycle of Life; "Prime of Life."**—

**TOWARD THE TOMB:**

- 6 The sixth stage in the career of the individual brings him to the age of Thirty-five, at which time he is said to be "in the very prime of life," and should be glowing with health and vitality and capable of standing severe mental and physical strain. But it also marks the stage of "second growth" so-called, in which the

notable features are a gradual decline of the reconstructive powers, and an increase of the mental powers, manifesting in calmer, more dispassionate judgment and conservatism.

#### **Change of Life in BOTH Male and Female.—**

- 7 The age of Forty-two marks a most important period for BOTH men and women. With a certain amount of latitude in both sexes due to climatic and previous health conditions, this is the approximate age known as the "Change of Life." It is commonly supposed that this pertains only to the female sex, but in reality it also applies to the males without, however, the attendance of so much visible phenomena. At this time the ovaries of the female begin to cease the production of the Graafian vesicles bearing the ovum or egg, and this is also accompanied by the cessation gradually of the periodic menstrual flow. With the male, this is often a period of critical health conditions, which, if successfully passed, mean excellent general health presumably for many years to come, but if passed with difficulty usually presage a comparatively shorter extent of the mortal life expression.

#### **Katabolism gains ascendancy.—**

- 8 This cycle of seven brings the individual to the age of Forty-nine, at which time one's mental powers should be at their prime of activity and productive capacity. From this time on, however, the approach to the Tomb is more rapid. The flight of Time seems more rapid to the individual, and one begins to be conscious of the fact that one is nearer to the termination of mortal expression than otherwise. The breaking down, destructive process or KATABOLISM, as opposed to ANABOLISM or constructive metabolism, is now in the ascendant. From now on, the duration of mortal expression will be largely in consonance with the sort of life the individual has previously led.

#### **Living the Life.—**

If that life has been one of dissipation, wasting of one's energies, such an individual has little to expect from Nature outraged, in the shape of clemency. If the individual has lived in conscious harmony with

Nature's laws, then he can reasonably expect that the sunset of mortal life will be prolonged, and glorious in its approaching climax.

#### **Astrological Influences.—**

- 9 Here the student who has engaged in the study of astrology may ask, "what about the directions in one's horoscope?" It is manifestly impossible to insert in this Instruction a detailed exegesis of astrological delineations, but it may be said in general that only the fool, simpleton, wastrel, ignorant or careless and indifferent person need be a slave to, or ruled by, his stars. The stars DO indicate general epochal events that cannot be escaped, but the individual by an intelligent knowledge thereof, may mitigate or assist a given direction by co-operation with or preparation against it. "The WISE MAN RULES HIS STARS," is NOT ruled by them. The horoscope indicates the general trend that may be expected if the native follows blindly or passively the indication, or allows himself to surrender unresistingly to their directions.

#### **Death.—THE TOMB:—**

- 10 The departure from mortal expression after assimilation and contact of all the experience for which the individual has displayed a capacity in the stated expression, and in accord with the amount previously determined by the Lords of Destiny who are in charge of our immediate evolution is called Death. Death, or the laying aside of the Physical Body, is the exit from mortality and the entrance into a purely spiritual phase of existence.

**Not a Cessation of Life.**—Death is in no sense a cessation or discontinuance of life, which, as stated, is continuous. It is the laying aside of the Physical Body in which the katabolic processes and activities have triumphed over the constructive, and is therefore past its usefulness to the Ego and higher vehicles.

**A limited consciousness exchanged for an amplified one.**—Death should always be regarded by the Rosicrucian student as the exchange of a limited state of consciousness for an amplified one, the amplification depending entirely upon the use the individual has

made of the opportunities afforded by the last mortal expression.

**Four Deaths.—**

- a The death or DISCARD of the Physical Body,
- b The death or DISCARD of the Etheric Body,
- c The death or DISCARD of the Astral Body,
- d The death or DISCARD of the Mental Sheath.

**Higher Consciousness.**—At each of these deaths, a higher state of consciousness is entered. THE JOURNEY FROM THE WOMB TO THE TOMB JUST DESCRIBED IS ACCOMPLISHED ENTIRELY IN THE CHEMICAL REGION OF THE PHYSICAL WORLD.

The death of the Physical Body is effected by the separation of the figure sixes of the Silver Cord, described in a previous Instruction. The rupture of the Silver Cord produces the actual death, and permits the Seed Atom to escape via the pneumogastric nerve and out through the suture between the occipital and parietal bones of the skull.

**Panorama.**—Immediately after the process of death, the activities of the Soul, Ego, Mind, Astral and Etheric vehicles are carried on IN THE ETHERIC REGION OF THE PHYSICAL WORLD. There the Soul reviews all the acts of the immediate past life in panoramic display. This is possible through the Reflecting Ether of his Etheric Body, in which the Sub-conscious Memory functions in particular. This panoramic display is in reverse, that is, it begins with the acts and incidents immediately preceding decease, and so on back to birth.

**Duration of Panorama.**—During the review of this panorama, the individual is largely in the position and status of a disinterested spectator, that is, he is without special attitudes of either interest or indifference, and the duration of this post-mortem review is approximately the same length of time as that in which the individual could “stay awake” or remain in the waking state of consciousness during the mortal expression just relinquished.

**Second Death.**—We have been considering the FIRST DEATH, the death of the Physical Body. The conclusion of the panorama just described is reached when the potential power of the Etheric Body, no longer acting in correlation with the Physical Body, ceases. Then its structure begins to break down, disintegrate, the panorama is ended, AND THE SECOND DEATH takes place, the process of which, to the Ego, is much the same as the first

or physical death. The Ego with the Astral Body and Mental Sheath withdraws into the Astral World, leaving the Etheric Body to continue its disintegration. But on its withdrawal, the Ego has with it the Seed Atoms of both the Physical and Etheric Bodies, for use on its return journey to the next mortal expression.

**Astral World, Purgatory.**—(11) The Astral World is of great importance both for the Ego retiring from mortal expression and the Ego returning to it. Here in the Astral World EVERY HUMAN BEING HAS TO GO THROUGH AN INDIVIDUAL PURGATORY. This purgative state or condition lasts until the individual has learned fully the illusion of desire. The length of time spent by the individual in the Astral World depends entirely upon the strength and tenacity of the desires cherished in the recent mortal expression and brought over into the Astral World. A “dead man” is not one whit immediately wiser than the “live” one. By the act of Death he is BORN anew into the spiritual regions and has to learn to focus his faculties to his new environment. Hence the man of strong passions or love of gold is exactly the same immediately after death as before.

**Illusion.**—Here in the Astral World, which is the home of desire, the individual has to learn that all in the mortal life is illusion, the reflection or image of the real, and that what he most desired in mortality as pertaining to that estate is ephemeral and illusive, and that such values cease when desire is realized or attained.

**Fires of Purgatory.**—The attainment of this purgation from desire is not altogether a comfortable or pleasant one to most individuals, for the common acceptances of ideas regarding the after-death state lead most humans to indulge their desires to the utmost while in mortal expression, on the assumption that one “will be a long time dead.” Thus, until the individual learns in fullest truth the necessity of freeing himself from the bonds of desire, he will indulge the same desires after death as before; with this difference, that during mortal expression there was a possibility of gratifying the desire in a manner pleasing to the mortal senses, while such is now impossible, even through the vicarious conditions of obsessing one still in human life. Thus the internal fires burn all the more fiercely from the very fact that it is impossible to quench them through satiety, and they burn until they have nothing left to consume, or by which the process of combustion can be maintained. In other words, they remain lighted until

desire burns itself out, unless developed intelligence and spiritual awakening has come earlier to the individual's relief.

**PURGATORY MAY BE SAID TO BE THE PROCESS OF BECOMING CONSCIOUS OF THE FUTILITY OF UNNECESSARY EARTHLY DESIRES AND ACTIVITIES.**

**Location of Purgatory.**—(12) This purgatorial state takes place in the First, Second and Third Sub-Regions of the Astral or Sixth World Region as defined in Instruction No. 1. These are the Sub-regions of Passion, Impressionability and Wishes, all of which, it will be seen by their very natures, have much to do with the element of Desire.

**No Old Age in the Spiritual Worlds; Old become young; the young mature to 33.**—Time passes rapidly in this Astral World, in fact about three times as rapidly as in the Physical World. But one is not conscious of it as when in the Physical Body, for then old age makes itself obvious. In the Astral World there is no old age. There is an old age in the Physical Body, but no old age in the Spiritual Body. So in the Spiritual Worlds, the average is the state corresponding to about 33 in the Physical. Children entering into the Spiritual Worlds mature to that approximation; while adults rejuvenate to the same status. The process of becoming young is the throwing off of the **THOUGHT OF AGE** and the consciousness of it, by the Spirit, in the Astral World.

**Stay in Purgatory, Introspection; Karma; Man judged by his own actions.**—Our stay in Purgatory can be shortened, not by any system of ecclesiastical "indulgences" but by our daily process of **INTROSPECTION**, which the Brotherhood requires of all its members. The effect of this process is to make us keenly aware of the true values concerned, and to re-establish equilibrium. The purpose of all Karma, which will be treated of later, is to make us assume our individual responsibilities to our fellow men. When we have done this **THOROUGHLY** we have learned the lesson involved, assumed and discharged the consequences of our actions, and the law of Compensation acts to enforce the payment of the utmost farthing. **MAN'S OWN ACTIONS BECOME HIS JUDGES, AND FROM THEM THERE IS NO ESCAPE.**

**Conscience originates in Purgatory.**—One great point of inestimable importance at this stage of progress is the fact that, as the result of the purgative process, Conscience is evolved. After desire has burned itself out, after the lessons have been learned, the individual may forget the isolated experiences, but the **FEELING** engendered by them will remain with him forever. Con-

science began with each human being in the first after-death purgatorial career that occurred after his first human incarnation.

**Conscience, the Memory of Past Pain.**—We do not remember all the experiences in all our past lives, but the merit of them is etched or implanted in the Seed Atom to such an extent that in every succeeding life expression, the result of past pain comes to us as a warning against repetition of similar experiences or the entering upon new ones of a similar nature. The sense of approbation of one's course comes from the absence of consciousness of pain regarding a special incident. Thus CONSCIENCE IS THE MEMORY OF PAST PAIN, COSMICALLY RETAINED.

**First Heaven.**—(13) When the Purgatorial course has been completed, the individual makes his next important advance in the Spiritual Worlds. HE ENTERS THE FIRST HEAVEN. Bible students will recall that several heavens are therein referred to. This First Heaven occupies the THREE HIGHER SUB-REGIONS OF THE ASTRAL WORLD, which are, the Regions of Soul-Life, Soul-Light and Soul-Power.

**Soul Growth.**—From the names of these three divisions, it will be seen immediately that this is pre-eminently a state of soul-growth. Here again the panorama of life is reviewed, but this time not as a purgatorial state; instead, it is for the purpose of enabling the individual to extract from the incidents of the past life expression, all the RIGHT FEELING engendered and incubated by them. This, the individual builds into the Soul as the pabulum for Soul growth.

**Paradise or Borderland.**—These are terms used indiscriminately by Spiritualists and orthodox Christians in the varying doctrinal interpretations commonly given them. Occultly, it may be described as the Fourth Sub-Region, that of FEELING, or the NEUTRAL region. Here are found the beings who are of the negative or "lukewarm" type; individuals with no particular qualities that make for progress; neither good nor bad; whose spiritual senses have not yet awakened, and who consequently are destined to pass through the after-death cycle more or less unconsciously until the forces awaken sufficiently to bring about a reversal of polarities in such a manner that an incentive to progress will be developed. The Initiate Dante brings this out in his "Inferno."

**Purpose of First Heaven.**—As a summary, we will state that the purpose of Purgatory and the First Heaven is to TRANSMUTE

## THE ESSENCE OF PAIN INTO THE SOUL-PABULUM OF RIGHT FEELING.

**Third Death and Second Heaven.**—(14) When this has been accomplished, and the illusion of desire is fully understood, the individual experiences the THIRD DEATH, leaves the Astral Body to disintegrate, AND ENTERS THE SECOND HEAVEN, taking with him, as in the first and second deaths, the forces or soul of the Seed Atom of the Astral Body. The discarded Astral Body is what so often is seen by undeveloped clairvoyants and “mediums” and mistaken for the discarnate entity itself. It has no intelligence of its own—this shell—but retains a semblance of intelligence gained by the process and phenomenon of induction. This pseudo-intelligence weakens and loses its potency as the shell disintegrates.

**Second Heaven located in Division of Concrete Thought.**—The Second Heaven is located in the First, Second, Third and Fourth Sub-Regions of the Fifth World Region, or World of Thought, constituting the Division of Concrete Thought.

**Second Heaven a Mental Workshop.**—In this Second Heaven, the Individual or Ego is surrounded only by the Mental Sheath, and therefore it will be seen that the conditions pertaining to this sphere are entirely mental. In the First Heaven the work done was for the ultimate benefit of the Soul and the furtherance of Soul Growth.

**Second Heaven Source of RIGHT THOUGHT.**—In the Second Heaven, the work is for the Mind and its development. As in the First Heaven Pain became transmuted into RIGHT FEELING, so here on the Mental plane, the Good in the past Life becomes transmuted into RIGHT THOUGHT, and the Individual or Ego enters into the Cosmic School for instruction to enable it to progress further in the line of accomplishing new work as a result of Free-will. Thus the Ego begins here to plan its next environment in the future earth life, and to construct its vehicles according to the purposes and requirements of that incarnation.

**Work in the Second Heaven; intense activity; work upon personal conditions and earthly archetypes.**—Here the artist, musician, sculptor, poet or writer learns to prepare and build organs of the requisite delicacy and sensitivity for his future requirements; here also all learn to work upon the archetypes of earthly conditions, even to the rearrangement of continents or seas, that the earth itself may be moulded to the requirements of man. These plans are made under the direction of lower celestial Hierarchies, and carried out by natural processes as humans term



them, the processes of erosion, volcanic and seismic activity, meteorological conditions, etc.

**Nature Spirits or Elementals assist.**—These “natural processes” are also assisted by the intelligent activities of the “Nature Spirits” or “Rosicrucian Elementals” under their appropriate “Kings” or Hierarchs.

**The Great Silence.**—In the transition from the Astral World to the Second Heaven or Concrete Division of the World of Thought, the Ego at first enters and experiences what is termed **THE GREAT SILENCE**. This is due to the cessation from the activities operative in the Astral World, which are notably those of Desire and its concomitant—Motion. Here, at first, the Ego is overpowered by the silence—comparatively. When this has continued for a space, affording the Ego an opportunity of effecting rapprochement with the new environment, then, little by little, the indescribable “music of the spheres,” that can be cognized only in the mental state in mental regions, begins to enter in upon the consciousness, and the Ego realizes that at last it has returned to its true home, relative to the present day of manifestation.

**Third Heaven.**—(15) When all the instruction afforded by the Second Heaven has been received and assimilated, the Ego enters the Third Heaven, which occupies the Division of Abstract Thought in the Thought World. In the First Heaven Pain was transmuted into Right Feeling for the Soul; in the Second Heaven Good was transmuted into Right Thought for the Mind.

**Fourth Death.**—Now, in the Third Heaven the Mental Essence of **RIGHT THOUGHT**, and the Soul Essence of **RIGHT FEELING** are transmuted into the **SPIRITUAL BASIS OF RIGHT ACTS FOR THE FUTURE**. This transmutation constitutes the Fourth Death, for after it the Ego discards the former mental sheath.

**Ego naked in Third Heaven with Four Seed Atoms.**—Now the Ego stands naked, as it were, retaining only the four seed atoms of the Physical, Etheric, Astral Bodies and Mental Sheath. This Third Heaven may be considered as the point of equilibrium in the Cycle of Life. Here the digestion and assimilation of all previous experience and its results creates in the Ego the desire for further opportunity, for additional experience, “another chance to produce; to create; to contrive; to originate.” Above all, the desire to **APPLY** the result of past experience to future efforts.

**Where desire for rebirth begins.**—This desire to apply the results of past experience to new efforts **IS THE BEGINNING**

## AND ORIGIN OF THE DESIRE FOR NEW OR REBIRTH, AND THE FIRST STEP TOWARD IT.

This is one reason why it is so hard for unawakened mortals to understand the idea of reincarnation. They try to think from the mortal region of mentality. Reincarnation *begins* in the Third Heaven in the highest region of mentality.

### **Third Heaven end of journey of Ego, and turning point.—**

(16) The Third Heaven marks the limit of the Heaven-World life of the Ego of present earth-humanity, and is the great turning point in its spiritual career. When the desire for rebirth and additional experience is definitely formulated, the Ego at that moment begins its return journey to rebirth or a new mortal expression.

**A mistake corrected.**—It is a common error among occult writers to describe the process of return of the Ego to a new birth or rebirth, as the “descent again into Matter.” The process of return is not by any means a “descent,” for that would imply the action of gravity, and the laws of gravitation as understood by physical science do not apply in the purely spiritual realms, as evidenced by the phenomenon of levitation, or the mediumistic raising of inanimate objects or even human beings by spirit power in defiance of gravitational laws. A most notable description of this apparent immunity from gravitation is brought out in the book by the celebrated English psychic, D. D. Home, entitled “Lights and Shadows.”

**Gravity not operative in Spirit World as we now understand it.**—It has been previously explained and must always be borne in mind, that the highest heaven may not be one whit removed from any given location in the physical world. The progress of the Ego in the spiritual dimensions is one of indrawing. Rosicrucians are taught that we “came from the center” and “return again to the center.” That is, the Ego comes into mortality from the innermost dimensions of being, crystallizing outwards. After death, and death by death it again indraws into the center or “highest” heaven.

**Heaven is wherever the Ego may be.**—What really takes place is the starting into activity of the spiritual phase of the law of attraction. Thus the Ego in the Third Heaven, possessing only the Four Seed Atoms, begins its progress toward rebirth by obedience to the law of Attraction which draws it into the Second Heaven again, where the Seed Atom of the Mental Sheath attracts to itself the materials for a new mental equipment in the new

Mortal Expression to come. This Second Heaven, it will be remembered, is the Division of Concrete Thought.

**Law of Attraction operates to draw Ego to Second Heaven, where new Mental Sheath is formed.**—The journey toward rebirth is not undertaken, however, in ignorance of what the future may have in store for the Ego in the forthcoming mortal expression. All must be the result of intelligent, well directed activities. Thus, before the Ego leaves the Third Heaven, it reviews another panorama, this time the panorama of the mortal expression to come, in which the Ego is shown, by the celestial Hierarchies who have this particular work in charge, the principal events it is proposed that the incarnating Ego shall accomplish during its next mortal experience. To this panorama the Ego is permitted to add a definite amount of original work, in consonance with its inherent Free-Will, and thus to a degree permitted by the Hierarchies makes its own individual choice as to the environment in which it is to incarnate.

**Second Panorama, this time of the Future mortal Expression.**—Knowing this, the occultist has no opportunity of reviling "Fate" or lamenting his life conditions, knowing that he definitely chose them before entering them; only from the spiritual worlds he was able to see beyond mortal limitations and KNOW the results that would ensue, and the value they would be to him. After incarnation, the cosmic memory is held in abeyance that it may not prevent the mortal from contacting each set of experiences to the utmost, or inhibiting him from entering upon experiences from which he might be tempted to turn, could his mortal senses know the complete path.

**Panoramas show Cause and Effect.**—Two of the panoramas described in this instruction differentiate in this important respect; the first shows events from death back to birth. The second shows the incarnating Ego events from birth to death. **THE FIRST PANORAMA SHOWS HOW EACH EVENT WAS THE RESULT OF A PREVIOUS CAUSE; THE SECOND PANORAMA SHOWS HOW EACH FUTURE EVENT WILL BE THE CAUSE OF A SUBSEQUENT EFFECT.**

**No Turning Back.**—THIS PANORAMA ONCE REVIEWED, ORIGINAL IDEAS ADDED AND THE PLAN DEFINITELY ACCEPTED, THERE IS NO TURNING BACK. As rebirth draws nearer timid souls often desire to stay the action, but the law is as inexorable as that of the Medes and Persians.

The Ego, as we have seen, is drawn into the Second Heaven by the Law of Attraction. The selection of the requisite material for the new Mental Sheath is illustrative of one of the greatest phenomena known to science—the selective power of given organisms.

**Law of Selection operates.**—It is well known that medicine taken into the mortal body will be selected or absorbed and appropriated by the particular organism therein for which it is intended. So too the magnet selects only the iron or steel from a mass of mixed filings presented to it. In the same way, the Seed Atom of each vehicle of the Ego selects from the world or region to which it is correlated, only the material pertaining to its individual classification.

**Two births.**—(17) It is important to note, in following the process of the return of the Ego to rebirth, that it is clearly demonstrated that the real process of birth BEGINS in the spiritual worlds, and the mere entrance of the physical body into material expression is not to be considered as the ACTUAL birth at all, and thus we have two events that may be generalized as births:

- 1 The entrance of the Ego into the Second Heaven.
- 2 The entrance into mundane life of the Physical.

**Ego enters First Heaven.**—(18) As the Ego continues to manifest outwardly through the sub-regions of the Division of Concrete Thought in the Thought World, the Seed Atom of the new Mental Sheath attracts to itself the essential conditions and principles of that World and the sub-regions, and in due time, when all such principles as will be necessary for use in the forthcoming material expression have been assimilated, the Seed Atom of the Astral Body is awakened into activity, “planted,” as it were, in the Astral World or First Heaven.

**Etheric Seed Atom awakens.**—Here the Astral Seed Atom attracts to itself all the necessary material of the Astral World from which to germinate the future Astral Body, and on the completion of this process, the combined strength of the Mental Sheath and Astral Body enable the Ego to awaken the Seed Atom of the Etheric Body-to-be into activity.

**Reflecting Ether impresses new Etheric Body.**—(19) At this point the newly germinating Etheric Body is impressed through the functions of the Reflecting Ether with the panorama of the now closely approaching mortal expression. The Ego and the nascent Mental Sheath, the Astral and Etheric Bodies, during this

process of impression and germination are in the Etheric Region of the Physical World.

**Lords of Destiny place the newly forming Human.**—In this Etheric Region they are guided step by step by the Hierarchies described in Instruction No. 3. These Hierarchies, the Recording Angels or Lords of Destiny, direct the actual placement of each individual in the allotted environment for incarnation, making sure that each individual is so placed as to be sure of participating in all the experience it is deemed advisable and necessary for it to contact therein.

**How Male and Female co-operate.**—(20) When the proper environment has been selected, the Etheric Body is moulded into a matrix which is then placed in the human womb of the female through whom entrance into mortal expression is to be made, and the Seed Atom of the future Physical Body is placed by the Hierarchies in the head of one of the spermatozoa in the semen of the male parent-to-be.

**Why some Marriages are Barren.**—(21) Right here may be seen the cause why some apparently happy marriages are barren. It may not be the fault of either marriage partner, but simply that the Lords of Destiny do not find that a particular married couple are creating or making an environment which is at the time available or desirable for human incarnation.

**Shapes of Ego and new Matter.**—(22) While the process of manifesting toward the exterior or outer has been in progress, it must not be assumed that the Ego and new material have been in human form. Instead, the Ego and its newly acquired bodies have assumed a semi-globular shape with the Mental stuff inside and the Astral matter outside. It is the Etheric Body that is moulded into future human form and placed as a matrix in the womb of the mother.

**How the Ego enters the Womb.**—(23) When the female has been impregnated, after a period of about three weeks, the Ego, with the Mental stuff and Astral Matter, which has been closely associated with the mother but outside her, enters, the globular structure envelopes the head of the Etheric matrix, draws over it, closes in upon it, and the process of germination of the foetus or future human begins, and continues until delivery.

The great mystery of impregnation consists really in the attachment of the Silver Cord between the ovum and the Ego which is hovering outside the "mother-to-be." This attachment is effected by the penetration of the spermatozoon bearing the Seed

Atom into the ovum, the development of which then begins. This development is fostered by the human mother on the one side and the Ego via the Silver Cord, on the other. The control for the time being of the vehicles in process of development is maintained by the Ego through the Silver Cord. In following up the subsequent development of the Silver Cord as the embryo becomes a true homo, it will be found that the important Solar Plexus is a direct result or ramification of the Cord, in connection with the pneumo-gastric nerve.

**When Physical Birth occurs.**—(24) At the end of nine months, in some cases sooner, and in others later, the germination is complete. The Physical Body has developed in consonance with its Etheric matrix, which now continues to enfold and interpenetrate it, but not as yet fully developed as a separate vehicle, ready to function in mortal life expression. That is reserved for its own individual birth as described in Instruction No. 3.

With the completion of the germination of the foetus or future human, PHYSICAL BIRTH TAKES PLACE.

**Correspondence between Umbilicus and Silver Cord.**—Immediately a notable correspondence occurs. After death of the Physical Body the SILVER CORD WAS SEVERED. After birth of the Physical Body, THE UMBILICUS IS SEVERED. The umbilicus is the link which connects the Physical Body with the placenta in the human womb, and the Silver Cord is the spiritual counterpart which connects the Physical Body with the spiritual matrix and Ego.

This can be explained in another way. Man is a dual being, having a visible or Physical Body and an invisible or Spiritual Body. He is born into the Physical World by the severing of the Umbilical Cord. He is born back into the Spiritual World by the severing of the Silver Cord. The Ego nourishes the newly born Physical Body direct, via the Silver Cord during the seven years prior to the birth of the Etheric Body, just as the mother nourishes the foetus during the nine months of gestation through the Umbilical Cord.

**Rationale of Re-Incarnation (Arguments Against It).**—In the foregoing instructions we have given only the actual process and the steps thereof, involved in rebirth or, as it is popularly called, REINCARNATION. We shall now consider the arguments advanced against it by the uninformed, and the proofs that may be given in its support. First, the arguments and objections advanced against it.

- 1 That it is a form of predestination or fatalism.
- 2 That it is not taught by "the Church."
- 3 That there is no proof of it as a fact in Nature or Science.
- 4 That it is not in accord with the orthodox teachings regarding Heaven and Hell.
- 5 That it would do away with Man's personal responsibility.

**To be spiritually discerned.**—It is of course difficult to bring those who have been reared in the ranks of orthodoxy to an immediate recognition of this great truth and for the very reason that confutes all the arguments that can be brought against it, and that is, that being a SPIRITUAL TRUTH OR FACT, IT MUST BE SPIRITUALLY DISCERNED, as Scripture teaches. To the truly spiritual, it presents not only no undesirable aspects, but on the contrary, the most desirable recognition of Divine Wisdom.

**Man, his own judge.**—A careful study of the foregoing instructions will suffice to show that no human being can possibly escape personal responsibility, and instead of the illogical judgment of a human life of brief duration, Man is judged by the actions, thoughts and feelings of several mortal expressions until he has contacted ALL the experience that this planet can give him. Then and then only is he to be "FINALLY JUDGED" before he can progress further.

**Nothing can be lost.**—It is also manifest to the student that in the marvellous operations of Nature under Divine Wisdom, no modicum of her energy, which is of the very substance of the Absolute itself, can ever by any possibility be "Lost" or "Destroyed."

**Jesus taught Reincarnation.**—Reincarnation IS taught, not by the Church, although the early Christian Fathers DID teach it as evidenced by their writings, but by JESUS and the BIBLE from which the Christian Church derives whatever of authority it may possess. In Matthew xvii-12, 13, Jesus distinctly states the identity of John the Baptist as the reincarnate Elias, and other instances could be cited. As an instance of his knowledge of his own previous lives read John viii-56-58, wherein he says: "Your father Abraham rejoiced to see my day; and he saw it, and was glad. Then said the Jews unto him, thou art not yet fifty years old, and hast thou seen Abraham? Jesus said unto them, Verily, verily, I say unto you, Before Abraham was, I am."

As a FACT in Nature it is everywhere before us if we look for it. We sow the seed. It matures, shoots appear, grow, bud, bloom, bear fruit and produce seed which is disseminated according

to natural laws. With the approach of winter the sap runs down, leaves fall, snow covers it and to all intents and appearances it is dead. But behold, the following season it reappears, a newer and better, stronger plant, attaining greater growth and productivity, and yet not a "new" plant but the same plant from the same seed originally planted.

**Man compared with plants.**—Note how closely this follows the record of the human being, given in this Instruction. Born from the germinal seed, youth, maturity, old age, failing faculties corresponding to falling leaves, apparent death, covered by Mother Earth, and behold, a new man, born NOT from NEW seed but from the essences of the original cosmic seed of Virgin Spirit, a newer and better being with greater privileges, greater growth, greater opportunity and able to produce more and better fruitage of good deeds.

**Evolution demonstrates It.**—ALL EVOLUTION DEMONSTRATES REINCARNATION IF ONE WILL LAY ASIDE PREJUDICE AND STUDY IT FROM ITS SPIRITUAL VIEWPOINT, CORRELATED WITH THE FACTS OF NATURE AND SCIENCE.

**"Every seed his own body."**—This is further set forth by St. Paul in First Corinthians, xv-38, wherein the Apostle says: "But God giveth it a body as it hath pleased Him, AND TO EVERY SEED (ATOM) HIS OWN BODY." Man's vehicles are built in Heaven and USED on earth.

**Man regarded as an individual creation by the orthodox.**—Many orthodox churchgoers cannot get over the idea that each human birth is a separate, distinct and individual act of Divine Creation, whereas the simple standpoint of mathematics applied to the matter of population would suffice to show that earth's resources would have been exhausted long ere this, if such were the case. Nature does not operate that way. The earth belongs to man, to use over and over again until the waves of humanity destined to exist upon this planet have run their course of evolution and passed on to higher planes of activity.

**Cares for those who need to be "saved" for not having lived A. D.**—Reincarnation also solves one of theology's greatest problems, the destiny of those who lived before the so-called "New Dispensation." For applied to them, evolution shows their places in the list of races and evolutionary waves, and Reincarnation shows how each will in due course enjoy equal opportunities in comparison with those whose evolution began previously.



**Classes at school.**—The whole problem reduces to the concept of a day or a term or a course in school. Classes enter, students progress through varying grades, in each promotion stragglers are left behind. Always a new class is starting. In due course, the majority of **THE SAME ENTERING CLASS** graduate with collegiate degrees or honors. The stragglers will in due time have the same opportunity, but their slower progress will take a longer period. But all through school life it is the same class groups that start and finish together. So in Life's school. Virgin Spirits enter upon the earth life in groups, or "races." They start and finish approximately together. But in due course **ALL** will have had the same equal opportunities. New beings are not created at every individual birth. Births form the means of entering the advancing classes to which the newborn are promoted.

**Greatest number of adherents.**—This great truth of reincarnation has today, and **ALWAYS HAS HAD**, the greatest number of adherents of any religious or philosophical doctrine ever promulgated, a doctrine that antedates all organized religious systems and is coeval with Man's first appreciation of his essential individuality. It has been written that the greatest proof of immortality lies in Man's capacity to receive it and believe it and to conceive of it. So too, with reincarnation, the greatest of all proofs is the fact that the overwhelming majority of humankind not only conceive it, but apply it in their every day problems and lives.

**Solves Life's inequalities.**—Reincarnation solves the problem of Life's apparent injustices and inequalities; the apparent discrepancies and incongruities between human creatures. It shows how **ALL** will in due course not only enjoy and experience all that every other human being ever has had, but will progress as **ALL** have done and are now doing.

**Many hold back from FEAR.**—A strong reason for the non-acceptance of the truth of reincarnation on the part of the orthodox lies in the **FEAR** of entertaining or even investigating **ANY** truth not previously received by them, lest it contravene, contradict, or alter some doctrine, dogma, or creed of their personal acceptance. Many such people refuse to study its rationale simply because, having never been taught it in any school or church, it is therefore something to be avoided.

**How the modern mind accepts mechanically formulated creeds.**—In modern times, and in the mediaeval as well, the chief function of the Ministry would seem to be to think for all the

people, instead of permitting or encouraging the people to think for themselves. As a result, doctrines essential to Man's salvation, on which the future safety of his soul was supposed to depend, have been formulated by Oecumenical Councils, Synods, and even political Acts of Parliament, or by the decisions of Royal laymen who had not the slightest notion of the essential spiritual conditions involved.

**The Western Mind.**—Among western minds, some refuse to accept the truth of reincarnation because their evolutionary status mentally and spiritually has not yet reached the requisite degree of receptivity. Also, the teachings regarding reincarnation taught by adherents of the far eastern schools of thought do not appeal to the western mind. Reincarnation, when taught as an endless series of lives, covering millions of expressions, wearies the mind before it can comprehend the subject. Also, reincarnation that after all ends in Nirvana and absorption into Brahm is simply annihilation, no matter how sophistically its devoted exponents may try to disguise and interpret it otherwise.

**How often the Ego Reincarnates, and when.**—The Rosicrucian system, which is the Egyptian School of the Hidden Wisdom, teaches that the number of incarnations of a given Virgin Spirit is twenty-four, measured by the passage of the Sun in the "Precession of the Equinoxes" through the twelve Signs of the Zodiac. In this series of expressions the individual alternates its sex, as the functions of each sex are so widely variant as to necessitate this alternation in order that complete experience and knowledge of both natures may become assimilated. The Ego incarnates twice while the Sun is in each sign, which brings each mortal expression about 1000 years apart.

**Alternation of Sex.**—As evolution progresses and the end of involuntary incarnations approaches, this time is somewhat lessened, and in the case of children it is not confined to this measurement of time, they returning to another life expression sometimes almost immediately. Also the Ego does not always keep the strict alternation as male and female in each succeeding incarnation, often continuing in the same sex until work begun by it as of that particular sex is completed. As a rule, however, until the Ego has reached an advanced status of evolution, it is obedient to the general law of averages, and keeps to the regular alternation.

**Arguments FOR Reincarnation.**—Summarizing the matter, we may say that Reincarnation—

1 IS a FACT in Nature.

2 IS taught by Jesus and the Bible and was formerly taught by the Church.

3 IS a solvent of all the apparent incongruities of life.

4 IS the logical solution of theological discrepancies.

5 IS the truth with the greatest number of adherents.

6 IS the logical and scientific sequence of evolution.

7 IS the only logical evidence of Divine Mercy and Wisdom. in the care of Humanity.

8 IS NOT a doctrine of fatalism or predestination.

9 IS NOT antagonistic to the teachings of ANY TRUE Church.

10 IS the logical explanation of prodigies of genius in all branches of art, science and literature.

Many do not quite understand how the fact of the Ego desiring another life or mortal experience actually brings it about. In conclusion of this instruction therefore, we would point out that this is where the real value of desire operates. For while the Ego, clad with its Mental Stuff and new matter, draws into the Astral World and germinates a new Astral Body, we must remember that the Astral World is the home of desire, and that the Astral Body is particularly and specially the vehicle OF desire. So when newly formed, the Astral Body "CRAVES" an outer etheric and physical Body<sup>2</sup> and this craving, operating through the force of Attraction, makes the further "dip into matter" possible, and continues the crystallizing process until Etheric and Physical vehicles are provided.

#### QUESTIONS ON INSTRUCTION No. 5

1. What merit attaches to the saying, "From the womb to the tomb"?
2. What is the orthodox concept of Man's creation?
3. What is the special teaching of Christianity?
4. How does it apply to obvious inequalities?
5. Does occult science support its assertions?
6. What is it specifically, that the Absolute cannot do?
7. What is all life shown to be?
8. What can the Absolute NOT commit?
9. Can any life be "lost"?

10. Describe the first five epochal events in the Cycle of Life—  
from the womb.
11. When does the “prime of life” occur?
12. When does “change of life” occur?
13. Is it confined to one sex?
14. When does katabolism gain the ascendancy?
15. What is meant by “living the life”?
16. What does astrology indicate in regard to the mortal expression?
17. What is Death?
18. Is it cessation of life?
19. What notable “exchange” takes place after death?
20. How many deaths are there?
21. What does each death lead to?
22. Where does the Ego and its vehicles function immediately after death?
23. What and when is the after death panorama?
24. When does the second death occur?
25. What world region is then entered?
26. What is Purgatory?
27. What is said of illusion?
28. What are the “fires of Purgatory”?
29. Where is Purgatory located?
30. Does Old Age exist in the Spiritual World?
31. What is the approximate age in the Spiritual World?
32. How can one’s stay in Purgatory be shortened?
33. How is man really judged?
34. Where does conscience originate?
35. What IS conscience?
36. Where is the First Heaven?
37. Of what is the First Heaven pre-eminently a state?
38. Where is Paradise, or the Borderland?
39. When does the third death occur?
40. Where is the Second Heaven?
41. What may the Second heaven be said to be?
42. Of what is the Second Heaven the source?

43. What is the specific work in the Second Heaven?
44. How do Elementals assist?
45. What is the great silence?
46. What and where is the Third Heaven?
47. What is the state of the Ego in the Third Heaven?
48. What desire originates in the Third Heaven?
49. Where does the after death journey of the Ego end?
50. Is gravity operative in the spiritual world?
51. Where is any heaven?
52. What Law operates to draw the Ego back to the preceding world?
53. What panorama is shown at this point?
54. What does this panorama specifically show?
55. Can the Ego turn back?
56. What Law operates in the process of returning?
57. How many births may we consider?
58. What heaven does the Ego now enter?
59. What then awakens?
60. What impresses the new etheric body?
61. Who place the newly forming human?
62. How do human males and females co-operate?
63. Why are some marriages barren?
64. What is the shape of the Ego prior to indrawing into the womb?
65. How does the Ego enter the womb?
66. When does physical birth take place?
67. What is the correspondence between the silver cord and the umbilicus?
68. Give the arguments ordinarily advanced against reincarnation.
69. How is reincarnation to be really understood?
70. What is Man?
71. What notable Teacher taught reincarnation?
72. Give the comparison between Man and plants.
73. What great process demonstrates reincarnation?
74. What does the Scripture say regarding seed?
75. How do the orthodox regard Man?

76. Whom else does reincarnation provide for?
77. How is it illustrated by school life?
78. Has the truth of reincarnation many adherents?
79. What problems does this truth solve?
80. Why do many hold back from its acceptance?
81. How does the modern mind accept ready made creeds?
82. How often does the human Ego reincarnate?
83. Does it always incarnate in the same sex?
84. Give summary of the arguments FOR reincarnation.



INSTRUCTION VI.  
THE NEBULAR HYPOTHESIS.

THE CORRELATION OF OCCULT TEACHINGS WITH THE FINDINGS  
OF ACADEMIC SCIENCE.

---

**Occult and Physical Science agree.**—In Instruction Number One of this series, the statement is made that “Occult science agrees with Physical Science in the application of the Nebular Hypothesis to the Creative Scheme, insisting, however, upon the direction of the nebular activities by the wisdom and intelligence of the Hierarchies described.”

It is therefore important that the student at this point in the course, be accurately informed as to just what the Nebular Hypothesis is, in detail.

First, we will take up the various definitions:

**What a Nebula is.**—A NEBULA is one of the masses of gaseous matter found in different portions of the Heavens.<sup>1</sup>

**Their quantity.**—Nebulae are exceedingly numerous, over 12,000 being easily within the range of vision of the three-foot mirror telescope, and many times this number may be seen by the new five-foot reflectors recently constructed.<sup>2</sup>

**How named.**—Nebulae are named either after their color and shape, their discoverer, or their position in the heavens. For instance—

**Examples.**—a Annular or Ring Nebulae—Dusky in the center and bordered by a lighter ring of light.

b Cometary—Round, with star-like nucleus in center, resembling the average comet.

c Crab—So-called by Lord Rosse, on account of the claw-like appendages.

d Dumb-bell—The luminous cloud of star-dust of gas in the constellation of the Fox, and resembling a Dumb-bell.

e Fish-mouthed—From the shape of one seen in Orion.

- f Green—Due to the greenish color of some.
- g Hind's Variable—Last seen in Taurus and no longer visible.
- h Horseshoe, Omega or Swan—Seventeenth in Messier's list; so named from its shape.
- i Keyhole—A nebula of that shape in the constellation Argo.
- j Andromeda—in the girdle of Andromeda (Cons.)
- k Orion—The largest known; in Orion's sword hilt.
- l Owl—A nebula in Ursus Major, shown in old maps as an owl's head.
- m Spiral—From their appearance.
- n Stella—A body of numerous distant stars appearing *like* a nebula.
- o Variable—Varying in brightness. Hind's and Struve's.
- p Whirlpool—In Canes Venatici, so named by Lord Rosse, from its remarkable spiral formation.
- q White—One whose continuous spectrum does not show the bright lines that ordinarily characterize that of a nebula.

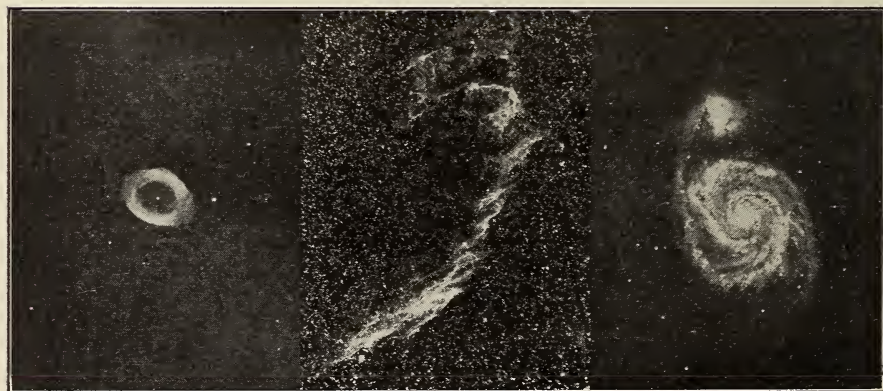


FIG. 19

EXAMPLES OF NEBULAE. LEFT, RING NEBULA IN LYRA: CENTER, NETWORK NEBULA IN CYGNUS; RIGHT, SPIRAL NEBULA CANUM VENATICORUM.

—(Photos by Mount Wilson Solar Observatory)



**What the Nebular Hypothesis is.**—The Nebular Hypothesis is that the Solar System existed originally in the form of a nebula, which by cooling, condensing and revolving was formed into the sun and rings of matter, which later were consolidated into planetary bodies; applied also to all the heavenly bodies.<sup>3</sup>

**Who Formulated and Developed it.**—“It was indefinitely conceived by Swedenborg, more clearly outlined by Kant, Herschel, and Laplace, expanded as one of the general processes of evolution by Herbert Spencer, brought down to the basis of a physical theory by George Howard Darwin, and amplified to date by Thomas Crowder Chamberlain.”<sup>4</sup>

**What Draper says.**—(Intell. Develo. Europe, Vol. ii, p. 281, 1878). “The Nebular Hypothesis compels us to admit that all the ponderable material now existing as constituting the various bodies of the solar system once existed and extended in a rarefied or nebulous and rotating condition beyond the confines of the most distant planet.”<sup>5</sup>

The overwhelming preponderance of the nebulae are spiral in shape, and constitute the typical form of the class.

Nebulae may be technically defined as luminous whirlpools of matter. The central luminous nucleus is a gaseous, incandescent body like our own sun, with two spirals leading out from it, having irregular foci of light, with filmy veils of luminous smoke. This latter is matter that has broken forth from the central body.<sup>6</sup>

The extent or span of a nebula is enormous, often to be measured only by unthinkable millions of miles. For instance, there is a nebula in Andromeda that is so wide that light, which travels at 186,000 miles per second, requires eight years to span it. In another way, its measurement may be given at five hundred thousand times 93,000,000 miles, which last is the distance of the earth from the sun.<sup>7</sup>

These nebulae are the matrices from which solar systems are born.<sup>8</sup>

The old teachings of physical science were to the effect that our solar system originated from a super-heated gaseous globe, which contracted as it cooled, and from time to time threw off from its equatorial belt substance that later became planets.

**Two hypotheses.**—The later findings of physical science resolve themselves into two distinct hypotheses, one of which, the second to be described, coincides precisely with the teachings of the Brotherhood.



FIG. 20

The Great Nebula in Orion. One of the most wonderful sights ever revealed by the telescope. It is believed by some scientists to be the birth of an universe. Its size can only be estimated by imagining a sphere with a diameter as great as that of the earth's path around the sun, and then multiplying it by a million. It illustrates the processes that brought the present celestial systems into being.

—(Photo by Yerkes Observatory.)

**First hypothesis.**—According to this concept, a spiral nebula is a system of worlds in the making. The central nucleus is to be the future sun. The luminous spots that lie irregularly within and along its spiral arms are the nuclei of future planets, having been thrown off from the central nucleus as it progressed in movement.<sup>9</sup>

**Planetesimals.**—These luminous spots that are destined to become future planets are termed “PLANETESIMALS.”<sup>10</sup>

**Entire nebula moves.**—The entire nebula moves in a complete mass, and as time passes the growing, smaller nuclei draw to, or attract through gravitation, matter from the surrounding mass until each revolves in a clear space.

**Original nebula becomes the Sun.**—The original central nucleus draws to itself the myriads of smaller and minor planetesimals in its neighborhood and in time becomes the detached central sun.

**Second Hypothesis, accretion to mass.**—The second aspect of the nebular hypothesis follows that just given, with the addition of taking into account the accretion to the planetesimals of the matter built up around them by perpetual meteoric bombardment, gathering matter more rapidly through gravitation as their mass increases, and from the beginning developing a high interior temperature through impact and compression. This growth is continuous, as for instance, our earth sweeps up something like a hundred million meteors each day, these meteors being belated fragments of the original nebula.<sup>11</sup>

Compare this with the teaching that the creating God occupies a definite location in so-called space which he fills with his aura, and differentiates out of the surrounding cosmic root substance matter which he energizes to a different status of vibration, etc., and you will find that although differing in verbiage, the process is the same, except that Rosicrucianism insists upon the intelligent ordering and direction of the activities and movements for definite purposes.

**Origin of nebulae.**—As to the origin of the spiral nebulae there are also two widely differing theories in physical science.

1st That hundreds of millions of years prior to its nebular formation, a nebula was originally a gaseous star which in its progress entered the neighborhood of another star.

**Roche's Law.**—Now according to Roche's Law of Limits, the critical distance of 2.44 radii is sufficient to cause the force of gravitation to tear asunder the structure of both bodies, causing

both globes to explode like bombs and their fragments of comminuted world stuff to be scattered out into space.<sup>12</sup>

**Teaching of Arrhenius.**—But here again the greater weight of scientific authority supports unintentionally the Brotherhood teachings, for the savant ARRHENIUS voices the consensus of opinion that the spiral nebulae are formed from the universal “Cosmic Dust,” (Rosicrucian Cosmic Root Substance, the 2nd and real theory).<sup>13</sup>

**Nebulae formed of “cosmical dust.”**—According to this teaching, the nebulae are formed of this “cosmical dust” under the influence of the pressure of “radiant energy” (the activity of the creating God). The electrified particles of world stuff from other suns collide in space and form meteorites which later aggregate into the larger mass under the influence of gravitation.<sup>14</sup>

**How they become luminous.**—Such nebulae are cold to the point of absolute zero, and become luminous through the impact of the electrified particles and glow like the rarefied matter exhibited in the phenomena of the vacuum tube under electrical influence.<sup>15</sup>

**How a star is born. Cold at first. Its heat comes from within, not from the Sun.**—A star, then, is a body born out of the cosmic mist of a nebula. Although cold at first, even though born from an incandescent nucleus, it begins to give off intense heat as it becomes hotter and hotter through its contraction. It ultimately attains the supremest white brilliance as illustrated by Sirius and Procyon. Spectral analysis at this stage reveals the light gases helium and hydrogen.<sup>16</sup>

**Becomes yellow.**—As it cools later in its progress it becomes yellow in color and shows evidences of calcium, iron, etc. Our own sun and Arcturus are in this stage.

**Then red.**—Still later it becomes red, and the spectrum indicates larger evidences of carbon. Such are Betelgeuse and Mira. These processes require billions of years.

**Rejuvenation.**—When completely cold, a star can be brought again into light and activity by collision, by which new energy and momentum are imparted, and so the cyclic process goes on indefinitely, and will go on until all the matter in the universe has been aggregated into a single mass.

**Cosmic Night.**—The periods of darkness of each star are the Cosmic Nights already referred to, intervening between each Day of Manifestation, and the activity of the creating God is exhibited

in the dissemination of the "Cosmical Dust" and its reassembling into nebulae for recreative or new creative processes.

**Light.**—Throughout occult science, the principle or factor of LIGHT receives unusual emphasis. And well it may, for in both occult and physical science LIGHT will be found to be the active principle in creative activity, the same principle which first came into being, at the primal fiat, "let there be LIGHT," and after there "Was LIGHT" the rest of the creative processes continued. This is shown in physical science by the "RADIATION PRES-SURE OF LIGHT." It being understood that the planets had their origin not as gaseous rings but as electric bombardments from the original nucleus, we can study the action of Radiant Light pressure in seeing how this was brought to pass.

**Recapitulation.**—First, let us recapitulate. Our earth, for instance, never was either a gaseous ring or a liquid globe as liquids are ordinarily understood by laymen.<sup>17</sup>

**How a star is "cold" at first.**—Second, we have stated that a star born out of the cosmic mist of a nebula was "cold at first." This apparent paradox is easily explained when we understand that after being thrown off from the parent nucleus for a time its substance is widely distributed and semi-diffused throughout a part of the nebular mass, and therefore cools, in its atomic structure, until assuming the attributes of its ultimate shape it begins to generate heat itself by the process of contraction.

Therefore we may state at this point the following affirmation:

**AUTHORITATIVE ROSICRUCIAN AND ACADEMIC SCIENCE TEACHES THAT THE TRUE NEBULAR HYPOTHESIS OR EXEGESIS IS—**

1st That the central nucleus of the nebula is the future sun of a new solar system. Rosicrucianism amplifies this affirmation by stating this nucleus to be the central focal point of the activities of the creating God who may be operating through the nebula under observation.

**Planetesimals.**—2nd That the bodies thrown off from the central nucleus, namely, the smaller nuclei of varying densities and proportions, are the planetesimals, or future planets of the solar-system-in-the-making.

**Not rings but built up.**—3rd That these planetesimals are not rings but are thrown off in mass from the central nucleus, and that each planetesimal or lesser nucleus builds up by attraction and meteoric bombardment.

**How axial motion and spherical shape are obtained.—4th** That the individual nucleus or planetesimal derives its initial axial motion from the frictional contact with the nebular structure, which is in constant interior motion, producing also the spherical shape.



FIG. 21

One of the anomalies of our solar system. The Planetoid "EROS." Planets are considered to be more or less spherical in shape. Eros is an exception. It is practically a huge mountain in space, "without form and void," and as it turns upon its axis first one corner and then another is presented to view. It has not sufficient gravity to draw its structure into symmetry, and remains as when launched into space. It tantalizes astronomers to know that Eros passed very close to earth January 24, 1894— before it was recognized, and that so near an approach will not occur again until 1975. Jupiter, the ponderous planet, is usually regarded as a "benefic" yet it is really the most troublesome of all of Sol's family, for it appropriates from the smaller planetoids and comets about what it desires and many astronomers believe that Eros is the remains of a planet which has suffered at the hands of this "thief of the skies."

**Origin of orbital motion.—5th** That each individual nucleus or planetesimal derives its orbital motion from the spiral sweep of the entire nebular mass, and that as the entire nebula moves as a unit carrying all its planetesimals with it, so after ultimate clearing of the nebular structure, the resultant solar system con-

tinues to move in a general orbital sweep, carrying its planetary family as a unit.

**Origin of nebulae.**—6th That the nebula has its origin in "Cosmic Dust," Rosicrucian Cosmic Root Substance, the product not of the collision of worlds or planets but of the electrified particles of world-stuff from other suns (which are the physical vehicles of the creating Gods of those particular systems), which collide in the space indicated by the new-creating God, forming the meteoric masses which later aggregate into the larger nebular mass under the influence of gravitation.

**Direction of our solar system.**—Our entire solar system moves forward in space at the rate of  $12\frac{1}{2}$  miles per second, in the direction of 15 degrees southwest of Vega, in the constellation Lyra. Vega is also approaching us at a rate that brings the two systems nearer by 2,000,000 miles each 24 hours.<sup>18</sup>

**God Is Light, Life and Love.**—Rosicrucian teachings affirm that the triune Deity is Light, Life and Love, and it is a fact that wherever the last two are found, the first will always be present, exoterically and esoterically. Sometimes chemical methods must be employed to demonstrate its presence exoterically, nevertheless it will always be found.

**Light, great cosmic force.**—Therefore, LIGHT may truly be said to be one of the greatest of Cosmic forces manifesting the Will of the Absolute.

**Radiation Pressure.**—"Radiation Pressure" means the pressure and activity of light. It is the direct force that preserves the integrity of the nebula that is destined to be a future solar system; preventing, by overcoming for the time being the force of gravitation, the fine particles of nebular matter from gravitating toward other interspatial bodies.<sup>19</sup>

Reduced to a practical affirmation, then, Rosicrucian teachings agree with Professor Campbell, who puts it thus:

**Nebulae and Light.**—"A NEBULA CONSISTS WHOLLY OR IN PART OF FINELY DIVIDED PARTICLES OF MATTER WHICH ARE THRUST HITHER AND YON BY THE LIGHT PRESSURE OF MYRIADS OF INCANDESCENT STARS, IN SEEMING DEFIANCE OF THE LAWS OF GRAVITATION. IN DUE COURSE, HOWEVER, THE FINE PARTICLES OF MATTER BECOME AGGREGATED AND THUS BECOME TOO LARGE FOR THE LIGHT WAVES TO ACT ON THEM EFFECTIVELY."<sup>20</sup>

**Succumbs to Gravitation.**—This aggregated matter then becomes so concentrated as to form the more or less solid body that we call a star. “Thenceforth, this body, undergoing a series of transformations which cause it to be definitely labelled, must move in response to the aggregate pull gravitationally of the stellar bodies that make up the universe.”<sup>21</sup>

**Comets.**—Many uninformed persons mistake comets for nebulae and regard the two as identical. This of course is wrong, and some erroneously believe that comets exercise a baneful influence upon the earth, some occultists even going so far as to teach that planetary continental modifications are actually produced by them. Nothing could be farther from the truth. Over 650 comets are



FIG. 22  
A GOOD EXAMPLE OF A COMET.

now recorded and classified as Parabolic, Elliptical and Hyperbolic; comets of Long and Short Duration. Comets move for the most part, however, in parabolas, and their orbits have no evident relation to the plane of planetary motions. This fact indicates that they need not be considered as belonging in any true sense to the Solar System itself, but are merely visitors therein from interstellar spatial regions.<sup>22</sup>

**Their Parts.**—A comet consists of the coma, or shining matter, the nucleus, a bright point near the center of the coma, and the tail or streamer. This tail is not discarded matter, as is shown



by the fact that while it *follows* the coma as the comet *approaches* the sun, it precedes the coma as the latter *recedes from* the sun. The tail is always *away from* the sun.

**Size.**—The size of a comet is almost incredible, in general the head or coma being from 40,000 to 100,000 miles in diameter; the comet of 1811 having a head 1,200,000 miles in diameter. The tail of the great comet of 1882 was 100,000,000 miles in length. The head contracts as the comet approaches the sun.

**Mass and Density.**—Yet a comet's mass is insignificant, and its density inconceivably small, "much below the density of the residual gas left in the best vacuum science can produce."<sup>23</sup> Comets are not self-luminous, but shine by reflected light, as is proven by their relative luminosity as they approach or recede from the sun.

**No evil effect upon the earth.**—Instead of exerting a destructive effect upon our Earth, when the planet passed through a comet some years ago, the only noticeable effect was a general luminescence or almost phosphorescent effect, dimly perceived. On the other hand, when a comet comes into contact with another planet or enters that planet's orbit, it is apt to be either broken up or "made captive," as is often done by the ponderous planet Jupiter, sometimes called the "thief of the skies." A comet has been caught by the attractive power of this mighty body, made captive and compelled to move an orbital prisoner.

**Meteorites.**—The same fear expressed relative to comets has also been manifested in regard to meteorites; broken bits of other worlds and disintegrated worlds. Over twenty millions of these meteorites enter our atmosphere every twenty-four hours, yet of all this great number only about 700 have actually reached the earth's surface, the remainder being dissipated or consumed in our atmosphere by friction created through their own inconceivable speed. The ocean floor is said to be covered with a thin layer of the ash.

**Shape of Our Universe.**—So far as can be observed, the "bulk of the stars, exclusive of those of the Milky Way, form a vast lens-shaped structure, and as we attempt to picture in the imagination this vast lenticular structure, comprising in the aggregate all the matter in the universe, the thought comes naturally to mind that the entire system, with its hundred million or thousand million stars, may be whirling about the axis of the galactic poles, with some giant sun, so distant that it seems to us no different from other stars—at its center of revolution."<sup>24</sup>



FIG. 23  
THE FAMOUS WILLAMETTE METEORITE. WILLAMETTE  
VALLEY, NEAR OREGON CITY, OREGON.

—(Courtesy of the American Museum of Natural History, N. Y.)

**The Via Lactea.**—The Milky Way or Via Lactea mentioned above, may be described as the luminous belt surrounding the heavens in a great circle. It varies both in width and brightness, and for a third of its extent, that is, from Cygnus to Scorpio, it appears divided into two parallel streams. The Via Lactea is more commonly known as the “Galaxy,” and is made up almost wholly of stars of the eighth magnitude and less. It contains many true star-clusters, but few real nebulae, and in some places the stars are too thickly clustered to permit of accurate record or estimate.

In early times the Milky Way was the origin of much really important mythos and deific personification; in mediaeval times it was the subject of a vast deal of superstition; in modern times it is the subject of critical investigation. In its entirety, it exercises an undoubted influence of an occult nature, not only upon our planet, but on all others within a reasonable radius, but its influence is that of a benefic, and by the ancients it was supposed that the Milky Way exerted a pull that counteracted the force that held all bodies to the earth’s surface. The ancients believed that but for this benefic influence, we should be inevitably drawn or “sucked into” the earth’s crust. Needless to say, this idea is not entertained as other than mythos. The influence exerted for our benefit is manifested through the combined forces of the enor-

mous number of its starry members, concentrated upon the material forms utilized by organic life upon our planet, and preventing too great consolidation or crystallization and operative principally through our Etheric and Astral vehicles.

Thus from the initial activity of Light, exerted as Radiation Pressure, results the mighty aggregation of a solar sun and its attendant planetary family; a slight idea of the immensities involved being indicated when we remember that the actual mass of our sun is 332,000 times that of our earth,<sup>25</sup> and the latter weighs approximately 5,272,600,000,000,000,000,000 tons. (It is interesting to note in comparison the weight of the Great Pyramid, 5,272,600 tons.) Yet the whole bulk of this little sun, chief luminary to earth, a fifth rate body in a minor solar system, is gaseous; although, due to enormous gravitational pressure, the sun's interior structure has a consistency more like dense liquid than what we ordinarily conceive of as gas, which explains our previous statement.<sup>26</sup>

**All nebular nuclei pass through same process.**—All the nuclei pass through the same evolutionary processes and stages as does the parent nucleus or sun. Thus each in turn has its gaseous, liqueous (gravitational compression of the gaseous) and ultimate solid status. Jupiter, for instance, is  $1/3$  denser than water, and Saturn  $3/4$  as dense.<sup>27</sup>

**Light and the Radiometer.**—It is to Light that we owe our knowledge of the constituency of our planetary neighbors, for through the spectrum analysis, it reveals the presence of all known and some unknown elements and metals. Light rays both above and below the known spectrum are now powerful agents in modern use, such as the X-Rays, Ultra Violet, Helium and other rays, and for the simplest of all illustrations, the student has only to purchase an inexpensive radiometer at any optical store and watch the action resultant upon the impinging of the light rays or radiant energy upon the delicate apparatus. The blackened sides absorb, and the bright sides reflect. Some of these instruments are so delicate that a candle placed more than  $1/3$  of a mile away will turn the vanes through nearly 100 scale divisions.<sup>28</sup>

**Human light rays.**—And last of all, the energy of light is shown by its perceptible radiation from the homo or human being under proper circumstances.

**Light acts only on infinitesimals.**—Now, powerful as light has been shown to be, it must be noted that it is capable of acting only upon infinitesimal particles, and that when such particles ag-

gregate, they enter the domain of gravitation. Prof. Arrhenius has estimated the size of a particle of matter that may be driven before a light wave, but it is indescribable in figures of comprehensible measurement.

**Radiant Energy.**—Radiant energy requires a medium of transmission, and between the nebula as it comes to our vision and the “cosmic dust” or Cosmic Root Substance from which it originated lies a vast gulf. Therein lies the whole range of matter from Mass, Molecule, Atom or Ion, Electron or Corpuscle, and Ether.

We will define them in order.

- 1 **Mass** is an aggregation of molecules. It is distinct from weight with which it is often confounded, weight being simply an indication of mass.<sup>29</sup>
- 2 **A Molecule** is the smallest particle of a substance that can exist in a free state, and which has the same composition as any large mass of the substance.<sup>30</sup>
- 3 **An Atom** is the smallest particle of an Element that exists in any molecule.<sup>31</sup>
- 4 **An Ion** is an atom or radical of a substance resulting from electrolytic decomposition or dissociation. Moving in the direction of the anode or positive pole, it is called an electro-negative ion. Moving in the opposite direction, it is the electro-positive ion. Gaseous ions are combinations of molecules with an electron, and are electro-conductors.<sup>32</sup>

Broadly speaking, then, an Ion is an atom charged with electricity.

- 5 **A Corpuscle** is an electro-negative ion.
- 6 **An Electron** is identical with the corpuscle, but it is the term used in lieu of corpuscles when explaining the ELECTRONIC THEORY OF MATTER, which is that “all mass is the mass of the ether, all momentum, whether electrical or mechanical, the momentum of the ether, and all kinetic energy the kinetic energy of the ether.”<sup>33</sup>

All of these definitions will be amplified at the conclusion of this Instruction.

7 **Ether** is the great mystery of physical science. It is impossible to give to this mystery any "simple" explanation.

**A medium.**—ETHER may be said to be the imponderable, hypothetical, but none the less real, medium; tenuous and elastic, diffused throughout all Cosmos and which forms the avenue of transmission of radiant energy. It cannot be confined, and therefore much must long remain a matter of hypothesis regarding it.<sup>34</sup>

**Its family place.**—We do, however, know positively somewhat of its attributes and properties. Ether is not to be considered non-matter as such. Instead it is the simplest and lightest of the elements, an inactive GAS of the ARGON family, being assigned to position x of the Zero group. The atomic weight of Ether has been ascertained to be one millionth of that of the hydrogen atom, thus permitting its atoms to maintain a tremendous velocity, which explains its interpenetrating and all pervading presence.<sup>35</sup>

**Rosicrucian concept of Ether.**—As a matter of fact, however, Ether is of surpassing importance to the Rosicrucian, for it is to him the link between Spirit and Matter, Divinity and Humanity. We are taught that "In Him we live and move and have our being." We know that in the Ether are fulfilled all these conditions. This does not imply the reduction of Deity to a gas, but it must be kept in mind that when we speak of gases we mean the final disintegration from solids and liquids into the vaporous, ethereal state that, in comparison with our physical world and its three dimensional concepts, must be largely analogous to the contrasting term "gaseous."

**Ether, the densest substance known.**—Now although Ether presents a gaseous and even fluidic state, comparatively speaking, offering no resistance to the movements of objects through it, acting as a medium of transmission of waves of energy, penetrating and permeating all things in cosmos, the very attributes of omniscience and omnipresence, yet IT IS THE DENSEST AND MOST MASSIVE STRUCTURE IN THE COSMOS—again like omniscience in this attribute.

**Matter, least substantial.**—Rosicrucianism has always taught that the material world is the reflection of the spiritual world. Physical science now asserts that WHAT WE CALL MATTER IS THE MOST EPHEMERAL AND LEAST SUBSTANTIAL THING IN THE UNIVERSE.

**Ether.**—The unit particle of electricity which we call a corpuscle or electron owes its mass entirely to an infinitesimal quantity of Ether which is bound up with its substance.<sup>36</sup>

**Its density.**—The density of ether attached to such a corpuscle has been found to be 2,000,000,000 times the density of lead.<sup>37</sup>

It may seem inconceivable that we are immersed and exist in a medium two billion times as dense as lead,<sup>38</sup> but the latest findings of physical science explain this by the statement that

“MATTER IS COMPOSED MAINLY OF HOLES” to such an extent that the volume of ether disturbed by the movement of matter through it is infinitesimal compared with the volume enclosed by it.<sup>39</sup>

**Size of Ether granules.**—Ether is composed of spherical granules so infinitely small that 700,000,000,000 of them in one line could lie in the trough of an ultra violet wave, which is one seven-thousandth of an inch.<sup>40</sup>

**Where Rosicrucians and Physicists agree.**—Here again Rosicrucians and academic physicists contact, for Prof. Reynolds says, “these granules are THE ULTIMATE OR PRIMORDIAL ATOMS, perfectly spherical and perfectly rigid, infinitely small in comparison with the electron or corpuscle.”<sup>41</sup>

**Ether granules are Cosmic Root Substance.**—And Rosicrucian philosophy asserts that Ether is composed of PRIMORDIAL ATOMS OF COSMIC ROOT SUBSTANCE, the “Cosmic Dust” of which the nebulae or worlds-in-the-making, are formed.

**Matter likened to bubbles.**—Prof. Reynolds further likens matter to bubbles. Prof. Mackenzie explains this as follows: “You have all seen bubbles moving in water. Reynolds shows that the earth and all other material bodies move through space in a similar manner. They are less dense than the medium in which they exist, and their movements are due to differences of pressure in the surrounding medium (Cosmically, the pressure due to the activities of the creating God).. Real mass is not in the thing materially which we see, but in space where the eye sees nothing. The sober conclusion of the most advanced Dynamical Science is that MATTER IS A NEGATIVE THING SO FAR AS ITS MASS IS CONCERNED, AND THAT THE SPACE OCCUPIED BY MATTER CONTAINS VERY MUCH LESS THAN THE SPACE WHERE NO MATTER EXISTS.”<sup>42</sup>

**What the Universe consists of.**—"The entire universe of matter consists essentially of little maladjustments or flaws in the universal granular ether"<sup>43</sup> and note this, Rosicrucian students, that each SPHERICAL GRANULE IS ASSOCIATED WITH TWELVE OTHER SPHERICAL GRANULES THROUGHOUT THE ENTIRE ETHERIC MASS.<sup>44</sup>

**Nature a series of reproductions.**—All Nature is a series of reproductions of processes. As the nebula originates the future solar system with its orbital processes, so in the smallest ponderable structure we find the same analogy.

**The Creative Link.**—The electron, as we have seen, is the electro-negative corpuscle bound up with the infinitesimal portion of Ether. This latter, the Ether, may be considered Ether in its free state and therefore the positive element or pole, while the corpuscle or electron may be considered the crystallized Ether. Herein is the creative link.

Not crystallized in the sense of greater density than the primordial Ether, but in the sense of a focus or concentration. Thus we have in sequence—

**Descent of Cosmic Root Substance.**—1 Cosmic Root substance, the spherical granules of ether.\*

2 Concentrated granules or corpuscles (electrons), negative.

3 Free granules, positive (Essential activity of Deity). The two combine to produce the

4 Positive and negative ions, which compose the

5 Atoms, which combine to produce

6 Molecules, which combine to produce the

7 Mass, which is of two kinds,

8 Elements, an element being a substance whose molecule contains only one KIND of atom—and

9 Compounds, a compound being a substance whose molecules contain two or more kinds of atoms, expressing first the invisible, tenuous, spiritual state, then known as

\*Another term has been added to the definition of the component parts of the atom. It is offered by Dr. Irving Langmuir in his new theory of the structure of matter presented at the annual gathering of the National Academy of Sciences early in 1920. Speaking of the sub-divisions of the atom he introduced the term, "Quantel" which, he said, consisted of two parts, positive and negative, present everywhere in space, moving in all directions with the velocity of light and capable of passing through matter. They constitute, he said, what has heretofore been known as the "ether of space." As an instance of the extent to which the materialistic concept of abstract propositions may be carried, Prof. Langmuir is said to have asserted that "*space and time have a structure analogous to that of matter.*"

10 Invisible matter, next by further concentration and crystallization into the state of

11 Visible matter, or the physical world, ultimately again returning to the

12 Invisible or spiritual world, ascending spirally toward its

13 Creative source—DEITY.

All things "come from the center," travel around the circumference of evolutionary processes, upward, and return again to the center, as science bears out by its affirmation that ultimately, in the words of Profs. Stewart and Tait, it is certain "that age after age the possibility of such transformations (of energy) is becoming less and less; and, so as far as we yet know, the FINAL STATE OF THE PRESENT UNIVERSE MUST BE AN AGGREGATION INTO ONE MASS OF ALL THE MATTER IT CONTAINS, i. e.—the potential energy gone, and a practically useless state of kinetic energy prevailing, i. e.—uniform temperature existing throughout the mass."<sup>45</sup>

**Action of the 12 around the 13th.**—Everywhere the activity of the twelve around the thirteenth will be found, for in the structure of the Atom we find it composed of electrons making up definite planetary systems within, circling about with infinite speeds in regular orbits, and one electron dislodged from its atomic system would dash from one atom to another at the rate of 40,000,000 times per second.<sup>46</sup>

Students will recall that the attributes of the second aspect of triune Deity the Supreme Being, were the Word, POWER AND MOTION; and of the third aspect, WILL, Wisdom and ACTIVITY.

**How Deific attributes manifest.**—Rosicrucian philosophy teaches that the Power and Motion of the Supreme Being, and the Will and Activity of the Solar God, are the dualities that express themselves respectively as the free Ether and the corpuscles that form the basis of all later development in the cosmic scale.

**Ether a vehicle.**—The creative WORD and WISDOM is transmitted via the Radiant Energy of which Ether is the vehicle.

**Energy a ray from Deity.**—A ray from Deity, a wave or ray of Radiant Energy dissociated, develops heat, light and ultra violet, the prime factors in creative process.<sup>47</sup>

**Etheric equation.**—Ether also represents mass to the Cosmic Root Substance granule, as does physical mass the agglomeration and aggregation of structural physical atoms.



**Number of Elements.**—An element was defined as a substance whose molecule contained only one kind of atom. There are seventy (the mystic number) such elements known to science.

**Their combinations and permutations.**—These seventy atoms or elements may combine in a number of permutations reaching 250,000. Thus they furnish vehicles for the activities of all demonstrable forms of life.

**Ether furnishes Spiritual Spheres.**—So too in the Ether, the corpuscular combinations furnish sublimate states or “spiritual spheres and planes” for the activities of those forms of spiritual life more closely approximating the celestial than the terrestrial.

**The common triad.**—Therefore, in common with physical science, Rosicrucianism holds with equal importance the knowledge of the triad

1 Matter                      2 Ether                      3 Energy<sup>48</sup>

as essential to the logical understanding of spiritual worlds as well as the physical and its origin.

**Divisions of Energy.**—And just as the life stream in manifestation flows through differentiated channels of involutory and evolutionary process, so also does the stream of cosmic energy operate through nine (again a mystic number) as follows:

1 Kinetic Energy	6 Chemical Energy
2 Gravitational Energy	7 Electrical Energy
3 Heat	8 Magnetic Energy
4 Elastic Energy	9 Radiant Energy <sup>49</sup>
5 Cohesive Energy	

**All Manifestations of One Source.**—At the beginning, however, the Rosicrucian student is taught that all force is a manifestation of the ONE FORCE, all Energy as of the ONE ENERGY and all Substance as ultimately homogeneous.

On a previous page we promised an amplification of the definitions already given, and these we will now take up in order. We will sum up first the POSITIVE ION of which little has been said. We know—

**Positive Ions.**—1 They are positive electrical conductors, not negative.<sup>50</sup>

2 The velocity of the positive ion is less than that of a corpuscle.

3 Its electrical charge is identical with that of the ordinary atom.

As to Order.

4 Its value of  $\frac{e}{m}$  is  $\frac{1}{30,000}$  of  $\frac{e}{m}$  for a corpuscle.  $e$ =electric charge.  $m$ =mass.

5 Its mass is 1000 times greater than that of a corpuscle and is practically equal to that of an ordinary atom.

6 It can be deflected magnetically, only slightly.

7 From the previous paragraphs it may be seen that as the corpuscle is the connecting link between Ether (of the Spiritual realms) and embryonic Matter (in the Physical worlds) it is the touchstone in the physical search for the "Philosopher's Stone."

It will also be seen that the positive ion has qualities not altogether explained by the corpuscle, and this quality we shall try to arrive at shortly.

**Light Rays.**—Next come the light rays. The new advances in radio activity have done much to confirm the early teachings of mediaeval Rosicrucians. The "eternal light" is found veritably manifest in the light and fluorescence of radio activity. First of all we will define radio activity itself.

**Radio Activity defined.**—Radio activity is the explosion of an aggregation of corpuscles comprising unstable, heavy atoms. With the decrease of their kinetic energy, they explode, and the corpuscles rearrange themselves, evolving energy and projecting the products of the rearrangement.<sup>51</sup>

**Radio Active substance.**—"A radio active substance is one whose atom consists of a complex group of corpuscles, the configuration of which depends for its maintenance upon a certain velocity of movement of the corpuscles comprising it, and beneath which velocity the corpuscles rearrange themselves with the evolution of an amount of energy which breaks down the atom."<sup>52</sup>

**Genealogy of Radio Active Light Waves.**—Aside from our knowledge of the light waves and rays as exhibited in the spectrum, from red to violet, we have now through the phenomena of radio activity the following rays in their genealogical order:

Cathode Rays  
 Lenard Rays | X Rays  
           S Rays | Niewengloski's Rays  
                   N Rays | Becquerel Rays<sup>53</sup>

**Transmutation products.**—Alpha, Beta and Gamma Rays: These three rays from radium are apparently IDENTICAL WITH

THE POSITIVE IONS, CORPUSCLES AND X RAYS. This is of great importance, for this identity is what makes known the transmutative processes of modern science. For from the radium and other radio active elements are produced NEW or TRANSMUTED ELEMENTS, known to science as URANIUM X<sup>54</sup>

THORIUM X

THORIUM EMANATION<sup>55</sup>

RADIUM EMANATION

RADIUM EMANATION X, 1st, 2nd, 3rd and 4th changes to the final product, and occupying respectively, 22 days, 4 days, 1 minute, 3.7 days, 3 minutes, 21 minutes, 28 minutes, 200 years.

**Power and value of Radium.**—The radio active power of radium itself is 1,300,000 times that of uranium, with which it is often associated, and one gram would be worth at least \$120,000 and a gram is one-twenty-eighth of an ounce. At the present time only a very few grams have been extracted, and radium is obtainable only on the basis of milligrams.<sup>56</sup>

**Transmutation a fact.**—It is not possible in a limited instruction to go into the actual physical processes employed, but they may be accepted as truth on the status of the eminent men of scientific authority who are sponsors for them. With this in mind let us state that the teaching of the Rosicrucians for centuries that transmutation of elements is possible is borne out by the fact that IT HAS BEEN AND IS BEING DONE NOW, IN THE MODERN LABORATORY. We have three distinct instances:

**The Transmuted Elements.**—1 The evolution of Uranium X, an entirely NEW Element, out of the decomposition of Uranium. (Rutherford).

2 The evolution of "Exradio" from Radium (Ramsay).

3 The birth of Helium from Radium emanation (Ramsay-Soddy).<sup>57</sup>

**Transmutation traditions.**—Lower elements, such as Lead and Silver, have been transmuted by exoteric science, and it is a tradition of the Fraternity which seems well attested that Gold has also been raised from lower metals, but the above instances are the actual verifiable results of modern savants, far removed from the allegory, tradition, romance, and fiction of mediaevalism.

**Atom compared to a church.**—To give an idea of the relative values of sizes, in dealing with infinitesimals, we quote the illustration of Lodge—"If we imagine an ordinary church to be an atom of hydrogen, the corpuscles constituting it would be repre-

sented by 100 grains of sand each the size of a period, dashing in all directions inside; rotating with inconceivable velocities, and filling the whole interior of the church with their tumultuous motion. Such an atom would be penetrable to other corpuscles in inverse proportion to the number of corpuscles constituting it, while it would be opaque to other atoms."<sup>58</sup>

**Transmutation of Neon and Helium.**—One of the latest transmutations are the production of NEON, a gas, and also Helium from bulbs which had contained only Hydrogen. This on the statements of Ramsay and Collie. And note that both Neon and Helium are of higher atomic weight than the Hydrogen from which they appeared.<sup>59</sup>

**Number and weight of Atoms.**—This has enabled scientists to compute accurately the number of atoms in a given quantity of matter. For instance, a grain of radium gives off 36 billion helium atoms PER SECOND. A cubic centimeter of helium GAS contains 2,560,000,000,000,000,000,000 atoms, while the weight of an atom is 1/68,000,000,000,000,000,000,000,000 (octillionths) of a gram. The smallest particle of matter that can be seen with the most powerful microscope contains more atoms than the total number of the human population of the globe since humanity has existed.<sup>60</sup>

**"Electricity Is Life."**—There is an old saying, "Electricity is Life." Rosicrucians agree with it thoroughly, but go farther. They assert that all that we can know or conceive of is a manifestation of electrical energy, and the statements made in this instruction based upon the findings of authoritative science indicate the activities of both positive and negative electricities in all cosmic operations, and it may not be too much to predicate that the "wisdom of future generations" may find that the "Word that was lost," the Creative Word, is synonymous with electrical activity as a Deific manifestation.

**Matter and Electricity identical.**—NOW SCIENCE ASSERTS TOO THAT MATTER IS MADE UP OF ELECTRICITY, AND NOTHING BUT ELECTRICITY.<sup>61</sup>

We now know vastly more about electricity than formerly, and instead of it being a hypothetical condition we know WHAT it is in one phase at least. Rosicrucians assert the other phase. What we KNOW about one phase of electricity (the negative) we gain through the Electronic Theory. We will sum it up:<sup>62</sup>

1 Negative electricity consists of unit corpuscles or electrons.

2 Static electricity results from the action of these corpuscles at rest.

3 Current electricity is these corpuscles in motion, whether through gases, liquids or solids.

4. Magnetism is a phase of energy developed in the ether at right angles to the direction of motion of the corpuscles.

5 Light is due to disturbances in the surrounding ether caused by changes in the motion of the corpuscles.

6 Self-induced electricity and mechanical inertia of matter are identical and due to the corpuscle in motion.

7 Mass or matter in quantity is ether carried along by the moving corpuscle; it is not a constant quantity but depends upon the velocity of the moving corpuscle.

8 Atoms are made up of negative charges or corpuscles, each aggregation of corpuscles being surrounded by A SPHERE OF POSITIVE ELECTRICITY. (What IS positive electricity?)

9 THEREFORE, MATTER ULTIMATELY IS IDENTICAL WITH ELECTRICITY.

**Positive Electricity the Rosicrucian X Force.**—To correlate the spiritual and the physical, the ethical and the material, Rosicrucians teach that POSITIVE ELECTRICITY IS THE "X FORCE," MENTAL POWER AND INTELLIGENCE OF THE ABSOLUTE, which is manifested as the Word and Wisdom of its two Expressions and transmitted via the Radiant Energy and Ether into Creative Process.

The status of the activities of these infinitesimals we have considered defines the status of the planetary bodies of our own and all other solar systems. Metals are not by any means in the same state on all. On the hottest solar bodies we find them in the "proto" state, such as Proto-hydrogen (Pickering of Harvard) in Zeta-Puppis and Argo, and in 29 Canis Major and Gamma-Argus. The element proto-hydrogen is the broken-down element Hydrogen.<sup>63</sup>

**Planetary Heat and Radio-Activity.**—In the case of our own sun, the comparative youth of our solar system is shown by the fact that our sun cannot have been emitting heat at its present rate more than 18,000,000 years,<sup>64</sup> nor has it illumined this earth for more than 100,000,000 years,<sup>65</sup> even though our earth was thrown off from the sun in the Hyperborean Epoch over 350,000,000 years ago, for the sun did not gain its full power to illuminate until a comparatively recent date, due to the contraction, consequent liberation of heat, and increasing in-

candescence. *For the heat of all the planets comes from within each, not from the parent sun,* and is due to heat generated by contraction and the radio-activity. Both the sun and our earth contain enormous quantities of radio active matter and radio activity generates a tremendous amount of heat. It is estimated therefore that the radio activity of ordinary substances on both earth and sun will be sufficient to more than offset the amount of heat generated and dissipated into space.<sup>66</sup>

In regard to this matter of heat coming to earth from the sun, a writer in the *Electrical Review* of January 21st, 1898, presents the truth we have just stated, quite clearly. The article reads:

"It is also assumed that such is the inconceivable effect of combustion in luminous and heat-producing intensity that both light and heat rays are transmitted to the glittering planetary and stellar elements suspended in celestial space, some of which are computed to be hundreds of millions of miles from the solar orb.

"Now anyone who, like the writer, has had great experience in the production of relatively enormous fusion temperatures, will know that although the luminosity resulting from masses of molten metal, such as very low carbon steel, will project a beam of light extending under certain atmospheric conditions, over a distance of five miles; nevertheless the sensible heat transmitted to any body that chanced to intercept such a beam, will not be perceptibly felt at a distance of even, say, 50 yards.

"So that if this ratio of as 50 is to (1,760 x 5) were applied to the proportion of heat and light transmitted from the assumed burning solar orb, no heat sensible to human life, could possibly be transmitted through all the enormous gulf of space that divided our planet from the sun."

#### **Power of Light Pressure, Size of a Particle of Nebulic Mist.—**

The further power of light is shown by the value of Light Pressure, which is one milligram per square meter of earth's surface, or 70,000 tons for the whole planet, from the sun.<sup>67</sup> This pressure and force exerted on atomic structures causes the continuous changes in the general structural make-up of the earth. The phenomenon of light pressure is illustrated by the force exerted on comets, which when pointing toward the sun have their tails away from it, due to the light pressure bombardment. In this connection the particles of mist which form the comet's tail are analogous to those which form the nebulic mist and are measured as about 1 to 6 thousandths of a millimeter in diameter.

**Synthesis of Atoms.**—Transmutation is no longer the generally scouted dream of the Rosicrucian alchemist. It is a FACT of 20th Century Science. Sir William Ramsay said, "Experiments are in progress with radio-active substances, the results of which seem to show that we are on the brink of DISCOVERING THE SYNTHESIS OF ATOMS."<sup>68</sup>

**What physical scientists seek.**—Physical scientists seek to tap the store of inter-elemental energy, "a store so great that every breath we draw has within it sufficient power to drive all the workshops of the world."<sup>69</sup>

**What Rosicrucian Initiates seek.**—Rosicrucian Initiates, knowing the secret of Positive Electricity, seek to tap the storehouse of Cosmic Conscious Energy, by which life may be prolonged indefinitely, not in a mere mortal shell, but in *conscious sequential memory* through all succeeding incarnations.

**Stupendous mathematical evidences cause reverence and humility.**—This stupendous range of mathematical evidences of the scale on which Nature and Cosmic forces operate, from the inconceivable dynamic energy displayed in the radio-active bombardments on a microcosmic scale, to the macrocosmic neighborliness of our nearest star Alpha Centauri 26,000,000,000,000 miles distant, with the next nearest twice as far, and the generality at least forty or fifty times as distant, should make us pause in our vaunted conceits of earthly wisdom and bend in humble reverence before works so vast as to evidence beyond all mortal question the manifest intelligence of the Supreme Architect of the Universe, and His assisting Hierarchies.<sup>70</sup>

#### QUESTIONS ON INSTRUCTION No. 6

1. In what do Occult and Physical Science agree?
2. What is a nebula?
3. What quantities are they known to make up?
4. How are they named?
5. Give examples.
6. What is the "Nebular Hypothesis"?
7. Who formulated and developed it?
8. What does Draper say regarding it?
9. How may nebulae be technically defined?

10. What is the extent of a nebula?
11. What ARE these nebulae?
12. What were the old teachings of physical science?
13. What do the later findings of physical science resolve themselves into?
14. According to this later theory what is a nebula said to be?
15. What are "Planetesimals"?
16. What does the original nucleus of a nebula do?
17. What is the 2nd aspect of a nebula?
18. How does this compare with the Rosicrucian teachings of the creating God?
19. What is the first hypothesis of the origin of a nebula?
20. What is Roche's Law of Limits?
21. What is the teaching of Arrhenius?
22. How do such nebulae become luminous?
23. How is a star born?
24. What does the yellow stage denote?
25. The red stage?
26. How is a cold star rejuvenated?
27. What is cosmic night?
28. How is a star really "cold" at first?
29. What is the joint affirmation of Rosicrucianism and Science?
30. How does Rosicrucianism amplify it?
31. What is said of the "ring theory"?
32. How is axial motion and spherical shape attained?
33. What is the origin of orbital motion?
34. Give a further definition of the origin of nebulae.
35. What is the direction and velocity of our Solar System?
36. What is God said to be?
37. What is one of the greatest cosmic forces?
38. Define "Radiation pressure."
39. What does a nebula consist of wholly or in part?
40. To what does the aggregated matter succumb?
41. What is the shape of our universe?
42. What do all nebular nuclei pass through?
43. Describe human light rays.



44. On what does light act?
45. What does radiant energy require?
46. What is Mass—Molecule, Atom, Ion, Corpuscles, Electrons?
47. What is the Electronic Theory?
48. What is Ether?
49. What is its family place?
50. What is the Rosicrucian concept of Ether?
51. What is the densest substance known?
52. What is the least substantial?
53. What is the density of Ether?
54. What is Matter composed of principally?
55. What is the size of Ether granules?
56. Where do Rosicrucians and physicists agree?
57. What may Matter be likened unto?
58. What does the universe consist of?
59. What is Nature?
60. What is the creative link?
61. Describe the descent of cosmic substance.
62. What does it make.
63. What is to be the final status of the universe?
64. Describe the action of the 12 around the 13th.
65. Name the attributes of Deity.
66. How do they manifest?
67. What is energy?
68. How many combinations and permutations of the Elements are known?
69. What does Ether furnish?
70. What is the common triad?
71. Name the divisions of energy.
72. Of what are they all manifestations?
73. What are positive Ions?
74. Where may the eternal light be found?
75. Define radio activity.
76. Give its genealogy.
77. Name the transmutation products.
78. How may an atom be compared to a church?

80. What is electricity?
79. Give an idea as to the number and weight of atoms.
81. What do we KNOW regarding electricity and Matter?
82. What is the correlation between positive electricity and Rosicrucian X Force?
83. What is learned of planetary heat and radio activity?
84. What of the power of light pressure?
85. What is said of the synthesis of atoms?
86. What do physical scientists seek? Rosicrucian scientists?
87. What do these stupendous mathematical evidences cause?



## INSTRUCTION VII.

### FATHER, SON, AND HOLY GHOST.

ROSICRUCIAN CONCEPT OF THE ORTHODOX TRINITY ;  
JEHOVAH.

---

**Confusion of terms.**—In the study of Rosicrucian science and philosophy the terms, “Absolute,” “Supreme Being,” “Solar God,” or “God,” are often confused with the more familiar terms, “Father, Son and Holy Ghost” of orthodoxy.

**What many students fear.**—Also many students fear that in accepting the terms “Absolute, Supreme Being and Solar God” they are relinquishing their hold upon principles taught them from early youth, and which they find to be the standard doctrines held by millions of believers during the past nineteen hundred years.

**Fear is dangerous.**—In this fear, they hesitate, and this hesitation is inimical to their further progress in spiritual science. Therefore, let us assure each student that it is not necessary to give up one’s cherished ideals and devout reverence for the Great Beings commonly known as the “Father, the Son and the Holy Ghost,” but to advance, it IS necessary to understand them.

**Reverence increased.**—In understanding the Trinity described by the united terms, “Father, Son and Holy Ghost” the student will find that not only does he retain all his original respect and reverence for this Triune Principle, but he amplifies and expands his concept and reverence a thousand fold.

**Cosmic Trinity.**—In Rosicrucian science we designate the ABSOLUTE, Supreme Being and            as the COSMIC TRINITY, Primordial, Solar God  
the attributes, manifestations and locale of which were stated in Instruction Number One of this Series.

**Mundane Trinity.**—Likewise, in Rosicrucian science we designate the  
Father,  
Son, and            as the MUNDANE TRINITY, Planetary,  
Holy Ghost

as a Divine Principle developing from the evolutionary processes of the Humanity of our planet. A careful study of this concept will make clear the truth and importance of the Incarnations of the Master Jesus, his proper place in our highest reverence and esteem and the means whereby he did actually unite our Humanity or Human Nature with the Divine Nature.

**Humanity expresses as a Trinity.**—Humanity has always found it necessary to express its concept of Deity in terms of a Trinity. This is not because it is a philosophical abstraction, but a scientific formulary consequent UPON MAN'S OWN THREE-FOLD NATURE, whereby each of those natures must show a basic source or origin.

Each of those Natures, Spiritual, Soular and Physical, in turn express in a Threefold manner as described in Instructions One and Three, namely, the Divine, Life and Human Spirit; the Conscious, Emotional and Intellectual Soul, and the Astral, Etheric and Physical Bodies. Each of these is a progression from within outwardly.

**From within outwardly.**—Therefore, in the strict line of evolutionary process, Humanity coming direct from Deity in the progress of Involutionary and Evolutionary operations, each of the Threefold Natures of Man must have originated in a Threefold Deific Source, which in itself was a condition of manifestation from within outwardly.

**Taught in all Creeds.**—This we find embodied in the creeds and religious doctrinal formularies of all nations; clearly and accurately in the ancient, clumsily and obscurely in the modern.

**Lao-Kiun.**—Through Lao-Kiun, Confucius taught that "Tao produced ONE, ONE produced Two; Two produced Three, and Three produced all things."

This approximates our Rosicrucian concept of the Cosmic Trinity. The attempt to define the Mundane Trinity, however, shows correspondences in every religious system. Thus among the

#### **Correspondences.**—

- 1 Hindus, we find Brahma, Vishnu and Siva.
- 2 Zoroastrians, we find Ahura Mazda, Spento Mainyush and Armaita.
- 3 Chinese-Tibetans, Buddhi, we find Amitabha, Avalokiteshvara and Mandjusri.

4 Egyptian, we find Ra, Osiris, Horus; Osiris, Isis, Horus; Amon, Mut, Khonsu (Theban Triad); Hesiri, Hes, Horus; Ptah, Pukht, Imhotep (Ombos Triad).

5 Chaldeans, we find Anu, Ea, Bel.

6 Hebrew Kabbalists, we find Kether, Binah, Chochmah.

7 Christians, we find Father, Son, and Holy Ghost.

8 Mohammedans, we find Allah, Mohammed, Moses.

**Mohammedan Trinity explained.**—In connection with the last named, it should be explained that the orthodox Mussulman teaches that "There is no God, but Allah, and Mohammed is his Prophet," placing Mohammed—not as Deity—but as a Prophet of Deity. Some sects, however, teach that Mohammed, after his transition, was raised to Deific or Divine rank, as was also Moses, the occult Mountain figuring prominently in each case.

**Many attempts by Christians.**—With the Christians, more attempts have been made to categorically define the Holy Trinity than perhaps by any other school of theologians. We will give a few illustrations from the principal creeds of Christendom.

**Apostles' Creed.**—Practically all Christendom, except the so-called "liberal" churches, accept what is commonly known as the "APOSTLES' CREED," the ancient confession of the Church of Rome, although now used by Protestants and Catholics alike. It reads:

"I believe in God, the Father Almighty, maker of heaven and earth; And in Jesus Christ his only Son our Lord; Who was conceived by the Holy Ghost."

**Tradition of Rufinus.**—There is a tradition of Rufinus that each of the Twelve Apostles had a share in the composition of it, but that tradition may be safely disregarded. The use of this creed, however, dates back to the Fourth Century; its practical completion by Bishops Felix and Dionysius in the Third Century, and its actual origin in the writings of Tertullian in the Second Century.

**Cause for controversy.**—Simple as this creed appears, there is in it enough cause for controversy to have kept theologians and scientists at variance throughout the succeeding centuries.

**Creed of Antioch.**—Then comes the Creed of Antioch, with points which are of interest to Rosicrucians:

"I believe in one and one only true God, Father Almighty, maker of all things visible and invisible. And in our Lord Jesus Christ, His Son the only-begotten AND FIRST BORN OF ALL

CREATION, begotten of Him before all ages, THROUGH WHOM ALSO THE AGES WERE ESTABLISHED, AND ALL THINGS CAME INTO EXISTENCE.”

**Ist and 2nd Adams.**—This recalls to our minds the teachings regarding the First and Second Adams, so familiar to Bible students and Hermetic and Alchemical Rosicrucian students.

**Other Creeds.**—Then in order come the creeds of Caesarea (Eusebius), Cyril of Jerusalem, Cassian of Antioch (Apostolic Constitution), Lucian the Martyr, Arius (Alexandria), Jerome, and the NICENE CREED, used today by Roman and Anglican Churches but not the evangelical bodies. This creed is the revision by the Council of Nicaea, A. D. 325, and begins:

**Nicene Creed.**—“I believe in one God the Father Almighty, Maker of heaven and earth; And of all things visible and invisible; And in one Lord Jesus Christ, the only-begotten Son of God; Begotten of his Father before all worlds, God of God, Light of Light, Very God of Very God; Begotten, not made; Being of one substance with the Father; By whom all things were made; Who for us men and for our salvation came down from heaven, And was incarnate by the Holy Ghost. . . . And in the Holy Ghost, the Lord and Giver of Life, who proceedeth from the Father (and the Son), who with the Father and the Son together is worshipped and glorified, who spake by the Prophets.”

**Division between East and West.**—The division between Eastern and Western Christendom was caused by the construction of this last section, the Greeks contending as follows:

**Eastern Idea; “Procession”; No Real Differences.**—“And in ONE Holy Ghost, the Paraclete, who spake IN the Prophets,” omitting the “procession” from the Son. Although this seemingly trivial difference has been sufficient (such is the fallibility of Man) to keep the great churches of the East and West separated for many centuries, nevertheless there is no really deep-lying difference expressed. “Eastern theologians expressed the mysterious relationship of the Holy Spirit to the Father and the Son in such phrases as ‘Who proceedeth from the Father and receiveth from the Son,’ rightly making the Godhead of the Father the foundation and primary source of the eternally derived Godhead of the Son and the Spirit.”<sup>1</sup>

**How western theology starts.**—“Western theologians approached the problem from another point of view. Hilary, starting from the thought of DIVINE SELF-CONSCIOUSNESS as the explanation of the coinherence of the Father IN the Son and the

Son IN the Father, says that the Spirit receives of both. Augustine teaches that the Father and the Son are the ONE PRINCIPLE OF THE BEING OF THE SPIRIT." This is excellent Rosicrucianism, and "from this it is but a short step to say with the 'Quicumque vult' that the Spirit proceeds from the Son, while guarding the idea that the Father is the one fountain of Deity. Since Eastern theologians would be willing to say 'proceeds from the Father THROUGH the Son,' it is clear that the two views are not irreconcilable."<sup>2</sup> That Rosicrucianism in this sense offers a ground of reconciliation between East and West will be apparent as the position and teachings of the Fraternity regarding the Mundane Trinity become more clearly understood.

The last of the great creeds we shall consider is the ATHANASIAN.

**Athanasian Creed.**—This creed is so named because it was formerly known as the "Faith of St. Athanasius." Waterland, after reviewing all known MSS., however, places its origin with Hilary of Arles, in Gaul, between 420 and 430.

As this creed, known as Quicumque vult, is not commonly used in the United States, we shall give it for the instruction of our students, as an example of the ingenuity of theologians in attempting to define that which is indefinable without the esoteric knowledge which should underly all theological study and research.

**Creed in full (Quicumque Vult).**—1 Whosoever will be saved; before all things it is necessary that he hold the Catholic Faith,

2 Which Faith, except every one do keep whole and undefiled, without doubt he shall perish everlastingly.

3 And the Catholic Faith is this: That we worship one God in Trinity and Trinity in Unity.

4 Neither confounding the Persons, nor dividing the Substance.

5 For there is one Person of the Father, another of the Son, and another of the Holy Ghost.

6 But the Godhead of the Father, of the Son, and of the Holy Ghost, is all one; the Glory equal, the majesty coeternal.

7 Such as the Father is, such is the Son; and such is the Holy Ghost.

8 The Father uncreate, the Son uncreate, and the Holy Ghost uncreate.

9 The Father incomprehensible, the Son incomprehensible, and the Holy Ghost incomprehensible.

10 The Father eternal, the Son eternal, and the Holy Ghost eternal.

11 And yet they are not three eternals, but one eternal.

12 Also there are not three incomprehensibles, nor three uncreated, but one uncreated, and one incomprehensible.

13 So likewise the Father is Almighty, the Son Almighty, and the Holy Ghost Almighty.

14 And yet they are not three Almightyies, but one Almighty.

15 So the Father is God, the Son is God, and the Holy Ghost is God.

16 And yet they are not three Gods, but one God.

17 So likewise the Father is Lord, the Son is Lord, and the Holy Ghost is Lord.

18 And yet not three Lords, but one Lord.

19 For like as we are compelled by Christian verity, to acknowledge every Person by himself to be God and Lord.

20 So are we forbidden by the Catholic Religion to say, There be three Gods, or three Lords.

21 The Father is made of none; neither created nor begotten.

22 The Son is of the Father alone; not made nor created, but begotten.

23 The Holy Ghost is of the Father and of the Son; neither made nor created nor begotten, but proceeding.

24 So there is one Father, not three Fathers; one Son, not three Sons; one Holy Ghost, not three Holy Ghosts.

25 And in this Trinity none is afore, or after other; none is greater or less than another.

26 But the whole three Persons are co-eternal together, and co-equal.

27 So that in all things, as is aforesaid, the Unity in Trinity and the Trinity in Unity is to be worshipped.

28 He therefore that will be saved must thus think of the Trinity.

29 Furthermore, it is necessary to everlasting salvation that he also believe rightly the Incarnation of our Lord Jesus Christ.

30 For the right Faith is, that we believe and confess; that our Lord Jesus Christ, the Son of God, is God and Man.

31 God, of the Substance of the Father, begotten before the worlds; and Man, of the Substance of his Mother, born in the world.

32 Perfect God, and Perfect Man; of a reasonable soul and human flesh subsisting.



33 Equal to his Father as touching his Godhead, and inferior to his Father as touching his Manhood.

34 Who although he be God and Man, yet he is not two, but one Christ.

35 One, not by conversion of the Godhead into flesh, but by the taking of the Manhood into God.

36 One altogether, not by confusion of Substance; but by unity of Person.

37 For as the reasonable soul and flesh is one man, so God and Man is one Christ.

**Specially interesting to Rosicrucian students.**—This creed is intensely interesting to Rosicrucian students, for it is a strange mixture of truth and sophistry. It is full of the Hermetic Doctrine of Unity; it emphasizes the union or connection between Divinity and Humanity or their essential Oneness, and finally an important truth in paragraph 37, which will be referred to later in this Instruction.

**Effort of Theology to express itself.**—These excerpts from the notable creeds of Christendom have been given for the purpose of enabling the student to trace the historical record of the endeavor of Theology to express itself exoterically, after it had relinquished its hold upon the inner or esoteric truth, which it undoubtedly possessed in the beginning of the Christian Era, partly as an heritage from the Ancient Mysteries and partly from the contact of the early Christian Church with the Arcane and Essenic bodies of that day.

**The teaching of Rosicrucianism is the Key that the Church has lost. ("Person").**—It will be noted that in each of the creeds quoted, the principal differentiation as well as principal emphasis has been in connection with the matter of the "Person" of Deity. Mankind was ever prone to give his concept of Deity the mantle of Personality. This always results in confusion. For example—

**Creed and the 39 Articles.**—In the Athanasian Creed, the believer is instructed (Par. 4) that there is to be neither confounding of the Persons, nor dividing of the substance.

Then in Article 1 of the famous 39 Articles of Anglicanism he is informed that "There is but one living and true God, everlasting, without body, parts or passions; of infinite power, wisdom and goodness; the Maker and Preserver of all things both visible and invisible. And in unity of this Godhead there be three Persons, of ONE SUBSTANCE, power and eternity; the Father, the Son, and the Holy Ghost."

**Paradox.**—This offers a curious paradox. The creed postulates the existence of definite “Persons,” whose “Substance” must not be divided, and the Article of Religion proceeds to describe the unity of an impersonal Being composed of specified attributes and properties without the means of functioning them. In other words, orthodox theology has ever found it impossible to define one person as three separate persons, yet of substance indivisible.

However, the paradox is that **IT CAN BE DONE.**

**How the Church has muddled the mind.**—The Church has muddled the mind of Man for ages by trying to explain the purely esoteric exoterically, the spiritual physically. The early Christian priesthood, in their designation of everything pre-Christian as “pagan” and “heathen,” lost the key, which is to be found only in the esoteric exegesis. In other words, the Church and the Creeds are practically right, **BUT THEY DO NOT KNOW IT**, and are unable to give the real definitions, for they have lost them.

**Origin of “Person.”**—If we look up the origin and derivation of the word “person” we shall gain much help. Person—persona—(Lit. mask), per and sona—signifying a mask; that through which sound comes.

**One Substance, One Principle.**—Now in Instruction Number One the student was taught that the Absolute, Supreme Being and Solar God, are **ALL ONE PRINCIPLE**, the Absolute, manifesting next the principle known as the Supreme Being, then through the Supreme Being manifesting its third principle, the Solar Gods and Logoi. This is the Cosmic Trinity, **ONE SUBSTANCE, ONE PERSON, INDIVISIBLE, MANIFESTING IN THREE DISTINCT PHASES** as it approximates its purpose in creative activity. It is **ONE PERSON** because it (the Trinity) is the mask, so to speak, through which the Creative Word goes forth to bring Order out of Chaos, and tangible Creation out of unorganized primordial Cosmic Root Substance.

**Reincarnation.**—In other words, the Supreme Being and the Solar Gods may be said to be succeeding incarnations of the Absolute in a cosmic sense, in order to bring Divine Cosmic Consciousness latent into a state whereby the evolution of **SELF-CONSCIOUSNESS** could begin.

**Divine and Self-Consciousness.**—This process brings us to the planetary Trinity or **MUNDANE Trinity**; the Father, Son and Holy Ghost, for these Beings, great and powerful as they are, belong to our planet Earth specifically.

**Son, not Jesus.**—In studying this Trinity, first let it be clearly understood that the word "Son" does not mean Jesus. This will be duly explained.

**Periods.**—In Instruction Number Two, the Seven Periods were described and explained. Our Evolution has already passed through the first three, the Saturn, Sun and Moon Periods, and the first or Mars half of the fourth or Earth Period. We are now in the second or Mercury half of the Earth Period; the culmination of the Mars half being marked by the Great World War, the evidences of the Mercury half being already shown by the waves of philosophic and scientific inquiry flooding over the world.

**Initiates.**—The evolutionary wave of humanity pertaining to each Period, like a class at a university or college, has produced its highest graduate, in the planetary or evolutionary sense, an Initiate.

**Highest Initiate, Father.**—In the stream of Virgin Spirits differentiated from the Body of God and entering the dip into Matter, or Involution and Evolution, those who constituted the Humanity of the Saturn Period are now the LORDS OF MIND, and THE HIGHEST INITIATE OF THAT PERIOD is the lofty Being we term the FATHER.

**Son, or Christ.**—Continuing the stream through the Sun Period, the Humanity of that Period are now the ARCHANGELS, and the HIGHEST INITIATE OF THE SUN PERIOD IS THE "SON" or "CHRIST" (Chrest—good).

**Holy Spirit, Jehovah.**—Likewise, the same stream continued through the Moon Period places its evolved Humanity as what are now termed ANGELS, and its HIGHEST INITIATE WAS THE HOLY SPIRIT—JEHOVAH as He was called when known as the Race Deity of the Hebrews.

**Virgin Spirits.**—It must not be understood that these streams of the Virgin Spirits were one continuous stream. Each was an original stream beginning with the Solar God, and proceeding through each separate Period, with this difference, however:

**Graduates.**—As in the case of the Cosmic Trinity, it was a process of manifestation from the Absolute outwardly, so with the MUNDANE Trinity it was a similar process. Nothing in the Cosmos "happens" by "chance." All, to the most minute detail, is the result of carefully thought out plans in the Mind of the Absolute. Therefore, as in every class in the schools of this world there are those who will graduate with highest honors and in turn become Teachers and Guides, so with the School of Human Evolu-

tion there are those destined to become Teachers and Guides. And as every human institution has its President or Master, so the School of Human Evolution must have its Master, one who has gone through all the courses of instruction and experience that this Great School can possibly offer, which means that he must have coursed the full gamut of Humanity.

**Progressed Manifestation.**—As the Solar God is a progressed manifestation of the Absolute, and the Virgin Spirits are progressed, differentiated manifestation of the Solar God, it will be seen that the highest Initiates, even as all Humanity, are of ONE SUBSTANCE with the Absolute, in differentiated vibratory status. Thus, those particular Virgin Spirits, who by their proficiency and efficiency became the highest products of their respective Periods, were truly of ONE SUBSTANCE with the Absolute, the Supreme Being and Solar God in differentiated vibratory manifestation in evolutionary process back to Cosmic relationship.

**Highest Saturn Initiate.**—But with the highest Initiate of the Saturn Period, the evolutionary wave of that Period was completed. The involuntary incarnations of that Initiate were completed. Therefore, to help in cosmic and solar plan the wave of Humanity then entering upon its course, that same Initiate began his voluntary incarnations, and again, of his own free will, took upon himself the human nature of that Period, the Sun Period.

The same process and sublime act took place at the beginning of the Moon Period.

**In Sun and Moon Periods.**—As the highest Initiate of the Saturn Period, he naturally became the Leader and Guide of the Sun Period, and therefore the highest Initiate of the Sun Period. As the highest Initiate of both Saturn and Sun Periods he was more than ever qualified to become the Leader and Guide of the Humanity of the Moon Period by his vastly accumulated experience, and thus also became the highest Initiate of the Moon Period as well.

**All One Person.**—THE FATHER, SON, AND HOLY SPIRIT, HIGHEST INITIATES OF SATURN, SUN, AND MOON PERIODS, ARE ONE AND THE SAME PERSON (or mask through which the sound of the Creative Word became potent in the process of our planetary creative activity), THE TREMENDOUSLY ADVANCED EGO OR ELDER BROTHER AND MASTER, BEING OF ONE SUBSTANCE WITH THE FATHER (the Cosmic Trinity), BY WHOM ALL WORLDS WERE MADE, AND BY HIS ADVANCED SPIRITUAL STATUS AND ENTERING INTO

COSMIC CONSCIOUSNESS AND COSMIC CREATIVE ACTIVITY—"VERY GOD OF VERY GOD, AND LIGHT OF LIGHT."

**Functions of the Highest Initiate.**—In the Saturn Period this Great Being was the ultimate product of the Human Evolution of that Period. In the Sun Period He became the Guide thereof. In the Moon Period, He became the Master of Human Evolution.

Therefore, the question arises, what is this Great Being to our Earth Period?

**What He is to our Earth Period.**—In the three Periods just mentioned, His activities and operations were outside of our planet. During the Mars half he began His preparatory work to become the PLANETARY OR INDWELLING SPIRIT OF EARTH, thenceforth to guide the future evolution of this sphere from within, outwardly, as the fact of His Divine creative status warranted. Thus in the Mars half he has been successively the Race God of many Races and the time approached when He should enter into His possessions until the end of the present Day of Manifestation.

**Cosmic Law; Jesus.**—Now it is a cosmic law, that to function in any world region or sphere, the Ego, however advanced, must have a vehicle pertaining to that world region or sphere, and the home of the Ego on the mundane plane is in the Blood. So it was necessary that an advanced Human Being should be prepared for this purpose, whose spiritual life should be such that his vehicle could be utilized by this Great Being while functioning on the Earth Plane. Such a Being was the Man Jesus, son of Joseph the Carpenter.

**His Lives; Christos.**—This Man Jesus had been known to ancient history by many names throughout many previous incarnations, in each of which He had advanced to such a point that in the incarnation by the name of Jesus He had become so highly spiritualized that His physical, etheric, and astral vehicles could be utilized by the Great Triune Being whom we call in Rosicrucian teaching the CHRIST, CHRISTOS, or SUN INITIATE, for its work upon the Earth. It was by virtue of the tremendous spiritual vibratory power of the Sun Initiate that the wonderful powers manifest through the Man Jesus were operative.

**Nature of Jesus.**—Jesus, highly advanced as he was, more so than any other human being incarnate at that or any subsequent time, had a purely natural birth, with natural parents, Mary and Joseph, although that birth was carefully planned by the Lords of Destiny for that particular incarnation. Ancient records care-

fully eliminated from the Sacred Writings by Christian theologians give us much light on his earthly years. This is not of importance to us, except in so far as they indicate his purely human nature and character.

The great event in his life, the event for which he had incarnated, and the beginning of his mission, was at his Baptism by John, in Jordan.

**Becomes Christ; at that Baptism Jesus became Jesus the Christ, or Christ Jesus; Evidences of the Occupancy.**—The Christos or Sun Initiate thus occupied the Vehicles of the Man Jesus, until the Crucifixion of the latter on Golgotha. And note this, that while many of the "Epistles" or writings of the Apostles speak of the "Death of and on the Cross," nowhere are we taught in either ancient records or in the undoubtedly authoritative books of the Bible itself, that JESUS actually died a physical death thereon: Many references are made to "Christ dying for us, etc.," but the FACTS are, that Jesus exclaimed in his purely HUMAN agony, "Eloi, Eloi, lama Sabachthani,"—"My God, my God, why hast thou forsaken me?" showing that even with this great Initiate, the hour of his Human suffering obscured for the moment his spiritual sight and vision.

But later, he cried out with a loud voice AND GAVE UP THE GHOST, according to St. Mark xv-37, and by St. Luke we are told that with a loud voice he said, "Father (note his now awakened spiritual sight and recognition), into thy hands I commend my SPIRIT"—(his erstwhile controlling or obsessing directive guidance, the SUN SPIRIT). In John xix-30 we are told that "he bowed his head and GAVE UP THE GHOST" (the Christos).

**When Jesus ceased to be Christ; Christ Ego leaves.**—The moment when he "gave up the Ghost" was the moment when, realizing that his special and lofty mission was completed, he voluntarily permitted the dissociation of the higher spiritual Entity or Christos, from his purely personal human vehicles. Then, when the spear of the Roman soldier pierced his side, the Greater Ego or Christos, passed thence, via the Water and Blood that flowed therefrom, into the Earth to which it was thus furnished an entrance. Those who care to seek may find ample evidence that after the Corpus of Jesus was taken from the Cross it was restored to normal human functioning, and lived for several years thereafter, becoming one well known among the Great Philosophers of antiquity.

**Why this was necessary.**—It may be enquired why such a process was necessary for an Initiate so advanced as the Sun Spirit or Christos. It is because from the amoeba to Divinity, from the finite to the Infinite, Nature knows no exceptions to Natural or Cosmic Law.

And one of those laws is, that to function in any given world or region the Ego must have a vehicle pertaining to that world or region.

Now, although the Christos was the Highest Initiate of the Sun Period, as in fact of the preceding and succeeding periods as well, it must be kept in mind that the Humanities of the Saturn, Sun and Moon Periods had never attained the complete dip into Matter accomplished by the Humanity of the Earth Period. The Humanity of the Saturn Period reached a point in the World Regions equivalent to that of Concrete Thought, and thus developed the Mind Matter to an extent which made it possible for succeeding evolutionary waves to go a step farther, which was done in the Sun Period, wherein the Humanity of that Period developed the Astral Body, and likewise in the Moon Period the Humanity of that time evolved the Etheric Body or Vehicle.

**Vehicles of former Humanity.**—Therefore, although they may be immeasurably beyond our humanity, those of the Moon Period who are now the Angels cannot function nearer to our conditions than the Etheric, inasmuch as they learned to build only the Etheric Body as their lowest vehicle. The Archangels or ordinary Sun Spirits learned to build only the Astral Body, so they can approach our Humanity no nearer than that.

The Initiates of each Period, however, have progressed so far in the spiritual worlds that they function vastly beyond those of their own contemporary evolution. Thus in the instance of those of the Saturn Period they have attained to consciousness in the World of Divine Spirit. Those of the Sun Period normally function in the World of Life Spirit, the first of the so-called "Universal World Planes or Regions." The Highest Initiates of the Moon Period now function in the higher divisions of the Region of Abstract Thought.

**Necessity for Jesus' body.**—The Greatest Initiate of them all, the Triune Being known as Father, Son and Holy Ghost, having never built in his own evolution a physical body, was obliged to have recourse to one in order to function in the Physical World. This body was provided by the Physical Vehicle of the Man Jesus. The body so prepared and provided was the result of a long ex-

tended series of incarnations, tests and trials through age long eras, in order to enable the Ego Jesus to build through Mary a Vehicle sufficiently attuned to the requirements.

**Difference between Jesus and Jesus the Christ.**—It will be seen that Jesus and Jesus Christ, Jesus the Christ or Christ Jesus are thus two entirely distinct and separate entities or Egos. The lofty mission of the Man Jesus, the loftiest ever yet accorded to Man, was to become the connecting link between Divinity and Humanity. Through Jesus, the Triune Being whose particular sphere is the World or Region of Divine Spirit, reached down and entered into our Humanity.

**One with the Father.**—In the light of this knowledge, much that has been hitherto obscure in the utterances ascribed to Jesus will become clear, when we understand that after his Baptism, it was the Christos or Sun Spirit speaking through him. When he said, "He that hath seen me, HATH SEEN THE FATHER," we can reconcile it with the apparent contradiction in the statement that "No man hath seen GOD at ANY time."

**Made direct chain.**—Again, when he said, "Whither I go, ye cannot come" (John xiii-33) and again (xiii-36), "Whither I go, thou canst not follow me NOW; but thou shalt follow me *afterwards*." In John xiv-2 we are told, "In my Father's house are many mansions (Regions); if it were not so, I would have told you. I go to prepare a place for you." Jesus himself could not have told by actual personal entrance therein of the many mansions, therefore it could only have been the SPIRIT within speaking. Then, too, the SPIRIT expressly stated its mission when it said, "I go to prepare a place for you"; in other words, after linking Divinity incarnate with our Humanity the SPIRIT had bridged the gulf between evolutionary periods, and established a direct chain connecting the highest inner worlds or regions, with our Physical World Region.

**Planetary guidance.**—From the first impulse toward creative effort manifested by the Solar God, up to this time of the Great Incarnation, our planet had been guided from without. Human progress from the first differentiation of atomic vibration in Cosmic Root Substance up to that sublime union, had passed through the relatively simple stages to one of greater complexity.

**Complexity increases (Before and after the Incarnation).**—This complexity of human affairs brought about the need of direction by actual contact from *within*, for which the Great Triune Being or triple Initiate had been preparing and was now able to



undertake. From an intelligent observation of human progress since the Incarnation, all will recognize that this progress has been accelerated to a remarkable degree, and has been marked by Man's entering into a knowledge and understanding of Nature Forces and their actual operation and manipulation. This was not necessary in the status of human progress *before* the Incarnation; it has been indispensable *since*, and so from decade to decade our progress has been so swift that it has been difficult to keep measure therewith in ordinary school text books.

**The Rosicrucian Motto explained.**—This understanding of the union between Jesus and the Christos explains paragraph 37 of the Athanasian Creed to which we stated we would later refer. Unknown to the ecclesiastical authorities who formulated it, in reality it is an exposition of the Rosicrucian Motto, "IESUS CHRISTUS, DEUS ET HOMO." "For as the reasonable soul and flesh is one Man," so Divinity and Humanity united make one Christ. Jesus was the Man. Jesus the Christ was God *and* Man. Through Jesus God became Man. Through Jesus Man became God. This is an infinitely loftier concept and understanding of both great Egos than the orthodox Christian acceptance.

**Hebrew and Christian.**—In Jesus, the Hebrew can see several of his Race Prophets and Wise Men incarnated and epitomized. In Jesus, the Christian can see a new heaven and a new earth opened up to future human evolutionary waves. In Jesus, both Hebrew and Christian have a common ground of association.

**Body of God.**—The Seven World Regions, being the differentiation in so-called space, of the Cosmic Root Substance worked upon by the Creating God, are in reality therefore the Body of God, and the Highest Initiates expressing or manifesting in these Seven Regions are the Highest Expressions to Humanity of the Body of God. Yet God, the Initiates and ourselves are all of one Substance, *undivided, indivisible*, but differentiated in vibrational status.

**Exemplar.**—This fact of an advanced exemplar of each evolutionary Period, preserved in the Consciousness of the Universal Human Spirit, brought over from wave to wave of human evolution, is the basis of the common teaching of all religions the world has ever known, that of a Messiah or "Saviour" to come at some foreordained time. The only manner in which foreordination may be said to enter into such concepts, is through the certainty that at stated cycles one wave of human evolution ends and another begins, and that after a specific number of revolutions one Period

ends and another begins, and with the ending and beginning the highest Initiate of the preceding becomes the Guiding Spirit and Teacher or Solar Elder Brother of the succeeding Period.

**Real "Person"; Jesus' Human Personality.**—The real "Person" that theology has tried so hard to explain in fashioning for itself a definition of Deity that would answer all queries and meet all requirements is, in reality, not that of an impersonal Being or Principle, but the Human Personality of the *Man* Jesus. There is no need to divest Jesus of his Human Personality, even if it could be accomplished, in order to personify the impersonal. The real Person in this Triune Being is Jesus himself, the "mask" through which came the sound of the voice of the SPIRIT, the CHRISTOS, OR SUN INITIATE.

**Begotten before all worlds.**—The Christian Creed informs us that Jesus Christ was the only begotten Son of God; Begotten of his Father before all worlds. In the case of a person such would have been impossible. In the case of a Principle such was the FACT. St. John i, 1-14 tells us that "In the beginning was the WORD, and the WORD was with God, and the WORD *was* God." Also, that "The WORD was made *flesh*, and *dwelt among us* (and we beheld his glory, the glory as of the only begotten of the Father), full of grace and truth."

**Three Aspects of Supreme Being.**—The Three Aspects of the Supreme Being, it will be remembered, are POWER, *THE WORD AND MOTION*. These are aspects of the Supreme Being, not persons. Therefore, the only thing that was "begotten" before all worlds was the WORD, manifested as the second aspect of the Supreme Being. This WORD was made flesh, through the projection from the Supreme Being of the Third Manifestation of the Cosmic Trinity, the Seven Creative Logoi, which diffused through from the second to the seventh Cosmic Plane, the diffusions in the seventh becoming the Gods (Solar) of the various solar systems. It was incarnated in flesh through the dissemination of differentiated Virgin Spirits from the Solar God as the Humanities of this and other Planets and Planetary Periods.

**The Cosmic Trinity has to do with Cosmic Manifestation.**—The aspects of its Expression as the Supreme Being, Power, the Word and Motion have to do with the (1st) planning and visualizing of the Universe; (2nd) creatively mobilizing the forces of attraction and repulsion, cohesion and so-called gravitation in their reactions upon the inseparable atoms of Cosmic Root Substance; (3rd) inaugurating the motions and velocities from which result

the possibilities of Solar Systems, and tangible life expression as they have been and as we know them to be at the present time, respectively.

**Christ Life.**—At the present time much thought is given to what is commonly called "Living the Christ-life." It is notable that the greatest attention has been given to this concept since the ushering in of the Mercury half of the Earth Period of evolution. We are also reminded of the numerous analogies between the life of Jesus and the lives of many prior Messiahs and Race Saviours. Whence come these ideas and parallels?

**Christ Spirit long active.**—The Christ Spirit has been actively present many times in the process of our human evolution, even in prehistoric ages when mankind had no knowledge of it whatever. As previously explained, the Christos or Sun Initiate cannot function below the Etheric and Astral Vehicles, so the Humanity of the early evolutionary Periods felt, but were not conscious of the real import of it, the presence of this vitalizing spiritual power, which operated to raise the mass intelligence of humankind. When our humanity had approximated the requisite degree of appreciation and understanding of its presence, the Christos selected seven of the most advanced Initiates of the Atlantean Mysteries, and in their subsequent incarnations *IM-PRESSED*, without entering into them, their higher vehicles to such an extent that they were enabled to prophesy accurately for the benefit of mankind.

**Schools of the Prophets.**—The groups of disciples who gathered around these Initiates, constituted the Schools of the Prophets, of which every ancient world religion had its own. One of these seven Initiates was the Ego, who in many incarnations was known to our recorded history as a great leader and Teacher of Humanity, culminating finally in the incarnation in which he was known as Jesus. Thus the prophecy of the Christ to come, was perpetuated through the incarnations of this and other Initiates and pursuant to the ardently desired end, each incarnation assumed features analogous to and which linked it with the preceding incarnations of each particular Initiate. Thus to each has been accorded by mythos, a miraculous or virgin birth, trial, temptation, endurance, triumph and in most cases a painful death.

**All Humanity is accounted for.**—Theology has often been puzzled to account for what may become of those who passed to the spiritual worlds before the coming of the Christos. Reincar-

nation when rightly understood provides for equal opportunities for equal understanding spiritually as well as physically for all. But in the cases of those whose involuntary incarnations were completed before that great Incarnation of the Christos, the knowledge accumulated by those who have lived since the event is transmitted spiritually in the higher planes in such a manner that it can be easily assimilated and personally accepted as experience even by those who have passed to other planetary planes of being, for the auras of each planet in our solar system overlap and interpenetrate each other to such an extent that day by day we breathe, inhale and move in the actual auric substance of other planetary spheres of existence. This is one of the facts that contribute to help along our knowledge of the other members of our planetary system, as it comes unapprehended, though none the less surely, to those who as astronomers may be concentrating their thoughts upon such matters, and therefore by the law of Attraction draw such thought waves to them.

**Christ Mystery reaches into all Planes.**—In the same way, those whose progress is now made in the spiritual regions may receive the consciousness and knowledge of the Christ event and make it a part of their own personal consciousness as well. “Up to the Christ Mystery, evolution had been confined principally to the world of sense, with the consequent abeyance of the spiritual. Everything which flowed into the sense-world proceeded from what had been in the spiritual world from remote ages,”<sup>3</sup> and thus material progress to the gradual exclusion of spiritual progress was made. After the Christ Mystery those who are spiritually awakened take back into the spiritual world all they have gained and learned in the physical world. “And from the spiritual world it then flows back again into the earthly world of sense, through the reincarnating souls, who bring with them what they have gained through the Christ impulse in the spiritual world between death and a new birth.”<sup>4</sup> Thus the present makes up for the past and no modicum of human experience is lost.

**Christ Life not a matter of formula.**—Living the “Christ Life” is not a matter of doctrine, dogma, precept, or formulated practice. Imposters have reaped rich harvests from the credulous by prescribing such conditions and provisions, revealing thereby their own ignorance of the essential nature and meaning of the “Christ Life.”

**A State of Consciousness.**—The Christ Life is above all things a state of consciousness. All else that may manifest in the ex-

oteric life of the seeker will be resultant upon the degree of Christ Consciousness attained. We have referred to the Coming of the Christ early in this era, as the "Christ Mystery" and mystery it is, for while millions have and do proclaim their belief in the Incarnation, few, very few, understand and know what the Incarnation really means.

**Without and within.**—Prior to the Incarnation the guidance of the Humanity of the Earth Period was from without. Since the Incarnation it has been from within. Coming from within, it brings with it in the thought forms and activities of the Indwelling or Planetary Spirit, the Christos, to all Kingdoms and Creatures of the Life Wave, according to their capacity to receive and their ability to respond and react thereto.

**Individual measure of Christ Life.**—This ability to respond and react is the measure of the seeker's attainment of the Christ Life, which is participation in the Christ Consciousness. Prior to the Incarnation the individual accepted guidance from the Holy Men, Prophets and Judges acting as the mouthpiece or "persona" of the Spirit.

**Inner Self.**—Since the Incarnation, the individual becoming by degrees permeated and imbued with the Christ Consciousness has gradually broken away from sole reliance on priestly admonition and guidance and begun the process of self-guidance in obedience to what is commonly termed "one's inner self."

**Fads.**—But as yet, for the mass aggregate of Humanity, this individual guidance is far from perfected as an infallible criterion of action and attitude, hence the vagaries, fads, and idiosyncrasies resulting from the modern and in some limited circles, popular cry—"Individualism; intense, unfettered individualism."

**Force seeks outlet.**—Every force in Nature seeks an outlet or avenue of expression. There are no exceptions to this law. It is therefore true of the stream of consciousness. And the Christ Consciousness, powerful, planetary, solar, and almost truly cosmic, seeks such an outlet—through the life and consciousness of the individual.

**Golgotha the Beginning, not the Ending.**—The individual who can realize actually and personally, not theoretically and dogmatically, that Golgotha was the BEGINNING, not the end of the influx of Divine Spiritual Consciousness, and in this realization knows the "ever presence" of the Christos, with us, here and NOW, has begun to live the Christ Life. Knowledge is power, and the true knowledge of the Christ Mystery dawns only on those who by

their evolutionary status are able to receive it, and only such will be actuated to seek for it and desire it. Search prompted by ardent personal desire, awakens latent and dormant spiritual sensibilities; observance of the teachings of the Christos while incarnate as Jesus, in a broad minded, tolerant spirit of charity and compassion, will raise one's spiritual vibrational status, and both search, desire and observance will unite in the individual in whom they combine, to amplify his human, personal, individual consciousness into the depth, power and comprehension of the Christ Consciousness.

Then will such an individual begin to live the true Christ Life, which is not to be confounded with the idea of working miracles, phenomenal healing, etc. When first the Kingdom of God has been sought and found, "all these things shall be added unto you," to just the extent that you have earned the right to them.

"The Christ impulse, rightly understood, impels the human soul which has experienced it to feel itself a member of a spiritual world, recognizing it as a world to which it belongs, outside which it formerly existed."<sup>5</sup>

"The province of reverent theology is to aid accurate thinking by the use of metaphysical terms. Its definitions are no more an end in themselves than an analysis of good drinking water, which by itself leaves us thirsty but encourages us to drink."<sup>6</sup> Therefore, the student of spiritual science may be encouraged by various religious concepts, to delve deeply into the profundities of cosmic and Divine relationships, but only by the aid of the esoteric knowledge and true spiritual insight will he be able to understand them.

#### QUESTIONS ON INSTRUCTION No. 7

1. What terms are often confused in the study of Rosicrucian science?
2. What fear is often entertained or felt by students?
3. Why is this fear inimical to progress?
4. In understanding the Trinity, what will the student find?
5. What is the first great Trinity in Rosicrucianism?
6. What is the second great Rosicrucian Trinity?

7. What is this second Trinity said to be?
8. How has Humanity always expressed its concept of Deity? Why?
9. How does the Trinity relate to the Threefold Vehicles of Man?
10. What do we find embodied in the creeds of all religions?
11. What did Lao-Kiun teach?
12. Give the Correspondences of the Mundane Trinity with those of all nations.
13. What is the Mohammedan Trinity, and how explained?
14. What religions have made the most numerous attempts to explain the Trinity?
15. What creed is practically common to all Christendom?
16. What are the exceptions? (Those who are called "Liberals.")
17. How does this creed begin?
18. What is the tradition of its origin?
19. What lines of interest are found in the Creed of Antioch?
20. Name some of the later creeds.
21. State the essential features of the Nicene Creed.
22. What feature in the Nicene creed separates eastern and western Christendom?
23. What is meant by the "procession" of the Holy Ghost?
24. How may these differences be reconciled?
25. What creed is given in full in this Instruction? Why?
26. What particular paragraphs are of special interest to Rosicrucians?
27. What key has the orthodox church lost?
28. What principal emphasis is noted in each of the creeds?
29. What paradox is noted?
30. What mistake has the church made for ages?

31. What is the origin and derivation of the word "person"?
32. How is the Trinity ONE PERSON AND ONE SUBSTANCE?
33. What are the Supreme Being and Solar Gods?
34. To what does the Mundane Trinity pertain?
35. What has each evolutionary Wave produced?
36. What is the Humanity of the Saturn Period now?
37. Who was its Highest Initiate?
38. What is now the Humanity of the Sun Period?
39. Who is its Highest Initiate?
40. What is now the Humanity of the Moon Period?
41. Who is its Highest Initiate?
42. What was his Race God Name?
43. How is it that all from the Absolute to Humanity are of ONE SUBSTANCE?
44. What great service did the Highest Saturn Initiate perform?
45. Who ARE the Father, Son and Holy Ghost?
46. What is this Great Being to our Earth?
47. What cosmic law was operative in the case of this Being?
48. Who was Jesus?
49. How had he been known to history?
50. When did Jesus become Jesus the Christ?
51. What took place at that Baptism?
52. How do we know that it was the Christ Spirit that occupied his Vehicles?
53. How long did Jesus remain Jesus the Christ?
54. What were the lowest vehicles attained by the Humanities of the Saturn, Sun and Moon Periods?
55. What planes of consciousness have the highest Initiates of these Periods attained?



56. What was the lofty mission of the Man Jesus?
57. What apparent Biblical contradiction does an understanding of Jesus correct?
58. What further illustrations are given?
59. What did the work of Jesus establish?
60. How had our planet been guided before the Incarnation?
61. What did the increasing complexity of human affairs necessitate?
62. How does Paragraph 37 of the Athanasian Creed explain the Rosicrucian Motto?
63. What can a Hebrew see in Jesus?
64. What can the Christian see?
65. What is the basis of the Messiah teachings among all religions?
66. What is the real "Person" that theology has tried to explain?
67. What was really begotten before all worlds?
68. Explain somewhat the three aspects of the Supreme Being.
69. With what have the aspects of the expression of the Cosmic Trinity to do?
70. What is given much thought at the present time?
71. How active has the Christ Spirit been in connection with our evolution?
72. How was our Humanity first influenced by the Christ Spirit?
73. What were the Schools of the Prophets?
74. What analogies have been noted between the lives of Great Initiates?
75. What problem has theology encountered and how has it been solved?
76. How does the Christ Mystery extend into the Spiritual world and back again?

77. What is "Living the Christ Life" said not to be?
78. What is it in reality?
79. What is the measure of individual attainment of Christ Consciousness?
80. What has the individual been tending toward since the Incarnation?
81. What errors have resulted from its imperfect accomplishment as yet?
82. What does every natural force seek?
83. How may the individual begin to live the Christ Life?
84. What will the Christ Life cause the individual to feel?



## INSTRUCTION VIII.

### TERRESTRIAL AND SUB-TERRESTRIAL.

#### VULCANISM, SEISMATICS, ACTIVITIES OF THE PLANETARY REGENT.

---

**Earth's Reincarnations.**—In following the progress of our Earth and its humanity from primordial conditions to its present status, we must remember that as we now know it our Earth is a most ancient planet reincarnated, having passed through three preceding planetary states or "Periods," the Saturn, Sun and Moon.

**Known through Akashic Records.**—Therefore much of our knowledge of these past incarnations has to be recovered through a reading of the Akashic Records, as even the most advanced scientific hypotheses do not carry us farther back than is possible through a reading of the geological records of our planet.

**When Man's evolution began.**—The exact point at which Man's evolution began and his involution ended is variously placed by different exponents, but from the true Rosicrucian standpoint the real point of evolution of Man from purely material conditions to the higher spiritual planes began when he emerged from the Animal Kingdom, became a true Ego, "knew himself" as an objective, physical manifestation, and then slowly began to develop spiritual supremacy over his lower vehicles.

**When Earth's evolution began.**—In the same manner, the real beginning of the evolution of our planet itself may be said to have been in the Saturn Period of its incarnations, when, with the appearance of heat, it came out of the more spiritualized condition into objective manifestation; its ultimate destiny being that of a true Sun or center of a new Solar System. The evolution of our planet, or its return journey to a spiritual status was begun at the juncture between the Mars and Mercury halves of its rounds.

**Each planet to become a Sun.**—This is also the ultimate destiny of the planets in all solar systems. Each planet will, before its disintegration, become a true Sun, directing its own sub-

sidiary bodies, ruled by its own Regent (as we shall now term the Indwelling Spirit), who will by that time have become advanced to the status of a true solar God . A planet becomes a sun when the Beings of its life waves approximate the solar status of evolution. When they pass beyond that status the work of the planet is ended, and its disintegration begins. Moons of a planet indicate stragglers in the evolutionary waves of that planet.

**Life on other planets for Earth's Humanity.**—That this is true may be seen by the fact that all our present planets having been cast off from the parent Sun, to support life in varying degrees of differentiation from the solar life, must according to the Law of Compensation provide evolutionary opportunities for their future waves of reincarnating Humanity until each planet shall have ultimately approximated the vibratory status of its original parent and solar center; and the fact that in due course Initiate groups of Earth's past and present Humanity will accomplish evolutionary progress on higher planets, such as Venus and Mars, does not alter the conditions. Each planet will in due time approximate the vibratory status of its parental Sun, thus becoming a true Sun in turn. And in the mean time, until it reaches such a status, its Human life waves will receive assistance from higher planets and give assistance to those lower in the evolutionary status than its own. For we must remember that our own progress was helped and accelerated by outside planetary assistance, through previous periods.

**Van Maanen's discovery.**—As a confirmation of our statement that the ultimate destiny of each planet is to become a true sun, we have the discovery by Van Maanen of a dwarf sun of planetary size from two to three hundred per cent hotter than our sun, yet with a diameter only one one-hundredth as great, situated only thirteen light years from our earth, and therefore one of our nearest stellar neighbors.<sup>1</sup>

**Venusian and Mercurian Assistants.**—The Venusian and Mercurian entities are not as yet arrived at the status of Sun evolution, but they are immeasurably advanced beyond our own. While Humanity has been in-the-making through all of Earth's reincarnations, races, as we understand them, did not exist in the Saturn, Sun and Moon Periods, neither will they continue as we now know them in the Jupiter, Venus and Vulcan Periods. Let us see why it was that assistance from the Venusian and Mercurian entities was necessary or desirable.



FIG. 24

A "CLOSE-UP" OF THE MOON. PHOTO BY THE NEW HOOKER TELESCOPE OF THE MOUNT WILSON OBSERVATORY OF THE CARNEGIE INSTITUTION OF WASHINGTON. THE LUNAR APENNINES AND ALPS ARE SHOWN. BOTH RANGES INCLUDE PEAKS FROM 15,000 TO 20,000 FEET HIGH. IN THE UPPER RIGHT IS SHOWN THE CRATER OF COPERNICUS; THE LOWER CRATER IS THAT OF PLATO, AND THE VAST OPEN SPACE IS THE PLAIN KNOWN AS THE MARE IMBRIUM.

**Order in which planets were thrown off.**—The planets were thrown off from the parent Sun in the following order:

- 1st. Uranus,
- 2nd. Saturn,
- 3rd. Jupiter,
- 4th. Mars,
- 5th. Earth,
- 6th. Venus,
- 7th. Mercury.

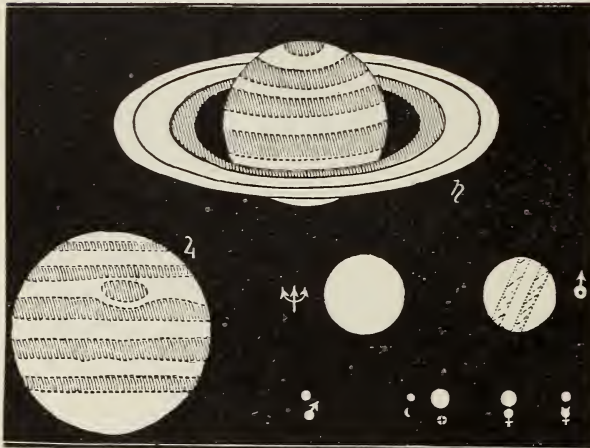


FIG. 25

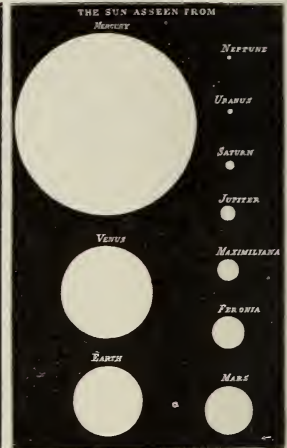


FIG. 26

FIG. 25 Showing the comparative sizes of the planets of our Solar System. This plate includes Neptune which is not considered as a part of our Solar System by Occultists. Each planet may be indentified by its astronomical sign.

FIG. 26 Showing the relative size of the Sun as it appears from each planet of our Solar System.

—(Fig. 25 From Young's *General Astronomy*. Fig. 26 From Lockyer's *Elements of Astronomy*.)

**Why one planet can help another.**—From this it will be seen that the evolved Humanity of each planet is in a position to render material assistance to the evolving Humanity of those planets which are farther from the parent Sun than their own, as the farther from the Sun a planet is, the slower its evolutionary progress will be. (Jupiter is an exception to this rule, having a very highly advanced order of Beings.)

**Lords of Venus and Mercury.**—Thus, Venus and Mercury were in a position to help the Humanity of Earth, and they gave it by sending advanced Beings known to occultists as the Lords of Venus and the Lords of Mercury.

**Races began in the Earth Period.**—Races as we know them, began in the Earth Period of our planet's existence, and their organization as such may, broadly speaking, be said to be the result of the guidance given Man-in-the-making by the Lords of Venus.

**When Man talked with the Gods.**—This was the time when Mankind literally walked and talked with "the Gods," for these Lords of Venus and Mercury were truly Messengers from the higher spheres.

**Rulers by Divine Right.**—When the physical development and progress of Mankind was sufficiently advanced to permit of the awakening of his intellectual or soul faculties, the Lords of Mercury took charge, selecting the most advanced homos and placing them as rulers over groups of Humanity. This was the real beginning of the line or dynasties of "Rulers by Divine Right," who were fully impressed with the sense of the responsibility with which they were entrusted. This idea of "Ruling by Divine Right" we see in every precept of the ancient Egyptian Rituals, wherein the members of the royal family were regarded as the children of Ra or the Sun, and by whom the sanctity of the blood royal was so highly venerated that intermarriage within the family line was in many dynasties imperative.

**Masses and Classes.**—The same idea has been perpetuated even to very modern times, with the loss, however, of the sense of personal responsibility, which has given place to the greed of personal aggrandizement. This idea has now served its purpose, and dynasties must give and are giving way to the greater personal freedom of advancing homos. The Lords of Venus ruled over the masses. The Lords of Mercury selected the classes. Masses and classes are now breaking up to make way for the aristocracy of brains in the developed individuals.

**Why Mars Half of Earth Period is so called.**—The first half of our Earth Period has been called the Mars half, as it was necessary during that interim that the influence of Mars should polarize the iron of Earth to such an extent that the formation of red blood should not be accomplished in Man-in-the-making until the Ego was ready to indraw completely into its vehicle, the blood being the sphere in which the Ego functions. When the Ego was thus ready, further polarization of the iron elements was unnecessary, the formation of red blood was permitted and accelerated, and with this acceleration came the greater use of iron in all its forms objectively, in accordance with the developing intellectual faculties under the influence of the Lords of Mercury.

**Mercury Half.**—Their influence still continues and our Earth is now said to be in the Mercury half of its present incarnation. In fact, we may be said to have but entered the Mercury half, the Great World War closing the Mars half, and though wars must still occur, they will result largely from the Mercurian philosophic wave which is awakening the world and causing Earth's Humanity to think for itself instead of being passively ruled by the few.

**Races began on Lemuria; Animal-like.**—Races of human kind or their progenitors began on Lemuria, a "lost" continent which has been described in a previous instruction. Man's physical body at that time was animal-like. The physical body, with some features of which there are now only rudimentary remains and vestigial organs, assumed shape during the Atlantean Epoch, Atlantis being another so-called "lost" continent already mentioned.

**Five Post-Atlantean Races.**—Since Atlantis, with its Seven Races, the succeeding human races have been described as "Post-Atlantean" or Aryan in five general time divisions as follows:

- 1st. Ancient Indian. (Not of the India of today, but of the locale adjacent to India then known as the vestiges of Lemuria, hence really Lemurian persistences through the Atlantean time.)
- 2nd. Egypto-Chaldean.
- 3rd. Ancient Persian. (Some occultists reverse 2 and 3.)
- 4th. Graeco-Roman. (About the 8th Century, B. C.)
- 5th. Modern. (Preparations for which began in the 4th and 5th centuries A. D., and actually took form about the 12th century.)

**How Races reflect.**—Just as general conditions pertaining to the spiritual vehicles of man are said to reflect themselves in the Physical vehicles, i. e., Divine Spirit in the Physical Body, Life Spirit in the Etheric Body, etc., so the general conditions of each Post-Atlantean time division will be found reflected in succeeding times, thus, those of the

- 1st. will be found reflected, reproduced and carried to greater perfection in the 3rd. The
- 2nd. will be found reflected in the 4th. The
- 3rd. will be found reflected in the 5th. The
- 4th. will be reflected in the 6th yet to come.

**Seven Great Root Races.**—In referring to the generalization of Mankind since its diffusion into races occultism and Rosicrucian science teach that Seven Great Root Races and 16 sub-races will constitute Earth's human evolution.





FIG. 27

THE WONDERFUL ART OF THE ANCIENT INDIANS. ROCK CUT  
TEMPLE FACADE, THE IDEA OF WHICH WAS INSPIRED  
BY THE ROCK CUT TOMBS AND TEMPLES OF THE  
EGYPTIANS.

Of these Seven Great Root Races, five have existed up to and including the present. They are:

- 1st Great Root Race of the Present Earth  
Round—the Polar.
- 2nd Great Root Race of the Present Earth  
Round—the Hyperborean.
- 3rd Great Root Race of the Present Earth  
Round—the Lemurian. 1 Sub-Race.
- 4th Great Root Race of the Present Earth  
Round—the Atlantean. 7 Sub-Races.
- 5th Great Root Race of the Present Earth  
Round—the Aryan. 7 Sub-Races.
- 6th Great Root Race of the Present Earth  
Round—will mark the 6th Epoch. 1 Sub-Race.
- 7th Great Root Race of the Present Earth  
Round—will witness a restoration of humanity to a higher spiritual status and emancipation from materialistic crystallization.

**Not sharply demarked.**—These races do not have sharply defined lines of demarcation. They overlap, and we have always with us representatives of preceding races. Thus the greater part of humanity at present belongs to the Seventh Sub-Race of the 4th Root Race, but also another large proportion of humanity is entering the Sixth Sub-Race of the 5th Great Root Race of the Fourth Round.<sup>2</sup>

**No Birth or Death to Lemurians.**—The truly ancient Lemurians knew neither birth nor death, for they were not conscious of their objective, mortal manifestations, and were conscious almost exclusively on a spiritual plane, passing from one body to another without being conscious that they were functioning in two planes or regions at the same time.

**Human Mind among Post-Atlanteans.**—Among the early Post-Atlantean Races the human mind underwent rapid development along lines that made its cognizance of objective conditions clearer, at the same time preserving its spiritual vision. This is why we see so much of imagery and poetic allusion to and personification of natural forms in such literature as has come down to us from those times.

**Ancient Persian and Egypto-Chaldeans.**—In the ancient Persian and Egypto-Chaldean races “the knowledge that a man now acquires through his intelligence he then gained in the manner

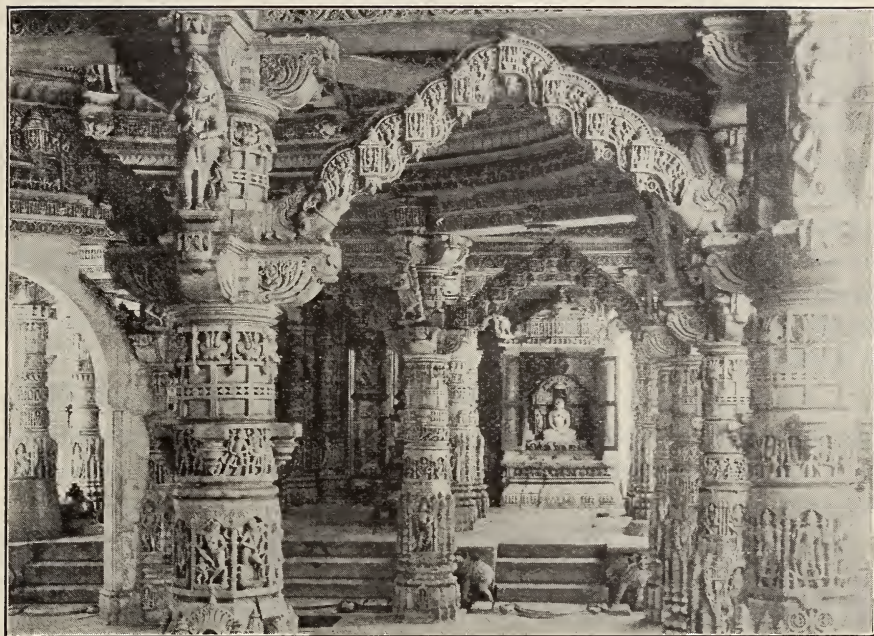


FIG. 28

INTERIOR OF A CAVE TEMPLE. THE DELICATE TRACERY IS CUT FROM SOLID MARBLE. THIS IS A JAIN TEMPLE AT MT. ABU IN THE RAJPUTANA STATE OF SIROHI AND ITS ORIGIN IS ESTIMATED AS DATING FROM BETWEEN A.D. 1032 AND 1247. THIS TEMPLE AT DEULWARA, AS IT IS CALLED, CONTAINS THE SHRINE AND FIGURE OF THE GOD PARSWANATH, AND ONE OF THE SUMMITS OF THE MOUNTAIN IS SAID TO BEAR A GRANITE BLOCK ON WHICH ARE IMPRINTED THE FEET OF DATA-BHRIGU, AN INCARNATION OF VISHNU.

suiting to that time—directly through an inner, or, in a certain respect, clairvoyant knowledge. He saw the things around him, and while perceiving them the conception—the vision of them which the soul needed—arose within the consciousness.”<sup>3</sup>

**Graeco-Romans.**—During the Graeco-Roman times this faculty became less apparent, “intelligent reflection concerning things took its place,”<sup>4</sup> and this was the gradually increasing status of human mentalism throughout the whole of this fourth time division. It was the period that gave to the world a marvelous galaxy of philosophers, teachers and academicians; mathematicians and statesmen.

**Consciousness in the 5th Division.**—During the present, the fifth time division, human consciousness will open more and more to the knowledge of the higher spiritual planes, regaining in some measure that spiritual clairvoyance and vision possessed by our

progenitors, plus the added development of intervening ages. In this fifth division we also find a renaissance of ancient Egyptian wisdom, and in the sixth and seventh divisions all the ancient hidden wisdom, religion and contact with the spiritual planes will be restored.

**The future Jupiterian Period.**—As it is with the races, so will it be with the Earth. When the present Earth Period is completed, after a slight interim of reconstructive activity and renewal, the Jupiterian Period will be entered. Then all that we now call the Mineral Kingdom will be transformed into the Vegetable Kingdom but far in advance of what we now term the Vegetable.

**Venus Period.**—Similarly, in the Venusian Period there will be no Vegetable Kingdom, and the lowest division of the Life Stream will be the Animal Kingdom, but greatly advanced over the present.

**Vulcan Period.**—During the Vulcan Period, the Human will be the lowest of the Kingdoms, but of an advanced Humanity far beyond our present comprehension.

**Chosen Races.**—From among these varying races have been made from time to time selections by the Creative Hierarchies, as “seed races” for the next race to follow. Such selections have caused the races so designated to be known as “Chosen Races,” meaning that they were chosen as the seed races of a race yet to be. This idea of choice has been perpetuated among many ancient religious philosophies which are still extant, notably the Hebrew and some Asiatic.

**Life did not begin in Lemuria.**—Although races are said to have begun in ancient Lemuria, it must not be supposed that Lemuria was the seat of the beginnings of life upon this planet.

**Earth Motions.**—Rosicrucian science teaches four distinct motions of the Earth:

- 1st. The Earth's motion in its orbit around the Sun.
- 2nd. The Earth's motion around its polar axis.
- 3rd. A slow third movement of about 50 seconds of space per century, resulting in a complete revolution of the Earth's axis in approximately 2,592,000 years.
- 4th. Nutation.

**What the Third Motion explains.**—The third motion explains many of the hitherto seemingly inexplicable problems of science,

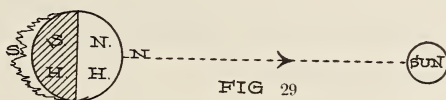
as, for instance, the existence of tropical vestiges in the polar regions.

**The Great Reversal.**—Many times during our planet's existence its North Pole has pointed directly toward the Sun, then occupied the place where the South Pole now is, and then slowly returned to its present position. When the planet had assumed definite shape, the North Pole pointed directly toward the Sun and the gravitational forces then operative practically held the planet in that position axially, until the accumulation of ice on the opposite side, which of course was in continuous darkness and cold, became so great that the planet suddenly reversed, bringing the South Pole to the position formerly occupied by the North Pole. This is illustrated by the diagrams that follow.

**Vulcanism.**—Since the establishment of land and water distribution, VULCANISM OR VOLCANIC ACTIVITY and the other conditions recorded have prevented the recurrence of a similar static condition, for although the third Polar revolution continues, it *is* continuous, and masses of ice do not have a similar opportunity of accumulating in the Southern Hemisphere when the North Pole points toward the Sun.

The action of this reversal was as follows:

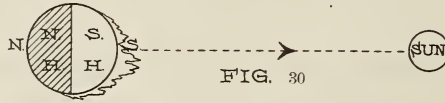
After first contracting, cohering and condensing into a more or less spheroid shape, the two polarities of the mass were in the position shown in Fig. 1, i. e., with the North Pole vertical or pointing to the sun.



This position, at a time when the whole Northern Hemisphere was exposed directly to the bombardment of solar rays, maintained the Northern Hemisphere in practically its original state of incandescence, diminished only by the radiation of its own heat into space.

**Formation of Ice Masses.**—The South Pole and Southern Hemisphere being in constant darkness and revolving in approximately Absolute Zero, were subject to rapid condensation, precipitation and liquefaction, followed by the formation of great ice masses.

**Reversal caused by Gravitation.**—By the force of gravitation this caused a reversal of the Poles, bringing the South Pole and Southern Hemisphere into the positions shown in Fig.



**Reversal not as sudden as supposed.**—This second position of the Poles, while attained with comparative rapidity, was not as sudden as some occultists have taught or assumed, for as the South Pole in Fig. 1, began its “descent” in the reversal process, the ice masses as they approached the solar rays were gradually melted. The melting process was accelerated by the assistance of the vast currents of warm water formed by the melting itself, water which increased rapidly in temperature and spread in every direction.

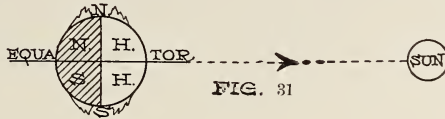
**Liberation of Steam; Explosions.**—Every one is familiar with the liberation of steam and the explosions attendant upon the immersion of red-hot iron or molten metal in water. Exactly the same phenomena occurred with the melting of the ice masses. The streams of warmer waters liberated from the melting ice mass flowed down over the equatorial belt, contacting the cooling, though still incalculably hot, Northern Hemisphere.

This contact produced tremendous explosions and disturbances of the substance of the planet, the surface of which became in time practically a vast ocean of boiling waters, covering both hemispheres with gigantic geyser-like emanations and projections, formed by the escaping steam.

**Encrustation.**—Coincident with this status was the slow encrustation of the solid shell or surface of the planet, emerging with the gradual subsidence of the boiling ocean and the reduction of its temperature.

**Reversal of the Poles not permanent.**—The reversal of the Poles did not mean that they were to remain permanently in that position. The process of the reversal has been shown to have been due to gravitational forces. The swing of this reversal, however, produced an oscillatory motion similar to that of the swing of the pendulum, the oscillations becoming less and less as the ice mass melted, the waters more generally distributed, coming finally

to an approximately static position as the planet attained comparative equilibrium, bringing the Poles to the position shown in Fig.



**How the final Third Motion was inaugurated.**—At this point other conditions united to inaugurate and maintain the third motion of the Earth already referred to.

1st. The electrical forces operative between the Sun and the Earth drawing the North Pole toward the Sun and then repelling it, thus inaugurating a continuous motion accelerating as momentum was gained.

2nd. This continuous motion was maintained by the volcanic activities which first manifested on the separation of land and sea, and even prior thereto under submarine volcanic conditions.

3rd. This third motion of the Earth is further maintained in a now even, mathematically precise and accurate rate by the gyroscopic attributes of the first and second motions, i e., the orbital and the axial.

**Why the North Pole was first to develop Life Forms.**—With the attainment of equilibrium, the axial motion of the Earth tends to draw the water distribution more to the equatorial circumference, with a preponderance of the waters of the Polar regions at the South Pole. With this preponderance of the waters at the South Pole at the very beginning of the Polar revolutions, it will be seen how the North Polar region was the first to experience a more gradual and equalized final separation of land and water elements; a more gradual and generalized cooling process without the sudden or rapid accumulation of ice masses previously mentioned, affording, with the diminution of solar energy and radiated heat, all the climatic changes necessary to support organic life forms as known, recognized, and understood by academic science.

**Polar Revolutions to continue.**—These Polar Revolutions will now continue throughout the life of the planet, but at such intervals that the tropical and polar climates, conditions and temperature changes will alternate, not suddenly, but gradually, yet allowing for complete topographical changes of environment for all the varied forms of life expression that have existed or are yet to be.

**Nutation.**—Besides the Earth motions described, there is still another motion, a certain “tremulous” motion of the Pole, called “nutiation.” The motion of the pole of the ecliptic around the Pole of the Earth describes a pericyclical figure known to form a volute, which “increases in size every 25,000 years until it reaches the Equator, when, by the present rate of the Pole’s apparent motion, there must have been traced an imaginary spiral having 22 or 23 rounds. The present rate and order of the Polar motion would, in 45 times 25,000 years INVERT THE ORDER OF THE POLES.”<sup>5</sup>

**North Pole once Tropical.**—The principal point that interests us as Rosicrucian students is, that the reversal resulting in the Southern Hemisphere being brought to its present position, at the same time caused the most intense tropical conditions on this planet to obtain for a time at the Northern Polar region.

**Life always existent.**—Life has always existed upon this and every other planet, but life in any of the forms in which science of any school could recognize it could not exist or manifest objectively until this point in Earth’s history.

**Life first appears at North Pole.**—From this fact we shall see that life as known and recognized by academic science began its objective manifestation at the NORTH POLE for the following reasons:

- 1st. A study of form, type, species and genus in every department of life, shows that all must have a common point of departure, further evidenced by their unvarying conformity to well defined laws as to type and locale.
- 2nd. All schools of science, academic and occult, agree with slight variations that at one time this globe was an intensely hot, incandescent mass.
- 3rd. That in due course of time this fiery globe has cooled down to its present temperature by radiation of its heat into space.
- 4th. That the existence of the primary rocks of igneous origin, together with still existent heat activities on a large scale, cannot be accounted for except upon the hypothesis that the planet WAS at one time an incandescent mass.
- 5th. It is obvious that life could not manifest on any portions of the earth that might still in any way approximate to such an incandescent condition, and that it would naturally appear first at the point from which



- the excessive heat had been radiated into space and the cooling and encrustation actually begun.
- 6th. Geology proves to us that this has been the case since the beginning of the Azoic age, and Rosicrucian science goes back akashically even further.
  - 7th. Allowing for the establishment of the Earth's axial revolution whereby tropical and polar conditions alternate, it is obvious that from the very first, after the accumulated ice weight had been the means of bringing the Poles to their commonly accepted status, especially with the greater water distribution at the bottom or Southern Hemisphere and the North Pole with its then tropical status at the top, or Northern Hemisphere, that the North Pole would be the first point at which manifested life could be expected to appear.<sup>6</sup>
  - 8th. Although the South Pole may be said to have cooled first, it must be remembered that its cooling was under conditions of absolute darkness and approximate zero, under which conditions life as we know it could not possibly manifest.
  - 9th. The North Pole having thus become removed from a position pointing toward the sun, bringing that luminary vertical to the Equator, would be the **FIRST LOCATION ON THE PLANET TO COOL SO GRADUALLY** as to furnish in its gradations of temperature all the climates required for the manifestation of life forms.
  - 10th. The North Pole cooled gradually because the then equatorial belt received equally distributed energy from the Sun while the North Pole developed least heat and received least light from the Sun, both being the least offset to its own heat radiation.

**Recapitulation.**—The Polar zones and the South Polar in particular having cooled first, have had in due turn all the temperatures, climates and climatic conditions which at any time the torrid and temperate zones have had, in addition to long later periods of cooler temperature and climates than either.<sup>7</sup> The cooling of the South Polar zone was too rapid for organic life manifestation. The cooling of the North Polar zone was more gradual.

This fact proves that the North Polar regions have afforded the conditions suitable for the maintenance of manifested organic life for all the types, forms and species that live or ever have

lived: all vestigial tropical life manifestations found at the South Polar regions being of more recent periods than those of the North Polar.

**Isothermal Belts.**—"If the first isothermal belt containing the highest heat waves in which life is possible had swept southward at the rate of one mile per millenium"<sup>8</sup> it would have taken about 6,000,000 years to reach the Equator, which amply conforms with known geological facts and conditions.

**Precession of Equinoxes.**—Due to a motion of the pole of the Earth, the Sun crosses the Equator at a slightly varying point each Vernal Equinox, which changes at the rate of 50 seconds per annum, or 1 degree in 72 years, 1 Sign of the Zodiac in 2100 years, and completing the entire circle of the Twelve Signs in theoretically 25,200 years, but practically in approximately 25,868 years, by some estimated at 22,500 years. This so-called "backward movement" is commonly called the "PRECESSION OF THE EQUINOXES." The consensus of estimates sets the actual motion as 50.1 seconds per annum as near as can be computed.

**Migration Southwards.**—This important fact, showing the alternation between tropical and polar conditions all over the globe, the draining of southern continents and the submergence of northern lands and vice versa, ice invasions, and great climatic changes, tends to establish another important fact that has great bearing on the truth that life began at the Poles, and the North Pole primarily, and that is: ALL NATURAL MIGRATION OF LIFE FORMS IS SOUTHWARD, that is, from the North Pole to the Equator.

For proof:

1. Great ocean and air currents run north and south.
2. ALL mountain ranges of the western continent and most of those of the eastern lie north and south mainly.
3. Nearly all great rivers of the northern hemisphere run north or south.

**Mountains.**—These features form almost impassable barriers against eastward or westward migration, for it is well known that many life species occur on the eastern slopes of the Rocky Mountains, Sierras and Alleghanies,<sup>9</sup> which are not to be found on the western slopes of the same ranges.

**Air currents.**—This migration southward is assisted by meteorological conditions. "Hot air being lighter than cold, the heated air of the northern equatorial belt has always risen and

passed mainly toward the North Pole in an upper current, while the cooler and heavier currents from the north have swept southward, hugging the surface of the continents, laden with pollen, minute germs and spores, and all the winged seeds of plants, bending grass, shrubs and trees constantly to the southward, and so, by small yearly increments moving the whole Vegetal Kingdom through valleys and along the sides of mountain ranges, down the great continents, always moving with, and never across these great surface corrugations.

**Animal Life follows Vegetal; Ocean currents.**—"It is unnecessary to add that all insects and herbivorous animals would follow the plants, or that the birds and carnivorous animals would follow the herbivorous animals and the insects. So, too, the currents of the ocean have been established in obedience to similar laws; as hot water is lighter than cold, great surface currents have been formed in both the Atlantic and the Pacific, flowing from the Equator to the Arctic regions, while the cooler and heavier currents from Arctic have swept the floors of both oceans from shore to shore to the southward, carrying all forms of marine life with them from the Pole to the Equator.

**Air and Ocean currents press westward.**—"It may be well to allude to another fact seriously affecting the bottom currents from the pole toward the Equator of both air and ocean. By reason of the revolution of the Earth upon its axis, a given point upon its surface 1000 miles south of the North Pole moves eastward at the rate of about 260 miles per hour, while another point in the same meridian at the Equator would be moving eastward a little more than 1000 miles per hour; so every cubic yard of air and water which starts in a bottom current from the polar regions for the Equator must, before reaching the Equator, acquire an eastward motion of about 750 miles an hour. The tendency therefore of all bottom currents of air and ocean moving to the south, is to press to the westward every obstacle met with in its course, and the result, both as to the currents and all movable things they come in contact with, would be to give them a southwestern course and movement.

**Coasts have southwestern trend.**—"Now it is a strange coincidence, if nothing more, that the eastern coasts of all the continents have a southwestern trend; are full of bays and inlets, and shoal water, as though the floor of the ocean was being constantly swept up against them; while the western coasts are more abrupt, straight, and touch deeper water, as though the sweepings from

the land were being constantly rolled into the sea along their entire lines."<sup>10</sup>

**Coal Beds in Arctic.**—Coal beds recently discovered in the Arctic regions prove that coal vegetation once flourished there in abundance, and where coal vegetation flourished a tropical warmth must have prevailed.

**Lycopods.**—Lycopods and tree ferns dwarfed by the coolness of our present tropics grow only a few feet high, but fossil remains show that in the once hot climate of the Arctic regions they attained a height of 50 to 75 feet and more.

**Animals follow food.**—Animals follow or move with their food, they do not precede it. Therefore it is not strange to find the fossiliferous remains of tropical animals embedded in ice and strata in the Arctics.

**How plants improve.**—Again, "all plants and animals moved by man a few degrees from the north to the south in our hemisphere are improved, and become more highly developed, vigorous and prolific by reason of the transfer."

**How Types and Species originate.**—Organically, evolution and degeneration result from the changes in the relations of supply and demand. Whenever, in regard to a given organism and its requirements the supply exceeds the demand, old wants and capacities are renewed, enlarged and new wants are manifest. Old organs are improved and new ones developed to enable the organism to obtain by "defence, contest or competition" the surplus, and this originates new appetites, greater activity, "diversified employment, keener sensibilities and a wider range of life, and so passes by such changes from the simpler to the more complex in form and function." Thus originate additional types and species.<sup>11</sup>

**Men with Thumbs; Anthropoids.**—Now if the foregoing is true of vegetables and animals it must be equally true of the prototypes of Man. Not man as we know him, but nevertheless man advanced from the Animal Kingdom—men with thumbs. Man had his first beginnings as such in long epochs before the glacial, and this central source or locale of his beginnings is the basis for the mythos of his individual creation. "His arboreal progenitor in the pioneer ranks of the great southward movement ages before the quarternary period (during all of which period Man has probably inhabited the Earth) was driven naked by the ever-following, merciless cold, thus keeping him within the southward-moving tropical climate, down the then eastward and westward continents alike,

until it and he, arriving in the lapse of ages at the equatorial belt, and being always at the head and still rising in the scale of being by this movement, discipline and progress, became sufficiently advanced to build fires, clothe himself, make implements, and possibly domesticate animals, at least the first and most useful to primitive Man, the dog; and so prepared for all climates, turned backward to the verge of the everlasting ice, subduing, slaying and exterminating; first his own ancestry, his nearest but now weak rival, which, by lingering behind and struggling for life in a climate of increasing cold, would have become extremely degenerated and so easily disposed of, if not actually exterminated, by the climate itself, thus leaving as the nearest in resemblance and yet the remotest in actual relationship both to him and his ancestry, the later tribes of anthropoid apes since developed nearer to the Equator, from the next lower animals which accompanied him in his southward march.<sup>12</sup>

**Races, not Species, began on Lemuria.**—We have said that “*races* of humankind began on Lemuria,” a “lost continent.” This is perfectly true so far as *races* are differentiated from *species*. The foregoing evidences of science with the added weight of akashic testimony show that the species of true homo had its origin at the North Pole, traveling southward, aggregating into tribes and forming into a coherent race. This ultimate crystallization of the tribal groups constituted the true Lemurian or third root race, the two preceding root races being the gradually coalescing groups known as the Polarian or first, and the Hyperborean or second root races, but while in this process of coalescence they are regarded as races solely by occultists, who look farther back in the world’s history than scientists and students of ethnology. Thus the first and second root races so-called were in reality the scattered types and species of the true homo in his gradual emergence from the next lower kingdom of life, and races as we comprehend them in the light of academic science may be truly designated as of Lemurian origin.

**Four Lost Continents; Pan and Isuria.**—Most occult schools teach the existence of two so-called “lost” continents. Rosicrucian science teaches the existence of four. The first home of mankind being practically polar and known as the continent of PAN, located in the northern Pacific Ocean, connecting what are now the continents of North America and Asia, but then having only a fragmentary and almost wholly island existence. The land at the south polar region before the ice incrustation being known as

ISURIA. Persistences of the name Pan are seen in the terms Pan-American, etc.

**Part played by Heat.**—It will have been noted that heat has played the most important part in the formation of our sphere. Heat therefore may be said to be the great moving factor and power in all life manifestation and expression, and the lowering of temperature and continuous loss of heat by radiation the cause of life migration and the cause of extinction of species. A definite range of temperature within a fixed number of degrees constitutes the scale of life expression, and above and below it no known organisms can exist. The activity of heat in man may be noticed by its increase in excited conversation or argument.

**Heat Degrees different vibratory states.**—These different degrees of heat, like all the other known physical phenomena, are simply differentiated vibratory states of the etheric constituency of the substance through which all like manifestations occur. Thus we have the phenomena of heat, light, sound, electricity, magnetism, cold, etc. The following table gives the scale according to scientific and occult acceptance. It is taken from Prof. William Crookes' Presidential address before the British Association for the Advancement of Science.<sup>13</sup> It postulates a pendulum beating seconds in the air. By doubling it gives a definite series of steps.

**Table of Vibrations by Prof. Crookes.—**

Starting Point	The Seconds Pendulum. Vibrations per second.
1	2
2	4
3	8
Sound	
4	16
5	32
6	64
7	128
8	256
9	512
10	1,024
15	32,768
Unknown (Unclassified)	
Electricity	
20	1,047,576
25	33,554,432
30	1,073,741,824
35	34,359,738,368

Unknown (Unclassified)		
40	1,099,511,627,776	
45	35,184,372,088,832	
Heat		
Light		
Chemical Rays		
46	Heat {	70,368,744,177,644
47		140,737,468,355,328
48 Light		281,474,936,710,656
49		562,949,953,421,312
50 Ch. Rs.		1,125,899,906,842,624
Unclassified		
51	2,251,799,813,685,248	
57	144,115,188,075,855,872	
X Rays		
58	288,230,376,151,711,744	
59	576,460,752,303,423,488	
60	1,152,921,504,606,846,976	
61	2,305,843,009,213,693,952	
Unclassified		
62	4,611,686,618,427,387,904	
63	9,223,372,036,854,775,808	

**Crookes' Explanation.**—Quoting from Prof. Crookes:—"At the fifth step from unity, at 32 vibrations per second, we reach the region where atmospheric vibration reveals itself to us as sound. Here we have the lowest musical note. In the next ten steps the vibrations per second rise from 32 to 32,768, and here, to the average human ear, the region of sound ends. But certain more highly endowed animals probably hear sounds too acute for our organs, that is, sounds which vibrate at a higher rate.

We next enter a region in which the vibrations rise rapidly, and the vibrating medium is no longer the gross atmosphere, but a highly attenuated medium, a "diviner air," called the "ether." From the 16th to the 35th step the vibrations rise from 32,768 to 34,359,738,368 per second, such vibrations appearing to our means of observation as electrical rays.

We next reach a region extending from the 35th to the 45th step, including from 34,359,738,368 to 35,184,372,088,832 vibrations per second. This region may be considered as unknown, because we are yet ignorant as to what are the functions of vibrations of the rates just mentioned. But that they have some function is fair to suppose.

**Light Vibration.**—Now we approach the region of light, the step extending from the 45th to between the 50th and the 51st, and the vibrations extending from 35,184,372,088,832 per second

(heat rays) to 1,875,000,000,000,000 per second, the highest recorded rays of the spectrum. The actual sensation of light and therefore the vibrations which transmit visible signs, being comprised between the narrow limits of about 450,000,000,000,000 (red light and 750,000,000,000,000 (violet light), less than one step.

Leaving the region of visible light, we arrive at what is for our existing senses and our means of research another unknown region, the functions of which we are beginning to suspect. It is not unlikely that the X Rays of Prof. Rontgen will be found to lie between the 58th and the 61st step, having vibrations extending from 288,230,376,151,711,744 to 2,305,843,009,213,693,952 per second or even higher.

In this series it will be seen that there are great gaps or unknown regions concerning which we must own our entire ignorance as to the part they play in the economy of creation. Further, whether any vibrations exist having a greater number per second than those classes mentioned we do not presume to decide.\*

**Where Academic and Occult Science part.**—This is just the point at which academic and occult science part company at present, for the trained clairvoyant or clairaudient cognizes both visualizations and sounds which lie far beyond the range of ordinary sense perception, and which must therefore vibrate at a rate far beyond those tabulated.

**The Solar Spectrum.**—And while the solar spectrum (see frontispiece) correlates with the range of light vibrations, correlates with the auric status of every human being, or animal, for

---

\*We are indebted to Mr. Prescott Hall for the following amplifications of the Table of Vibrations given by Prof. Crookes. Some differences and additions will be noted, which, however, will not materially affect the general idea.

**Octaves.**—

Sound covers

4-15 (not 5-15)

4 is lowest audible note.

Further 4-15 covers some electricity:

13 battery circuit vibrations 8192 (Feddersen).

14 (16.384)—oscillations in Leyden jar with electric alternator and turbine (Ewing).

15-20 marked "unknown" by Crookes' but

18 (262.144) Leyden battery circuit (Feddersen).

35-45 marked "unknown" by Crookes' but

35-40 according to Dr. F. F. Strong, nerve currents in the human body.

46-50 according to Crookes are heat and light but

44=Heat rays from substances below 100°C lowest observed (Langley).

51 unknown according to Crookes, but

51=ultraviolet photographic limit in vacuo  $3 \times 10^{15}$  (Schumann).

50 called chemical rays by Crookes, but

50=photo limit of solar spectrum  $1.053 \times 10^{15}$  per second in the Corona.



that matter, and bears a very definite relation to the geological periods of the Earth and its cosmology, nevertheless to the clairvoyant there is a great range both below the deepest red and above the highest violet, perceptible on spiritual planes, but indescribable in ordinary scientific formulas.

**Degrees of Heat regulate Life Manifestations.**—To return to the matter of heat. The different degrees or gradations thereof cause and define the conditions requisite for the origin and development of all the varied manifestations of life activity. Many of the degrees of heat that formerly existed have passed from the Earth, or rather the Earth has passed through them forever. From time to time, species fitted only to the hotter degrees have become extinct as those degrees no longer exist as a climatic condition. The isothermal lines are continually drawing from the poles to the equator, marking the passing of old types and the formation of new ones. "Earth's wrinkled crust reveals to us the beginnings of life on the planet and our own age gives the plain indications of its ending" or close of incarnations in their present form and aspect. "The Laurentian rocks stood godfather to the first born and today the death-line encircling the poles drawn where life first began studded with white pinnacled monuments, guards from intrusion the cemetery of departed ages."<sup>14</sup>

**Crystallization.**—We have often emphasized the fact that Matter is crystallized Spirit. This bears directly on the truths given in the foregoing paragraphs, for crystallization always begins at the poles, whether experimentally by electrical process or planetarily. Science postulates that all Nature is obedient to law established by some sort of "Great First Cause," but goes no further. Apparently, laws once established, cosmos goes on indefinitely, following a well-defined general course, allowing and permitting a wide latitude or range of variations. Rosicrucian teaching allows no such element of chance. It agrees that all Nature follows an orderly course in obedience to well established cosmic laws, but insists that those laws are followed in accord with *intelligent direction*.

**Intelligent Direction.**—This intelligent direction in our solar system is given by Him whom we have designated as the Great Architect of our Solar System through his Creative Hierarchs who have to do with the progress of human evolution. Like stage managers and directors, they develop and further the progress of our planet in accordance with the requirements of its human evolutionary waves. From time to time the stage of Earth is

cleared in one locale to make way for a new wave of human evolution, affording the incoming wave all that is necessary for new experience. It is apparent that without topographical or planetary change of any sort, it would not require a stretch of the imagination to postulate a state of finality to all possible human experience.

**Continental Sub-Region.**—The plans for such planetary or continental changes as may be required from one epoch or period to another, are first carefully worked out in archetypal form in the concrete and abstract divisions of the Thought World or Region. The lowest sub-region of the Concrete Thought Division is therefore called the "Continental Region." Here the models for the continents and other topographical conditions of earth are carefully worked out much as a mechanician would make a working model for a machine. All alterations or modifications in the earth's crust find their first formulation here.

**Oceanic and Aerial Sub-Regions.**—The second sub-region of this division is called the "Oceanic Region," for as it is one of constant pulsation all the four Ethers of the Etheric Region of the Physical World Region take their properties and natures therefrom. The third sub-region is the "Aerial," and here are formulated the archetypes of passion, emotion and desire. The fourth sub-region, however, is most important, for it is the home of the Archetypal Forces, through which all the archetypal forms of the three sub-regions just mentioned are brought into tangible manifestation in the physical world. It is from this region that the Creative Hierarchies definitely formulate matter in accordance with the requirements of the human evolution immediately under their charge.

**Vulcanism not due to unrest of Regent but to break up crystallization.**—It has been taught elsewhere that Earth's surface undergoes many modifications and is visited with apparently destructive volcanic eruptions as an evidence of the unrest of the Earth Regent at the crystallizing effects of materialism in Earth's humanity. It is true that the Creative Hierarchs and the Regent do utilize volcanic activity, or vulcanism as it is called, for the purpose of effecting modifications of the Earth's crust, for Rosicrucianism teaches, not that such results are brought about on account of human materialism (for escape from such conditions must be through human evolution in obedience to the laws of Karma), but in order to prevent too great crystallization of the Earth's surface, which would ultimately impair its efficiency as an

instrument or opportunity for the proper advancement, progress and evolution of its human life waves.

**Thickness of Earth's Crust.**—The Earth's crust is approximately from 700 to 800 miles in thickness, and should it crystallize too quickly in its entirety it would establish a condition of finality that would prevent further human progress, as its natural resources would be exhausted in some places and unobtainable in others.<sup>15</sup>

A glance at the history of vulcanism will show that volcanic activity has been from the poles toward the equator in accord with the previous paragraphs. It has always been either a step in advance or contemporary with human evolution and its manifestations exhibit a certain conformity with the law of rythm.

**Volcanoes coincident with prolific life.**—The presence of volcanoes is also coincident with a marked exuberance of prolific life manifestation, while many of those regions wherein volcanic activity is dead or dormant show little signs of either civilization or advanced human life in any degree. There are many sections of all continents wherein volcanic activity is not manifest, but which show evidences of volcanic activity at an early stage of Earth's history, and a study of geological science, and vulcanics especially, will show that there is an ever present possibility of a recrudescence of such activity. What we distinctly refer to is the absence of volcanic activity at the polar regions and above and below the temperate zones north and south respectively, with the exception of the Patagonian region.

In other words, the activity of the Earth Regent works through vulcanism to prevent too great crystallization of crustal conditions in any general locale while it is still required for the purposes of human evolution. Large areas of the United States and North America while showing no present evidences of vulcanism are nevertheless situated in geographical positions where faults, caverns, natural springs, geysers, mud pots, fumaroles, etc., show evidences of underground activity and former vulcanism which in ages to come may again become active. The point is that the conditions which vulcanism, under the guidance of the Regent, is intended to create are present, but that vulcanism is not utilized to work havoc among humanity.

**Clear the way for Human Progress.**—Such activities manifest only when it is necessary to clear away crystallizing conditions that prevent further human progress, and even those activities, when carried on where there is at present little or no human life,

are all under intelligent direction in creating the requisite conditions for future racial evolution in time to come.

**Liberating lower Life Kingdoms.**—Ever since the incarnation of the Earth Regent all the forces of Nature have been operating to liberate the Life Spirit or Wave in the Lower Kingdoms, and this has been helped in vast measure by vulcanism, the activity of the Great Flame of our planet.

**Form, not Life, was created.**—We must remember that life has always existed, but not in the manifestation we understand. Life was not "created." It was FORM that was really created. Therefore, regardless of the apparent destructive activity of vulcanism, no life is destroyed, but only forms, while the life that is apparently destroyed is really liberated to newer environments and opportunities that a crystallized environment could not offer. The same is equally true with the vast number of human forms destroyed in warfare and battle, all of which must needs be while humanity exists in its present evolutionary wave, but the very wars we deplore, more as exhibits of human greed and passion, are in reality instruments to clear the way for progress, and no life is really destroyed.

**Volcanic activity assisted by Group Spirits; Hybrids cannot propagate.**—All volcanic activity is in consonance with sharply defined law and in its manifestation even the Group Spirits co-operate with the Regent in bringing about the necessary changes topographically to give greater extent to the development of their charges. Wide latitude is given all forms of life for development, but in every instance that development must be true to law or a barrier is placed to prevent its devolution. Such an instance is witnessed in the law of hybrids. Two animals of reasonably similar genus or species may mate and produce offspring which will be hybrid. Here Nature and the Group Spirit steps in and forbids further devolution, for two hybrids cannot propagate their anomalous species.

In the cooling process of our planet, the crystallizing process becomes more and more accelerated, and it is to prevent this that vulcanism is utilized by the Regent and his Ministering Spirits. Let us see how it is brought about.

**Spiritual, the REAL; Physical, the Picture.**—Physical objective manifestation is the result of the focus of spiritual projection through the sheath or matter of mind stuff, which focus is in the 4th sub-region of the Thought World. Hence it is, to reverse the Hermetic axiom, that all that is below, is like unto that which is

above, only the higher or spiritual is the REAL and the lower or physical manifestation the picture illusion, shadow or unreal.

And therefore, as modifications are planned and visualized in the Thought World by those Hierarchs who are authorized and developed so to do, the image becomes apparent in the changes wrought on the Earth's surface, through the agency of the great internal forces of the Earth under the Earth Regent, directed through the Hierarchies before the Regent's incarnation, and by the Regent personally since his Incarnation and Advent into the planetary sphere.

**Why the Regent Incarnated.**—The question may arise—"why was it necessary for the Regent to incarnate IN the Earth?" For the same reason given in Genesis explaining why Man was placed in the Garden of Eden. In Genesis ii,-8, we read, "And the Lord God planted a Garden eastward in Eden"—and again in the 15th verse we read—"And the Lord God took the man and put him into the Garden of Eden to dress it and keep it."

**Government from within.**—In other words, prior to the development of man, the Garden or Earth was under the care of the Great Architect from without. After Man's advent it was given him to govern the Garden from within. Similarly with the Regent. Prior to his incarnation the planet was governed by the Creative Hierarchs and the Solar God from without; after his complete initiation into earth evolution, the Highest Initiate was incarnated within the Planet or Earth Garden to govern and keep it from within, and the same process is reflected in the homo when he was first governed by Race Spirits from without until the Ego had fully INdrawn, when Man is now governed by his inner Self or Ego, from within, whereby the Ego utilizes and becomes an integral part of all man's powers of functioning.

**Planes interpenetrate.**—Then there is another point to remember. The so-called Planes or Regions are not superimposed one upon another. They interpenetrate. So our planet is interpenetrated by three worlds or regions—Physical, Astral and Thought; and these not only interpenetrate but extend partially outside. So the abstraction formulated in the Abstract Region of the Thought World, concreted in the Concrete Region of the Thought World and worked out first on the Astral plane, ultimately becomes apparent in the tangible manifestations to humanity in the Physical World.

**Regent Directs all modifications.**—Since his incarnation the Regent directs the formulation of all necessary physical modifica-

tions through the Continental, Oceanic and Aerial sub-regions of the Thought Region, the formulation of the necessary archetypes in the 4th sub-region and their working out FROM WITHIN until they reach manifestation for the needs of evolving humanity.

**Position of the Regent.**—The very position of the Earth Regent in his incarnation shows the necessity for this “working out.” Prior to the incarnation within the planet the tendency had been toward crystallization inwardly toward the center. The incarnation checked this tendency and directs the internal forces outward. First the nucleus and outward development and expansion, then the polar development, and the tendency to contract, next crystallizing from the cooling crust inwardly, finally the outworking of the internal planetary and spiritual forces.

**Man’s similar states.**—The same is shown by the development of Man. As an embryo, from the nucleus of the ovum, practically spherical in shape, with head locked inwardly between the feet. After birth the upright posture. Ultimately when man too shall have approximated development and spiritual ascent similar to that of the Earth Regent, he will again assume a circular or semi-spherical shape, with head and feet touching, but in reverse, that is, bent backward until the entire front of his body forms the outside of the figure. This unites the polarities of the body and directs the force outward in every direction as is necessary.

**A Spiritual, not physical Vehicle.**—This is represented by the diagram (see page 59), but it must be remembered that actually the Regent and every human being who is ultimately destined to become similarly exalted, is not then confined to a physical body, which is here used for purposes of representation only. The body then used is of course a purely spiritual body which in the case of an exalted Being pervades all the space chosen as its sphere of action.

## QUESTIONS ON INSTRUCTION No. 8

1. How many incarnations is our Earth known to have had?
2. How are these incarnations known?
3. When is Man’s evolution said to have begun?
4. When is Earth’s evolution said to have begun?
5. What is the ultimate destiny of each planet?
6. When does its disintegration commence?
7. What do the moons of a planet signify?
8. Will any of Earth’s Humanity incarnate on other planets?

9. Did races as we understand them exist in the Saturn, Sun and Moon Periods?
10. In what order were the planets thrown off from the Sun?
11. How can one planet help another?
12. Who were the Lords of Venus and Mercury?
13. When did Races on Earth begin?
14. When did Man walk and talk with the Gods?
15. How did the idea of "Ruling by Divine Right" originate?
16. To whom did the Lords of Venus and Mercury come?
17. Why are the Mars and Mercury halves of the Earth Period so-called?
18. What were the Lemurian races like?
19. What time divisions are noted since Atlantis? Name them.
20. How do these time divisions reflect in each other?
21. How many Root Races and how many Sub-races?
22. How are they classified according to Periods or Epochs?
23. Are these races sharply defined?
24. Are any of them still with us besides our own?
25. Did the Lemurians know either birth or death?
26. Describe the states of mind among the Post Atlantean races.
27. What will be the conditions of races in the Jupiterian, Venusian and Vulcanian Periods?
28. What is meant by chosen races?
29. Did life begin in Lemuria?
30. How many motions are ascribed to the Earth?
31. What is known by the "Great Reversal"?
32. What is Vulcanism?
33. Explain the Great Reversal.
34. What formed as the result of the condition previous to the Reversal?
35. What caused the Reversal?
36. Was the Reversal permanent? Will it occur again?
37. How was the 3rd motion inaugurated, and what maintains it?
38. Why was the North Pole first to develop life?
39. What is nutation?
40. Give reasons why life must have begun at the North Pole. What is an isothermal belt? What does it show us?
41. What is meant by the "Precession of the Equinoxes"?
42. How may migration southwards be demonstrated?
43. What is taught by the air currents? Animal life, and the Ocean currents?
44. How do air and ocean currents press?

45. How do types and species originate?
46. What do we know of the migration of man?
47. Is man descended from the anthropoids?
48. Did races or species begin on Lemuria?
49. How many "lost continents" are mentioned by the Rosicrucian teachings?
50. What is the importance of the part played by heat in our cosmological study?
51. What are heat degrees said to be?
52. Can you give some idea of the Tabulation by Prof. Crookes?
53. How does Prof. Crookes explain this table?
54. Where do Rosicrucian and Academic science part company temporarily?
55. How does the solar spectrum correlate with the truths of this and previous Instructions?
56. How are life manifestations regulated?
57. How are the cosmological processes carried out? Are they left to chance?
58. From whom does the "intelligent direction" come?
59. What are the principal operations conducted through the Continental, Oceanic and Aerial Regions?
60. To what is Vulcanism due?
61. What is the estimated thickness of the Earth's crust?
62. With what are volcanoes coincident?
63. What functions do volcanic activities fulfill?
64. What has been in process of liberation since the Incarnation?
65. What was in reality created?
66. By whom are volcanic activities assisted?
67. What animals are unable to propagate, and why?
68. Which is the Real, the Spiritual or the Physical?
69. Why did the Earth Regent incarnate?
70. What is the importance of government from within?
71. How are the Planes said to interpenetrate?
72. By whom are all planetary modifications directed?
73. What is said to be the comparative position of the Earth Regent?
74. How do man's positions correlate?
75. Do we understand the ultimate position or posture to be that of the physical body?



## INSTRUCTION IX.

### TERRESTRIAL AND SUB-TERRESTRIAL

(Continued)

#### THE PHYSICAL ACTION OF VULCANISM DEFINED. NOTABLE PLANETARY CONSIDERATIONS.

---

**Popular idea of Earth's shape.**—The popular concept of the shape of the Earth is that of a sphere flattened at the Poles. This concept is not altogether correct, for in reality the Earth more nearly approaches a "pear shape," a statement confirmed by the most advanced astronomers and physicists. This shape we will explain.

**Water and Land distribution.**—The Earth IS flattened at the poles, the equatorial diameter (7,296 miles) being  $26 \frac{2}{3}$  miles greater than the polar.  $\frac{8}{11}$  of the Earth's surface, or 144,000,000 square miles (note the significant number), is depressed and occupied by salt oceans. The area of continents and islands is about 52,745,000 square miles. The mean depth of oceanic depressions is about 14,000 feet, and the greatest mean height of land is about 2,252 feet. The greatest ocean depth is 30,930 feet (south of the Friendly Islands), and the greatest land height is 29,000 feet (Mount Everest, in the Himalayas).<sup>1</sup>

**An illustration.**—An excellent illustration of the comparative dimensional features of the Earth may be shown by a globe 12 feet in diameter. On this globe the highest mountains would be represented by an elevation of  $\frac{1}{10}$  of an inch, and the mean depth of the ocean by a depression of  $\frac{1}{19}$  of an inch.<sup>2</sup>

**Temperatures in Archaean Time.**—The temperature at the time the Earth's crust was formed would have approximated  $2,500^{\circ}$  F. The atmosphere then contained all the water of the globe, all the carbon, hydrocarbon and other materials which have since formed solid compounds. At the condensation of the ocean its temperature must have approximated  $500^{\circ}$  F. Then the atmospheric pressure was 30 times greater than at present. Long ages elapsed before the Earth became sufficiently cool to permit

the existence of the earliest and lowest life forms.<sup>3</sup> This was known geologically as the Archaean Time.

**Center of the Earth, Solid.**—Contrary to popular opinion, it is quite certain that the central part of the Earth is now solid, as the enormous pressure in this central part would raise the melting point far beyond any conceivable temperature. At the period of the first aggregation of the material elements of the globe the central part was already solid from pressure. The possibility of great extrusions or upheavals, like the formation of mountain chains, is due to the liquid stratum between the solid nucleus and the solid crust and to layers of plastic rock at a probable depth of about twenty-five miles.<sup>4</sup>

**Plastic Stratum; Isostasy.**—This fact of the solidly substantial center and the plastic or liquid stratum permits the Earth to adjust itself to gravitational pressure through molecular flow, and the Planet owes its shape to the principle of gravitational equilibrium. The particular condition of equilibrium to which gravitation has assigned or compelled the Earth is called by Dutton ISO-STASY.<sup>5</sup>

NOTE. The surface of the ocean, as we know, is approximately spheroidal in shape. The vertical at any point is determined by the resultant of two forces, centrifugal force arising from the Earth's rotation, and gravity arising from the joint attraction of the Earth and sea. And the surface of the sea is determined by the condition that this resultant shall act perpendicularly to the surface at every point.

**Sequence of events in a rotating mass.**—The sequence of events in a rotating mass which shrinks while remaining homogeneous is well established. When the mass is of low density so that its rotation is slow, its shape differs from a sphere only in being flattened slightly, or orange shaped; it is an oblate spheroid of small eccentricity."

**The "Pear Shaped" figure.**—As shrinkage proceeds and the speed of rotation increases, the flattening increases in amount until an ellipsoidal figure is reached. Carried still further, the ellipsoid "forms the celebrated pear-shaped figure of equilibrium, of which the existence was first demonstrated by Poincare, and which has been the subject of elaborate mathematical research by Poincare, Darwin, Liapounoff and others."<sup>6</sup>

**Explains the Earth's Shape.**—This exactly explains the process through which the Earth has passed and the approximate shape it now retains. It must not be regarded as the ordinary

pear shape, but as differing slightly from the idea of the orange shape.

**How Rosicrucians regard Cosmogonic Processes.**—Rosicrucians regard all the cosmogonic processes or the Earth's formative periods as the activities of the Solar God in preparing those conditions which would be later utilized by the Indwelling Planetary Spirit or Regent as the agencies through which that Regent could direct and govern the development of the planet and its various life waves and Kingdoms, after the Incarnation, from within.

Geological science describes minutely all the conditions that operated to bring about the status of the Earth as it has been and as we know it to be.

**Aether, a Fifth Element.**—Rosicrucians, however, see in every minutely described detail an evidence of the operation of the Elemental Forces under Intelligent Direction of the Creative Hierarchs, working through the Nature Spirits and the Four Elements, plus still other Elements which will be revealed to mankind at a later Period of Earth Evolution. At the present time occult and academic science agree in adding Aether as a Fifth Element. Not the Ether of popular science, nor yet Akasha, but the greater concept of an Aether that is the source of both these.

**The Elements as understood by Occultists; SEVEN Elements.**—The true occultist looks much deeper into the source of the Four Elements than science. The FIRE of occultism is not the material flame; it is the pure Akasha, "the First Matter of the Magnum Opus, the Astral Light. AIR was simple Nitrogen. WATER, the primordial fluid, and EARTH, Man. FIRE was also Light. Rosicrucians know of the existence of SEVEN distinct Elements, the Four Physical Elements just named, the Fifth, Aether," which will become visible in the Air towards the end of our Fourth Round, to reign supreme over the others during the whole of the Fifth Round. The remaining two Elements are as yet beyond ordinary human comprehensive description.<sup>7</sup>

**Function of Air.**—The chief function of the Element Air is that of transportation in regard to terrestrial modifications. Transportation of Heat, Seeds, Moisture and some living organisms.

**Functions of Water.**—The functions of Water, another of the Elements, are of great interest and importance. It, too, is an important factor in temperature. In these parts of the Earth its temperature ranges from 55° to 30°, the cold depths being from 45° and below; and the tropical currents ranging from 45° to 55°.

**A carrier of solid matter.**—As a carrier, transporter or distributor of solid matter, we may take the great central southward flowing system of the North American region as an example. Each year the Mississippi River pours into the Atlantic Ocean 19,500,000,000,000 cubic feet of water. In South America the Amazon contributes five times as much on account of the greater precipitation in the territory through which it flows.<sup>8</sup>

**The Mississippi River.**—Annually the Mississippi contributes to the Gulf of Mexico over 812,500,000,000 pounds of silt, equal to a mass one square mile in area and 241 feet deep. The total annual discharge of the Ganges is estimated at 6,368,000,000 cubic feet.<sup>9</sup>

**A carrier of Heat.**—As a transporter of heat, the water of the warm Gulf Stream contributes to the North Atlantic 77,479,650,000,000,000,000 foot pounds of energy in the form of heat PER DAY.<sup>10</sup> This may be easily seen as a preventive of an untoward recurrence of the Glacial conditions aside from the conditions imposed by the Earth's axial revolutions. If an opening could be made through Behring Strait for the tropical currents of the Pacific, the entire Arctic climate would be radically altered.

**Temperatures of Earth's Crust.**—In connection with the matter of temperatures, it is interesting to note that in deep borings it has been found that the temperature of the Earth's crust increases, at the rate of about one degree F. to every 55 or 60 feet of descent. Such a rate, in the latitude of New York, would give sufficient heat to boil water at a depth of less than two miles; and at a depth of 35 miles the temperature would be 3,000 F., or that of the fusing point of iron.<sup>11</sup>

It is not our purpose to make this a book of physical science, but the facts given are all of importance to the student in correlating the interaction of the Elements and the Elemental Forces with the operations by which the actual physical modifications of the planet are accomplished.

Especially is this true in regard to Air, Water and Earth (Land), for on the interaction of these great Elements depends the activity of Vulcanism, the most powerful of all forces at the command of the Regent; the most sudden, effective and productive of greatest results in the least possible time (cosmically interpreted).

**How Earth's Heat is derived.**—The factor of heat enters into the interactions of the above noted Elements in every possible degree. The Earth's heat is derived from three sources:

- 1st. Bombardment of the Solar Energy.
- 2nd. The Earth's own Heated Interior.
- 3rd. From Chemical and Mechanical Action.

**Vulcanism; why so named; from Vulcan, Chief of the Cyclops.**—It is with the last we have principally to do in considering the origin and persistence of vulcanism, which name, incidentally, is given to volcanic activity because from the cosmic and occult standpoint it is one of the greatest factors still operative as visible, cosmic process in preparing Earth for the sublime conditions that will prevail on this planet during the far away Vulcan Period to come. Vulcan was the chief and Polyphemus the sub-chief of the Cyclops of Greek fable. The Cyclops were workers in Iron and earthy material and their forges were often called "volcanoes" by writers of mythology. Hence it became a grand idea to imagine that the weapons and instruments of the warrior Gods were fashioned by some superior power that used a Volcano for its forge.<sup>12</sup>

**Transformation of Motion into Heat.**—"In the upturning and flexure of rocks attending mountain-making, there have been movements on a grand scale; and, through the transformation of this motion into heat, the rocks have received in some cases a high temperature, sufficient to promote, through the moisture present, the consolidation of rocks, and even their crystallization and metamorphism; and also, in the view of Mallet, the fusion on a scale grand enough to originate Volcanoes."<sup>13</sup> "Heat is produced by condensation, except when vapors become liquid or solid, or as when liquids (as water) become solid. It is also produced by chemical action." Its effects are therefore:

1. Expansion and Contraction.
2. Eruptions of Igneous Rock and associated phenomena.
3. Metamorphism.
4. Formation of Veins.

These are the principal factors and fundamental essentials in the metamorphosis of the planet, as it passes from one phase of development to another. They are the processes and the results observed in volcanic activity.

**Volcanoes defined and explained.**—Volcanoes are elevations built up or broken down by their own action as the case may be, having a pit or cavity at the top called the crater. In some volcanoes this pit is thousands of feet deep, in others shallow and in extinct volcanoes often wanting, owing to its having been left filled when the activity ceased and the lava cooled.

**The Crater.**—From the crater issues liquid rock, which, after becoming cold, is called lava. From an active crater are seen at practically all times emissions of steam, gases, vapors, smoke, aqueous vapors, and sulphur gases. The materials produced by an eruption are lavas, cinders, ashes, tufas, vapors and gases, scoria and punice.

**Highest Volcanoes.**—The highest volcanoes on this globe are Aconcagua in Chile, 23,000 feet, and Sorata and Illimani in Bolivia, each over 24,000 feet. The former seems to be still active. Mts. Shasta, Hood, St. Helen's and other peaks in California and the west are isolated cones 11,000 to 14,400 feet high. To show the gigantic size of some craters, we may mention Kilauea in Hawaii. This crater is 3 miles in greatest length, nearly two miles wide,  $7\frac{1}{2}$  miles in circuit and has been 1,000 feet deep after some of its eruptions.

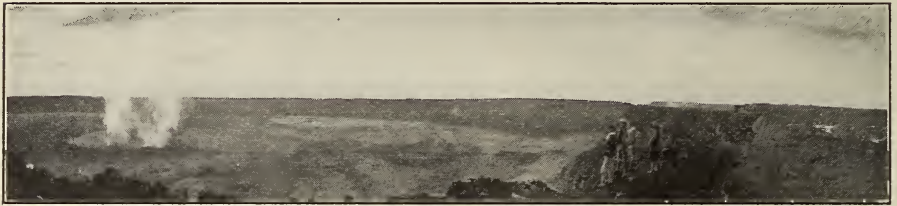


FIG. 32  
ON THE EDGE OF THE SUMMIT OF MT. KNAWEOWEO, WHICH  
FORMS THE CENTRAL CRATER OF MAUNA LOA, HAWAII.

—(Photo copyright by A. Gartley, Honolulu.)

**Eruptions; Wind as a carrier.**—In eruption, volcanoes throw up fiery streams composed of red-hot fragments, which as they cool, fall as cinders or ashes. When an eruption is accompanied by a rainstorm the resultant steam precipitates the reddish or yellowish mass called tufa. Wind as a carrier shows its power in the fact that in 1835 volcanic dust was carried from Guatemala to Jamaica, 800 miles.

In a dust shower near Lyons, 720,000 pounds of dust fell. Dust from Africa has fallen on ships 1,000 miles away.<sup>14</sup>

**A simple overflow.**—Sometimes an eruption consists simply in the overflow of lava caused by the rising of the crater floor. In a simple escapement of this kind 15,400,000,000 cubic feet flowed down into the sea, causing vast clouds of steam.

**Earthquakes; Seismatics.**—Eruptions are often heralded and still more often accompanied by earthquakes, but it is not an ap-

parent law. While Vesuvius is one of the most notable volcanic examples, its vigor is exceeded by Krakatoa, whose cinders and ashes were carried up to a height of 150,000 feet in 1883, and according to Verbeck are said to have been carried by the wind around the world, causing red sunset glows in many lands.<sup>15</sup> When earthquakes accompany volcanic activity they "are due to fractures of rocks in subterranean regions, consequent on undermining by the solvent action of water, extrusion of lava, or explosions attending the major volcanic action."<sup>16</sup>

**Pacific Slope.**—The Pacific Slope of the Rocky Mountains is notable for its lava beds, many of them around volcanoes or volcanic vents and resulting from fissure eruptions. Fissure outflows made the Palisades along the Hudson and the Mts. Tom and Holyoke in New England.<sup>17</sup> The boundaries of the volcanic region of the western coast of America, Wyoming, southern Idaho, Oregon, Northern California and Washington embrace over 150,000 square miles. The lava from Mount Shasta and Lassen Peak at an early age completely obliterated the ancient valleys and forced the waterways to cut new channels.<sup>18</sup>

**Table of notable Seismatic and Volcanic Activities.**—The following table of notable volcanic and seismatic activities accurately attested in history will be of interest in showing the wide area of distribution of volcanic activity and also show the fallacy of the idea that vulcanism is a punishment to humanity in spite of the number of persons killed, as the total is small when compared with world statistics, and included peoples who, in many instances were little advanced in human evolution.

Place	No. killed	Year
Constantinople .....	10,000	577
Catania .....	15,000	1137
Syria .....	20,000	1158
Cilicia .....	60,000	1268
Naples .....	40,000	1456
Lisbon .....	30,000	1531
Naples .....	70,000	1626
Vesuvius .....	18,000	1631
Calabria .....	10,000	1638
Schamaki .....	80,000	1667
Sicily .....	100,000	1693
Yeddo .....	190,000	1703
Algiers .....	18,000	1716
Peking .....	95,000	1731

Place	No. killed	Year
Lima and Callao .....	18,000	1746
Cairo .....	40,000	1754
Kashue (Persia) .....	40,000	1755
Lisbon .....	50,000	1755
Syria .....	20,000	1759
Central America .....	40,000	1797
Aleppo .....	20,000	1822
Calabria .....	10,000	1857
San Jose de Cucuta (Columbia) .....	14,000	1875
Island of Hondo (Japan) .....	10,000	1891
Kloet (Java) .....	150	1901
Martinique and St. Vincent .....	40,000	1902
Krakatoa (Straits of Sunda) .....	36,380	1883
Messina and 54 towns .....	164,850	1908
Central Italy .....	12,000	1914

The list culminates with the most recent eruption of note, that of the Volcano Kalut, or Keloet in eastern Java, southward of the District of Soerabaja. There are fifty volcanic peaks in the range. The last notable eruption of Keloet (Kloet) was exactly eighteen years prior to the one in question, on May 20th, 1919. This last eruption was the cause of death to over 16,000 and the destruction of thirty-one villages.<sup>19</sup> Some estimates give the dead as 50,000, but this is not verified to date.

**Vesuvius.**—The eruptions of Vesuvius have perhaps been the most carefully recorded of all the notable volcanic activities. The eruption that destroyed Pompeii and Herculaneum occurred A. D. 79. Subsequent eruptions have occurred in A. D. 203, 472, 512, 652, 982, 1036, 1158, 1500, 1631, 1737, 1794, 1822, 1855, 1872, 1885, 1891, 1906.<sup>20</sup> Prior to the eruption of 1036 there were six eruptions. Since that time there have been twelve, of which the last five were within a period of 51 years. These figures have been offered by some occult writers as evidence of the accelerated growth of materialism for which one of the great churches of Christendom and latterly academic science are held by such writers to be guilty.

**Vulcanism not confined to the Christian Era.**—Now the fact is that there is no particular need of singling out the Christian Era in especial, for volcanic eruptions have by no means been confined to the period since the Christian Era. On the contrary, the greatest volcanic activity this Earth has ever experienced was through the long ages prior to A. D. What is more, volcanic ac-





FIG. 33. VESUVIUS. Upper picture, the Crater. Middle, a Terrific Explosion of Rock Masses from a Temporary Cone which, like a Mushroom, sprang up in a single Night out of the Great Central Crater. (Photo by Prof. Frank Alford Perret, Eruption of 1905.) Lower, Vast Crinkled Seas of Lava after an Eruption.

tivity has in many instances been most intense in locations where little or no human life was present.

**Less Volcanic Activity since A. D. than before.**—In the whole past 5,000 years there has been infinitely less volcanic activity anywhere on the Earth than in the times of the Atlanteans and prior thereto, when the Earth's crust was much less solid than now. A glance at a geographical globe will also reveal that within a wide range of the parallel of latitude in which Vesuvius is situated, a preponderance of the volcanic activity since the beginning of the Christian Era has occurred. And this activity noticeably increases in the latitudes nearer the Equator, notably in the Indian and Pacific archipelagos.

**No visitations of Providence; Earth Regent utilizes Volcanic Activity.**—Rosicrucians do not teach that Humanity is tormented by "visitations of Providence," wreakings of the vengeance of a wrathful God against His own creatures and the Emanations of Himself. A study of the past and prehistoric activities of vulcanism will show that the appearance and development of volcanoes has been predominantly from the polar region down toward the Equator in both hemispheres. The Earth Regent DOES utilize volcanic activity to break up the materializing tendencies OF THE EARTH ITSELF, and were it not for these activities the encrustation of the Earth would have reached a point which would render useless to man, animal and plant a large portion of its otherwise habitable areas. For it is a notable fact that within reasonable proximity, geographically speaking, wonderful fertility in both vegetable and animal kingdoms exists, while those more northern, general areas of extinct vulcanism are fast succumbing to the ever approaching cold.

#### **Igneous Eruptions in Western North America.—**

NOTE: "A great period of igneous eruptions in western North America commenced at the close of the Cretaceous (Laramide revolution), culminated in the Miocene, and may be said to have continued with undiminished intensity to the present time, some of the volcanic cones being not yet extinct. The Tertiary eruptions were in large part fissure eruptions, though great volcanic cones were also formed. The area in the northwestern United States covered by sheets of eruptive rock is only surpassed by that of the somewhat earlier (Cretaceous) outflows in the Deccan."<sup>21</sup>

**First use of the name "Volcano."**—The first use of the name "Volcano" seems to have been in connection with Aetna, and some of those in the Lipari Islands, which were regarded by the ancients as the seats of Hephaestus, "a Greek divinity identified

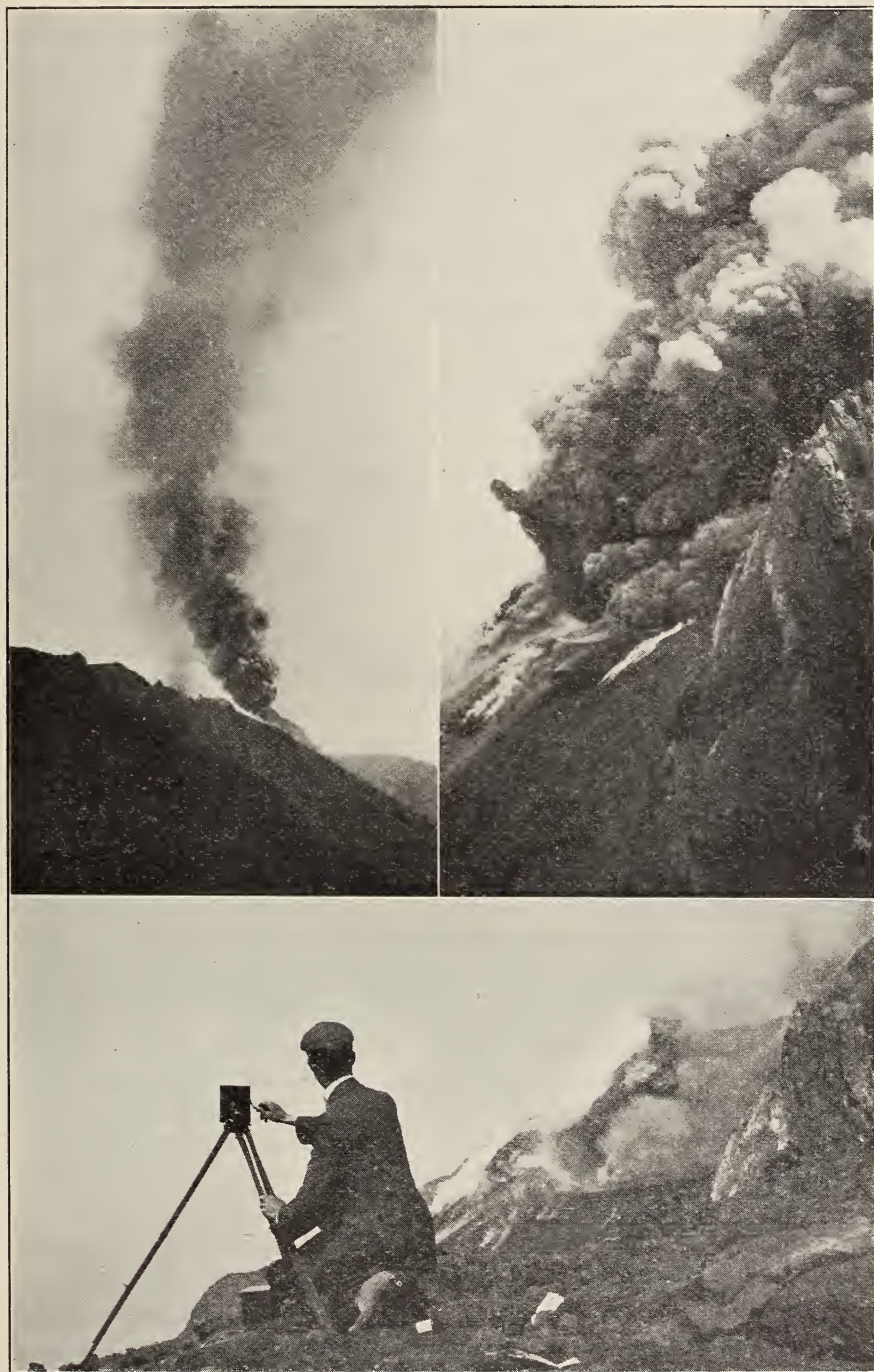


FIG. 34. VOLCANIC ACTIVITY. Upper Left, Stromboli in Action as seen from the N.E. Upper Right, Stromboli in Full Eruption, Near View. Lower, Prof. F. A. Perret in a Daring Position on Stromboli Awaiting an Opportunity to Cinematograph an Explosion. —(Upper pictures by Prof. Perret.)

with Vulcan, the God of Fire of Roman mythology." At the present time, scientists agree in applying to all volcanic phenomena, the terms "vulcanism" and "vulcanicity."

**Periods of Activity and Inactivity.**—Some volcanoes remain moderately active for centuries, as for instance, Stromboli, in the Lipari Islands. Krakatoa had been inactive for nearly two centuries prior to the eruption of 1883. Bandaisan in Japan had been silent for TWO THOUSAND YEARS prior to the great eruption of 1888, yet the Japanese have been steadily advancing in culture and civilization at a greater rate of progress than many other nations in the same time period, and especially have they preserved their spiritual beliefs and esoteric religious concepts more than many other nations and races. The volcanoes of Central France are regarded as extinct, inasmuch as no authentic historical record of any eruption is known, BUT THERE ARE NOT WANTING SIGNS THAT IN SOME PARTS OF THIS VOLCANIC REGION THE SUBERRANEAN FORCES MAY YET BE SLUMBERING RATHER THAN DEAD.<sup>22</sup>

**Fire Forces and the Great War.**—The last lines were written long before the Great War. That France has since been the field of the most explosive, fiery warfare of history may not be attributed to vulcanism by the exotericist, but the occultist will observe a distinct connection and relation between the Fire Forces of Earth-men and the Fire Forces of vulcanism, and if ever in the world's history the guiding hand of an over-ruling power has been observable in the rearrangement of continental Europe, and the battlefields of France are the stage on which some of the greatest reconstructive events in world history have been operative.

**Volcanoes influenced by Solar and Lunar Attraction.**—In connection with the periods of activity and inactivity of a volcano still operative, it is interesting to note that the fluid content of the crater is influenced, like the tides, by the Solar and Lunar forces of attraction, and Mr. H. V. A. Parsell advises us that he is informed by Prof. Perret, the foremost authority on volcanic eruptions, that the latter are even predicted by the same laws that govern maximum tides.

**Where the Magma comes from.**—The magma or subterranean molten matter does not come from the center of the Earth as many suppose. This was the old view. "When physicists urged the necessity of assuming that the globe was practically solid, vulcanologists were constrained to modify their views. Following the suggestion of W. Hopkins of Cambridge, they supposed that the

magma, instead of existing in a general central cavity, was located in comparatively small subterranean lakes.

**The Liquid Zone.**—Some authorities again, like the Rev. O. Fisher, regarded the magma AS CONSTITUTING A LIQUID ZONE, INTERMEDIATE BETWEEN A SOLID CORE AND A SOLID SHELL.<sup>23</sup>

**Source of Volcanic Heat.**—Volcanic heat is derived from a combination of several sources.

1. From the oxidation of large deposits of the Mars Element, Iron. This source is very limited.
2. From the transformation of the mechanical work of compressing and crushing parts of the Earth as a consequence of secular contraction.

**Gas Compressed as a Solid.**—

3. From conditions originating in the very nature of the interior of the Earth. At great depths, molten rock, being above its critical point, can exist only in the gaseous condition, but—A GAS UNDER ENORMOUS PRESSURE IS IN A CONDITION, SO FAR AS COMPRESSIBILITY IS CONCERNED, EXACTLY THE SAME AS A RIGID SOLID.

**Proportions of Planetary Constituents.**—

NOTE.—“Professor Arrhenius concludes from the high density of the Earth as a whole, and from other considerations, that the central part of our planet consists of gaseous iron (about 80% of the Earth's diameter) followed by a zone of rock magma in a gaseous condition (about 15%), covered by a thin solid crust (less than 1% of diameter). If water from the crust penetrates by osmosis through the sea-floor to the molten interior, it acts, at the high temperature, as an acid, and decomposes the silicates of the magma. The liquid rock expanded and rendered more mobile by this water, rises in fissures, but in its ascent suffers cooling, so that the water then loses its power as an acid and is displaced by silicic acid, when the escaping steam gives rise to the explosive phenomena of the volcano. The mechanism of the volcano is therefore much like that of a geyser.”<sup>24</sup>

**Planetesimals.**—

4. From the compression of the growing globe by its own gravity after the accretion of vast numbers of small cosmical bodies called “planetesimals. The heat proceeding from the center outwards; caused local fusion of the rocks”<sup>25</sup> and the formation of reservoirs of molten magma.

**Radioactivity.**—

5. From radioactivity, the radium present in the igneous rocks being sufficient to maintain a large percentage of

the Earth's heat. Major C. E. Dutton believes that "the development of heat arising from radioactivity may gradually bring about the melting of the rocks so as to form large subterranean pools of magma, from which volcanoes may be supplied."<sup>26</sup>

**Recapitulation.**—Enough of physical data has been given in the foregoing paragraphs to show the points of agreement between Rosicrucian and academic science on the features which make up the essentials of vulcanism. To recapitulate, Rosicrucian and academic science agree that

**Points of Coincidence.**—

1. The Center of the Earth is in a state that may be described as "Solid."
2. That there is a Liquid Stratum between the comparatively solid center and the outer Crust.
3. That volcanic activity results from the interaction of the Four Elements, particularly Water and Earth.
4. That volcanic activity is an evidence of progressive conditions and prevents too rapid crystallization of the Earth's Crust.

**Rosicrucianism goes further.**—Here the agreement may be said to terminate, for Rosicrucian Science goes a step further and postulates and teaches these conditions as being under the intelligent, direct and personal guidance of the Earth Regent in the establishment of the requisite conditions for the advancement of evolutionary process.

**Earth correlates with the World-Regions.**—The accompanying diagram will show how "that which below is like to that which is above," in other words, how our planet correlates with and is really a crystallization from the world regions of the Seventh Cosmic Plane.

The large central portion occupying 80% of the entire area represents the "Solid" interior. Next the Liquid Stratum or Magma occupying about 15%. Finally the Mineral Stratum or crust in varying gradations, the actual *mineral* substance itself being estimated at less than 1%.

**Ten divisions.**—Now, starting from the top of the Polar Axis and reading downward, ten different divisions will be noted. These correspond to the Ten Initiations of the Rosicrucian System, and show how the Planetary strata correlate therewith.

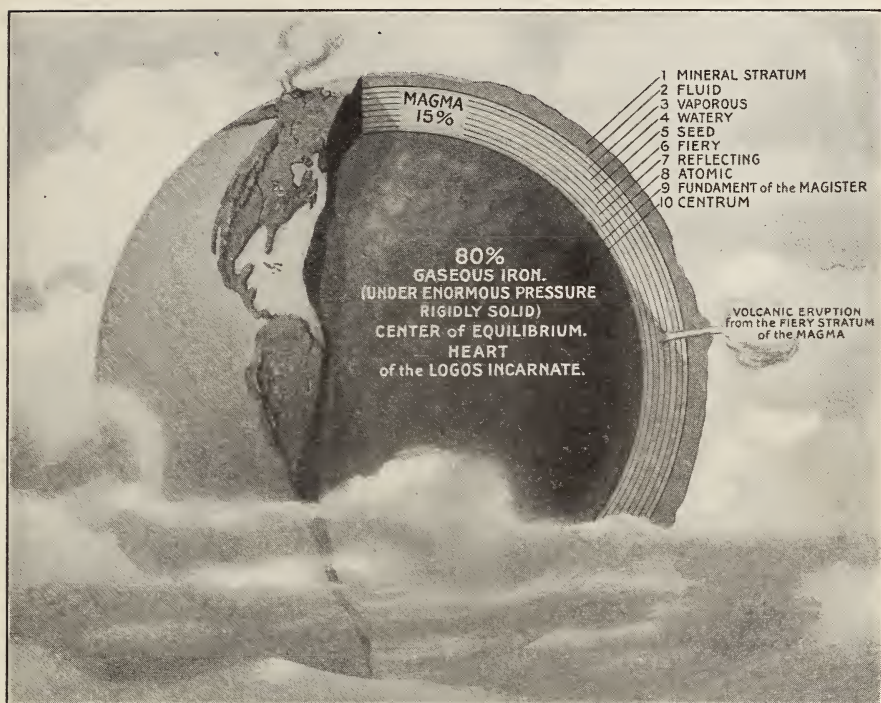


FIG. 35  
 DIAGRAMMATIC SECTIONAL VIEW OF THE EARTH, SHOWING  
 PROPORTIONATE THICKNESS OF STRATA AND  
 THEIR NAMES.

**First division.**—The Mineral Stratum, the properties of which form the subject of Geological and correlated sciences.

**Second division**—The Fluid Stratum.—This is not to be understood as Water, but as a plastic, fluid mass, which, under the pressure of the Earth's outer crust and immediately next to the Vaporous Stratum, is the embodiment of Forces of high explosive powers held in leash only by the dense outer crust.

**Third division.**—The Vaporous Stratum, which may be said to be the seat of the pulsating life forces of the planet.

**Fourth division**—The Water Stratum. Rosicrucians are taught that from Water "came forth all the visible forms of life upon the surface of the Earth and in the Deep." In this Water Stratum are the latent, embryonic potentialities for future manifestation. It is thus a storehouse of archetypal forces of the Mineral Kingdom, and the base from which operate the Group Spirits in their direction of the life forms entrusted to them, as they manifest upon the Earth.

**Fifth division.**—The Seed Stratum, in which are the seeds of origins of all “FORMS” that have existed or will in future exist upon the Earth. It is really a stratum of intensest life activity, for it has been emphasized that Life has always existed. Form only, was created, and it is from this Stratum that the primal forms were evolved and vivified with life energy.

**Sixth division.**—The Fiery Stratum, which is the seat of sensation of the Earth itself. This is the Stratum in which the Earth feels pleasure when its vegetation is gathered for the sustenance of humankind and relief at the breaking up of its mineral crystallization due to the activities of Man and Nature Forces, many of which have been indicated in this Instruction. Heindel very appropriately observes that “creation groaning and travailing, waiting for the day of liberation” mentioned by St. Paul, is the condition of the Great Spirit incarnated within the crystallized body of the planet, waiting until its labors shall have been completed, Humanity progressed to other Days of Manifestation and its own planetary liberation effected.<sup>27</sup>

**Seventh division.**—The Reflecting Stratum in which are reflected at all times the exact status of humanity upon the Earth. This is the seat of the so-called “Laws of Nature” comprehended as comparatively moral and immoral as Humanity advances in understanding. In this stratum the constituent structure grows more and more attenuated.

**Eighth division.**—The Atomic Stratum, the properties of which are to multiply and reproduce to a remarkable degree any thing that has definite form. This Stratum therefore is the base from which comes the multiplication of types, species and classes of all that we cognize in mundane manifestation.

**Ninth division.**—This Stratum is known as the “Fundament of the Magister,” the seat of the intelligent direction and thought force of the Master of the Earth-Temple, the Indwelling Spirit or Regent. The forces here operative correspond to the Cerebral, Cardiac and Sex Forces of Humanity.

**Tenth division.**—The Centrum. The Center of all that is upon and in the Earth, corresponding to the vital parts of the Earth Regent, the Holy of Holies; the Center of Equilibrium or Heart of the Logos Incarnate; the “Sacred Heart” or ROSE, epitome of our planetary evolutionary creative processes.

**Strata and World-Region correspondences.**—These different strata correspond to the World Regions as follows:



- 1st. Stratum to the Chemical Region of the Physical World.
- 2nd. Stratum to the Etheric Region of the Physical World.
- 3rd. Stratum to the Astral World Region.
- 4th. Stratum to the Concrete Division of the Thought World.
- 5th. Stratum to the Abstract Division of the Thought World.
- 6th. Stratum to the World of Life Spirit.
- 7th. Stratum to the World of Divine Spirit.
- 8th. Stratum to the World of Virgin Spirit.
- 9th. Stratum to the World of God.
- 10th. Stratum to the ABSOLUTE.

The Strata also correspond to the Degrees and Grades of Initiation as formulated and practiced in the Rosicrucian Order as follows:

**Rosicrucian Degrees and Earth Strata.—**

**1st Grade.**

- 1st. Stratum, to the Zelator Degree.
- 2nd. Stratum, to the Theoricus Degree.
- 3rd. Stratum, to the Practicus Degree.
- 4th. Stratum, to the Philosophus Degree.

**2nd. Grade.**

- 5th. Stratum, to the Adeptus Junior Degree.
- 6th. Stratum, to the Adeptus Senior Degree.
- 7th. Stratum, to the Adeptus Exemptus Degree.

**3rd. Grade.**

- 8th. Stratum, to the Magister Templi.
- 9th. Stratum, to the Pr.'.C.'.Adept.
- 10th. Stratum, to the Spiritual Initiation.

**Interpenetration of Auras.**—It has already been noted how the auras of planets interpenetrate. Likewise do the auras of the Planetary Regents contact each other to a large extent. Thus, in arranging the various planetary modifications the Regent of Earth, for instance, is able to avail himself of the co-operative powers of other planetary Regents as such assistance may be desirable. In this way, i. e., through these auric interpenetrations and contacts, Martian, Venusian, Jupiterian and Saturnine influences are brought to bear upon the Earth life as occasion may require.

**Seven Spirits before the Throne; All is Crystallized "Space."**  
—The Planetary Spirits of the Seven Planets of our Solar System are the "Seven Spirits before the Throne" of Scripture. Their principal activities are enlisted in the prevention of too great materialization or crystallization, as heretofore stated, of the planet itself entrusted to each individual Spirit. FORMS are the crystal-

lizations around the negative pole of spirit, and the action of the Regent or Planetary Spirit is to prevent this crystallization from reaching to an extent prohibitive of further evolutionary progress. The extent to which this crystallization has already proceeded may be comprehended when we look out upon sea or land and realize that *all* are in reality crystallizations of space, i. e., invisible primordial substance.

**Where the Ego functions.**—It also gives Man an opportunity to estimate his wondrous position in the scale of being, when as a spiritual scientist he understands that he himself, as an EGO, functions at all times in the substance of the Abstract regional planes of the World of Thought.

**Chaos still with us; Old Forms and New.**—Chaos is not altogether a condition of the remote past, by any manner of means. It is still about us, and to some extent within us, for the work and process of organization of the perfected vehicles in all the Kingdoms of the Life Stream is still active. The complete organization and perfection of our own Solar System is still incalculably remote. Old Forms that have served their purpose and are now relatively useless are being contributed to the exterior, primal Chaos, and from the Matter and Substance of Chaos new Forms are, under the direction of the Hierarchies, Lords and now evolving Humanities, being constantly built and rebuilt from this "OLD Matter."

**All things come "From the Center."**—But since the Incarnation, this process of building from Chaos, instead of being carried on from the outside, is directed and prosecuted under the guidance of the Earth Regent within. All creative process now comes "from the Center." The diagram shows this central guidance by the position of the symbolic or allegoric head of the Earth Regent being in the exact Center. (Page 59.)

**The price of too swift progress.**—Humanity, however, itself subject to the dangers of too rapid crystallization, has paid the price of its swift progress. As Adam and Eve in the Biblical allegory were promised wisdom and knowledge, and the power to become as Gods if they would only eat of the Forbidden Fruit, so Mankind since eating of the Forbidden Fruit of the sensuous plane of Creative Activity has become almost as the Gods. As St. Paul said, he is "a little lower than the Angels."

**Death, Disease and Pain.**—Humanity accepted and chose materialism instead of the purely spiritual status of life. It is like the

child who refuses parental guidance and insists on learning the lessons of life and its mysteries at an early age, before maturity, and then unintentionally learns the sorrows as well. Humanity has learned many of the mysteries which it should have grown to, not grasped, and now pays the penalty of Crystallization of its Spiritual Nature; Death, Disease and Pain.

**When Childbirth was Painless.**—In the blissful state of spiritual innocence, under the guidance of the Spiritual Powers who knew the proper planetary and solar times therefor, childbirth was painless and a sheer joy, wherein the human creators realized somewhat of the joy of the celestial Creator in the process of reproducing his "own image."<sup>28</sup>

**Ease; "Original Sin"; Disease.**—The explanation of these penalties is simple. EASE consists of complete alignment with the higher spiritual powers. This state was enjoyed by Humanity in its beginnings as such. But when Man "knew" his wife sensuously, when Man "knew" the outside or physical world fully as such, where previously he had known it only in the dream consciousness, he immediately began to follow his own impulses, which, in their then untrained and awakened state, led him astray. These erroneous impulses formed habits that became established traits of his species and doomed his descendents to similar sufferings and penalties. This was the "Original Sin." He gratified his lower passions and all possible desires in a manner contrary to the guidance of the higher spiritual powers, hence his descendants must seek through long processes of "spiritual development" to regain that which was their inherent right by spiritual birth. Ease was lost, and in its place Man seeks pleasure as a respite from DISease.<sup>29</sup>

**Death; Anabolism, Katabolism and Metabolism.**—Therefore, when Man begins to live he also begins to die, for being born into an earth-life of disease, that very condition is the initial stage of death. The penalty of Man's obedience was that he should for a time lose the consciousness that his earth or mortal life was but the continuation of his spirit life. Therefore his consciousness after mortal or earth birth pertained only to his existent mortal life and became subjected to the influences of the astral region of desire, in which forces destructive of the physical vehicles are operative through their constant stimulus to impulsive activity without affording reconstructive measures and influences. The result was and is that Man's body under such operative influences begins to decay. For a time the anabolism or constructive pro-

cesses within the protoplasm restrain the tendency to katabolism or breaking down, but the general metabolism or metamorphic changes of the living matter is steady and continuous, paving the way from constructive to the destructive tendencies.<sup>30</sup>

**Anthropoids and Aborigines now use Lemurian Forms.**—In those early days of Man-in-the-making the penalty for disobedience of the spiritual laws was even keener than now, for instead of being able to build bodies or vehicles fitted to assist those who should come after them, their work was so imperfect that the old Forms returned by this ancient species of Humanity, notably the Lemurians, are today those of the aboriginal humans and anthropoids, and while in the immense time periods that have intervened, the best that we of the white race today can do, is to bequeath our more plastic, sensitized Forms to the use of those Egos now incarnate as Indian, Negro, Ethiopian, Malay and Mongolian.<sup>31</sup>

**Man's body formerly composed of Fire, Air and Water.**—Man's evolution has been a continuous process of crystallization. Man-in-the-making had at the outset a physical vehicle principally composed of Fire, Air and Water, with little Earth Substance. With the crystallizing process the density increased, and man was literally "brought down" from his more ethereal state to the Earth's crust, over which he had previously "floated" in a more finely organized manner.

**Fire Forces in Earth and Man.**—Were it not for the Fire Forces of Mother Earth under the control or direction of the Earth Regent, the crystallizing process of our planet would soon render it no longer habitable or capable of sustaining life. Were it not for the Fire Forces in every Human being the crystallizing of each homo would in due time render the physical vehicle unfit as a Human Temple of the Ego. The same process of vulcanism that casts forth the ashes and products of combustion from the planet perform a similar though microcosmic office for Man. Vulcanism is therefore a manifestation of the Divine power of Preservation made operative by the Solar Creator through all his works.

**Motions of Earth brought about by Deliberate Intent.**—We have studied the various motions of the Earth. Just why they should occur as they do, while explicable by the wisdom of academic science, has a greater significance for the occultist. The motions which give to mankind the alternation of day and night are not mere accidents of gravitational or gyroscopic forces. They are the result of DELIBERATE INTENT on the part of the Creative Hierarchies. While brought about by the processes known

and understood by physical science, the PURPOSE in establishing these laws and processes was primarily for the development of Humanity which required just such alternation of Light and Darkness. This is ably explained by Steiner: "The motions of the celestial bodies are regulated by the beings who inhabit them. The earth's motion, of which day and night are the result, was induced by the mutual relations of the various spirits superior to man.

**Day and night alternations.**—"The moon's motion had been brought about in the same way, in order that, after the separation of the moon from the earth, the Lords of Form might, by means of the revolution of the former around the latter, work upon the HUMAN BODY IN THE RIGHT WAY, and with the right rythm. The Ego and the Astral Body of Man now worked within the physical and etheric bodies by day; at night that activity ceased, for the Ego and the Astral Body then left the physical and etheric bodies and came wholly within the sphere of the Sons of Life, or Angels, the Sons of Fire, or Archangels, the Sons of Personality and the Lords of Form. Besides the Lords of Form, the Lords of Motion, Wisdom and the Thrones also included the physical and etheric bodies in their sphere of influence at this time. The injurious effects produced on Man by the errors of his Astral Body during the day, could thus be counterbalanced."<sup>32</sup>

**Fewer "Young Souls"; Equality.**—As time periods pass, the number of "young Souls," or those just at the beginning of human incarnations grows constantly less, and the number of reincarnates increases. For a very long time Humanity was largely composed of these two classes. These two classes were the progenitors of the differentiations in human evolution as we know it today. Always there are amongst us those who are in varying stages of advanced development; those who are beginning their higher progress approximately at present and those who are still far behind in the scale of evolution. Equality as an ideal is a lofty aspiration. Equality in evolution is at this stage of progress an impossibility. The great preponderance of Humanity today is incarnate.<sup>33</sup>

**When "Time" first appears.**—Occultly, "Time" is said to have begun for Earth with the Saturn Period. Prior to this Period all constructive process as it relates to our Earth is said to be included in the "Sphere of Duration." Akashically, progression of incident may always be studied, but time as an actual

measurement of progression is first applied to Earth conditions as they appear in the Saturn Period.<sup>34\*</sup>

**First Awakening of "Love" in Man-in-the-Making.**—In the next, or Sun Period, Creative Love makes its first appearance. In this Period, Great Beings known as the Lords of Love (The Seraphim) united their vibrations with those of the Sun rays, acting in conjunction with the Sons of Personality on the human Etheric vehicles, thus aiding in their progression. This united work gave to the Etheric vehicles the power of "transforming the gaseous forms within them" and of "so elaborating them that the first indications of a propagation of living human beings appear." In some way, something is segregated and driven out (as though exuded) from the gaseous organisms that have been formed, and is moulded into shapes resembling their mother-forms.<sup>35</sup>

**Luciferians; Fear.**—When Man assumed rulership over his own knowledge, he made the Astral Body the starting point. This made the Ego to be in future largely dependent upon the Astral Body and exposed Man to the temptations of his lower nature. This lower nature was greatly influenced by the "irregularly evolved" Moon-spirits known as the Lucifers or Luciferian Spirits. These spirits endowed Man with Freedom and latitude of activity in his individual consciousness, and by this very endowment created the differentiation between good and so-called "evil."<sup>36</sup> With this freedom came less of original clairvoyance and the consequent uncertainty of the future, and this uncertainty was the primary initiation of Fear in the Humanity-in-the-making, for fear is "a direct result of error."<sup>37</sup>

**Permanency of Love and Fear.**—It is a long step from lost Lemuria to the present day, but the advent of these primal emotions of Love and Fear into the then developing Humanity and even in its more tenuous existence in the Panic Times, shows the permanence of the elements which were built into the progenitors of the human species, for today these two, Love and Fear, are the basic elements of human emotionalism. We seek to develop the first to its spiritual status of idealistic perfection; the second we hope to conquer, but the struggle is long and arduous and success comes only to those who are willing to live the life originally intended for all Humanity, which at present means a life of trial, suffering and often crucifixion.

\*The Rosicrucian concept that Space and Time are non-existent in the spiritual worlds or regions is sometimes difficult to grasp. The student will gain much help in this matter if he follows carefully the expositions of the Einstein Theory of Relativity, in which both Time and Space are clearly seen

to be but purely relative conditions or expressions. Cosmically, there is no point of departure from which Time could possibly be measured or which could act as an initial state of origin. The same holds true regarding Space. On the mundane plane we effectually and essentially have terms of relative measurement and the same holds true of our solar system and the universe. But beyond the universe or among the universes what limits are imposed that can cosmically designate what we relatively term "Space"? The illustrations offered in support of this position and the subject itself are too exhaustive to treat in detail in a work of the present proportions, but the Einstein Theory is fast becoming more generally understood and data thereon can be easily procured.

### QUESTIONS ON INSTRUCTION No. 9

1. What is the popular concept regarding the shape of the Earth?
2. What more nearly approximates its true shape?
3. What is the difference between the polar and equatorial diameters?
4. What is the proportion of the water distribution on the Earth's surface?
5. What is the approximate area of continents and islands?
6. What illustration can you give showing the comparative dimensional features of the Earth?
7. What temperatures prevailed on the Earth during Archaean Times?
8. What is the substance and consistency of the center of the Earth?
9. What do the substantial center and the plastic stratum permit the Earth to do?
10. What is the resultant state of equilibrium called?
11. What are the sequence of events in a rotating mass?
12. How is the "pear shaped" figure of the Earth produced?
13. How do Rosicrucians regard all cosmogonic processes?
14. What is the Fifth Element?
15. How are the Elements understood by occultists?
16. What is said of the Seven Elements?

17. What is the chief function of Air?
18. What is the principal function of Water?
19. What illustration is given of Water as a carrier of solid matter?
20. How much silt does the Mississippi River contribute to the Gulf of Mexico annually?
21. What is said of the temperatures of the Earth's crust?
22. How is the Earth's heat derived?
23. Why is vulcanism so named?
24. What are the effects of the transformation of Motion into Heat?
25. How are volcanoes defined?
26. What examples can you name of the highest volcanoes?
27. How do volcanoes act in eruptions?
28. What is said of wind as a carrier of volcanic dust and particles?
29. What relation do earthquakes bear to vulcanism?
30. For what is the Pacific Slope of North America notable?
31. What do some occult writers believe the eruptions of Vesuvius signify?
32. Is vulcanism confined to the so-called Christian Era?
33. Has there been more or less volcanic activity since A. D.
34. Is vulcanism or any other cataclysm regarded by Rosicrucians as a "visitation of Providence"?
35. Why does the Earth Regent utilize vulcanism?
36. When did igneous eruptions begin and apparently end in Western North America?
37. When was the name "Volcano" first used?
38. What comparison is given between the periods of activity and inactivity of volcanoes?



39. What relation exists between Earth's Fire Forces and the Great War?
40. What and where is Magma?
41. What does the Magma constitute?
42. Name the sources of volcanic heat.
43. How does compressed gas act?
44. What are the proportions of the planetary constituents?
45. What relation do the planetesimals bear to volcanic heat?
46. How does radioactivity enter into vulcanism?
47. What are the "Points of coincidence"?
48. Name the ten divisions of the Earth's diameter, their correspondences and correlations.
49. Define each division.
50. How do the strata and world regions correspond?
51. How do the strata correspond to the Rosicrucian Initiations?
52. To what extent do planetary auras interpenetrate?
53. What are the Seven Spirits before the Throne?
54. Where does the human Ego function?
55. What is the status of Chaos?
56. Whence come all things since the Incarnation?
57. How has Humanity paid the price of too swift progress?
58. What was the "Forbidden Fruit"?
59. When was childbirth painless?
60. What is Ease? What is Original Sin? What is Disease?  
What is Death?
61. Give your understanding of Anabolism, Katabolism and Metabolism?
62. What forms do the aborigines and anthropoids now use?
63. How was Man's physical body formerly composed?

64. How do the Earth and Human Fire Forces correspond?
65. How were the Earth motions brought about?
66. What is the necessity for the alternations of day and night?
67. Are there more or less "young souls" on the earth today?
68. What is equality said to be?
69. When did "Time" first appear as relative to the Earth evolution?
70. When is the first awakening of Love said to have occurred?
71. Who were the Luciferians?
72. What did they do for Man?
73. How did Fear originate?
74. What is said of the permanency of Love and Fear?
75. What is our attitude toward them?
76. How is it to be accomplished?
77. What may such a life entail?



## INSTRUCTION X.

### LEMURIA AND ATLANTIS. TRANSITIONAL FORMS.

KARMA, LAWS OF CONSEQUENCE AND COMPENSATION;  
GUARDIAN OF THE THRESHOLD.

---

In the preceding instructions we have dwelt somewhat at length upon earth conditions and the planetary activities of the Regent, especially prior to the Great Incarnation and during the Lemurian and previous epochs.

In order to establish the correct sequence we shall begin this instruction with a consideration of some similar conditions existent in the Atlantean Epoch.

**Many Occultists fail to correlate.**—Many occult scientists and writers have given what purport to be detailed descriptions of both Lemurian and Atlantean life, but have failed to correlate such descriptions with the known and established time data of geological science. For this reason, we have not attempted in these Instructions to recapitulate all that has been previously written by genuine occult scientists and investigators, but rather, to correlate the teachings of Rosicrucian and physical science.

**Appearance of Atlantis.**—In Instruction No. 2 it is stated that Lemuria was destroyed about 10,417,000 years ago by volcanic action. The gradual entrance of Atlantis upon the scene of earth-evolution was accompanied by notable seismic upheavals and disturbances. In fact the whole life of Atlantis (which continent was finally destroyed by four volcanic and seismic cataclysms) was notable for the prevalence and extent of earthquakes on a scale far greater than any known to ancient or modern historians.

**Causes of Earthquakes.**—These were due to the more plastic condition of the Earth's outer crust, the percolation and seeping of water into the fluid, fiery stratum immediately below and the consequent explosions internally resulting therefrom, establishing veins and pockets of steam reservoirs. Earthquakes, generally speaking, arise from subterraneous rock fractures, due to the sol-

vent action of water which results in their undermining, extrusion of lava from volcanic activity and the unequal contraction of the Earth's crust.<sup>1</sup>

**What Prof. Dana said.**—It is a notable testimony to the invisible causes of visible effects sought by occultism, when the eminent geologist, Prof. James D. Dana, LL.D., wrote—"But none of the causes that have been considered (by academic science) explain the great changes of level involving large parts of continents or of oceanic areas, or the phenomena attending the making and uplifting of mountain ranges, or the earthquakes that HAVE SHAKEN A HEMISPHERE."<sup>2</sup>



FIG. 36  
RIVER MARKS, SHOWING SUBSIDENCE OF WATERS IN THE  
ST. LAWRENCE BASIN, NEAR BEAUPRE, P. Q.

(Photo by Parsell.)

**Nothing is left to "work itself out."**—Here Rosicrucian science teaches that as nothing happens by chance and that natural forces and powers once set in operation by primal causes are not left to "work themselves out" in a haphazard way, so in order to ascertain the real reason for such cataclysms the occult student must first seek the REASON WHY SUCH CONDITIONS AS RESULT THEREFROM ARE NECESSARY, and whether such resultant conditions could have been brought about in any other way.

The “necessity” for changes in the Earth’s crust becomes apparent when we realize that the requisite conditions and opportunities for life, growth, development and improvement must be provided for the rapidly evolving life waves on the planet, and that unless such conditions were being constantly provided to meet the effects produced by changing climates, atmospheric and meteorological states, hardening, crystallizing and intensifying of the Earth’s crust and the chemical transmutations being wrought in Mineral, Vegetable and Animal Kingdoms, there would long since have been established a barrier of finality to Man’s evolution on this planet.

**Character of the means employed.**—The “means” for effecting such changes as were necessary must be planetary in their nature and scope, for Man himself would have been absolutely incapable of effecting them, nor would he have had the wisdom to realize their necessity. Here the evidence of a “superior wisdom” is clearly shown, and that wisdom existing, and being of a solar and even cosmic nature and scope, it was and is obliged to utilize cosmic, solar and planetary processes to effect the manifestation of its plans. These were the “plans laid down on the Trestle Board of the Great Architect,” and now carried out by his immediate Workmen and Builders, the Regents to whom the building of our own and many other Earths has been entrusted.

**Additional proof of movement from the North Pole.**—Among the topographic changes wrought in the Earth’s crust and surface we have, in the “Drift” or deposits of transported material spread

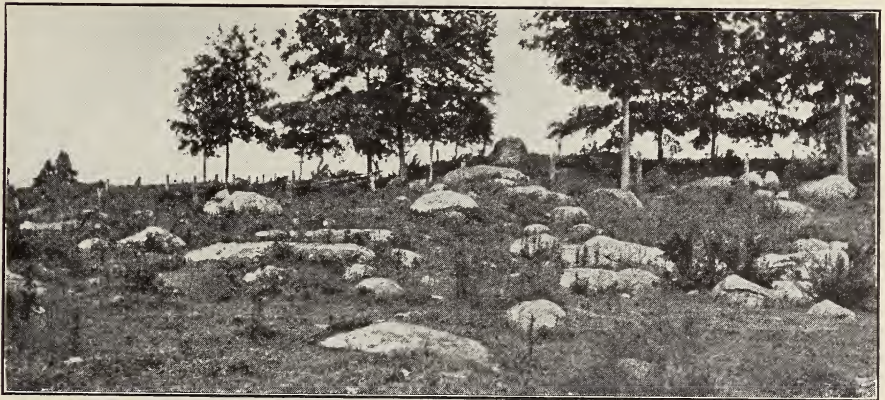


FIG. 37  
A TYPICAL NEW ENGLAND BOULDER FIELD. PHOTO TAKEN  
NEAR STONINGTON, CONN.  
*(Photo by Parsell.)*

over the continent by the Glacial carriers, another proof of the gradual movement from the North Pole to the Equator of many evidences of the first gradual cooling and crustal changes previously described.



FIG. 38  
THE GREAT BOULDER AT MADISON, N. H.  
*(Photo by Parsell.)*

**New Hampshire Boulders.**—Some of the most notable of the stones so transported are called “boulders.” One of these, in Not-



FIG. 39  
SUMMIT OF MOUNT WASHINGTON, N. H. SEEN FROM  
THE TRAIL FROM GLEN.  
*—(Photo by Shorey, Gorham, N. H.)*

tingham, New Hampshire, is 62, 40 and 40 feet in its several diameters, and its weight is estimated at about 6,000 tons. Another, in Madison, New Hampshire, has an estimated weight of 7,650 tons.<sup>3</sup> The fact that boulders are found at the summit of Mount Washington, a place especially esteemed by Rosicrucians in America, is proof that the altitude of the upper surface of the glaciers in that region was between 6,000 and 6,500 feet, and



FIG. 40  
 "SPLIT ROCK" BOULDER. GLACIAL. NEAR  
 MATTAPOISETT, MASS. *(Photos by Parsell.)*



FIG. 41  
 VIEW OF "SPLIT ROCK" SHOWING SIZE OF OPENING  
 COMPARED WITH A MAN.

therefore the ice must have been at least 5,000 feet thick over that part of what is now known as New England.<sup>4</sup>

**Man-in-the-Making; Fear of Reptiles.**—We have already made mention, and repeat it here, that when speaking of Man and Races in the Lemurian and previous epochs it must be remembered that we do not speak of Man as we know him to be since the beginning of recorded history, but rather of “Man-in-the-making.” It is important to keep this fact in mind, for man today is a complex being, preserving within his “Cosmic Memory” the experience he underwent in the long ages before he became a true homo. This is particularly shown in the instinctive dread, fear and hatred of serpents and reptiles by over 90% of humanity. This fear is an atavism, brought down from an early part of the Atlantean Epoch.

This fear of reptiles is attributed by scientists, and we believe rightly, to the assaults and encroachments by the reptiles on the more highly evolving species, which developed among all the higher species an instinctive defence against the reptile types and resistance to their assaults. This became more pronounced and highly developed among the anthropoids and was thus communicated to the evolving human species.

**Atlantis, Home of Gigantic Reptiles.**—It was the Atlantean Epoch that gave to evolving life forms the gigantic reptilia, and it is this same inherited cosmic memory and knowledge of them that gives to those scientists who devote special study to this department of palaeontological science, the ability to reconstruct, sometimes from a single tooth, the exact similitude of the original form.

**Alberta and the Saskatchewan.**—These gigantic lizards and reptiles roamed largely over the uninhabited areas of Atlantis, and while we may not hope to recover more than vestigial remains of the exact species indigenous to the more southern parts of the continent, we are able to gain a clear concept of them from the remains found in Canadian North America. Here, in the region adjacent to Alberta, the miniature canyon of the Saskatchewan reveals four distinct geological periods, and in these layers are preserved the fossil remains of animals and plants existent about 3,000,000 years ago. These reptiles were both flesh and herb eaters, but all shared certain characteristics in common and were known as the Dinosaurs. Some of the species are listed herewith:



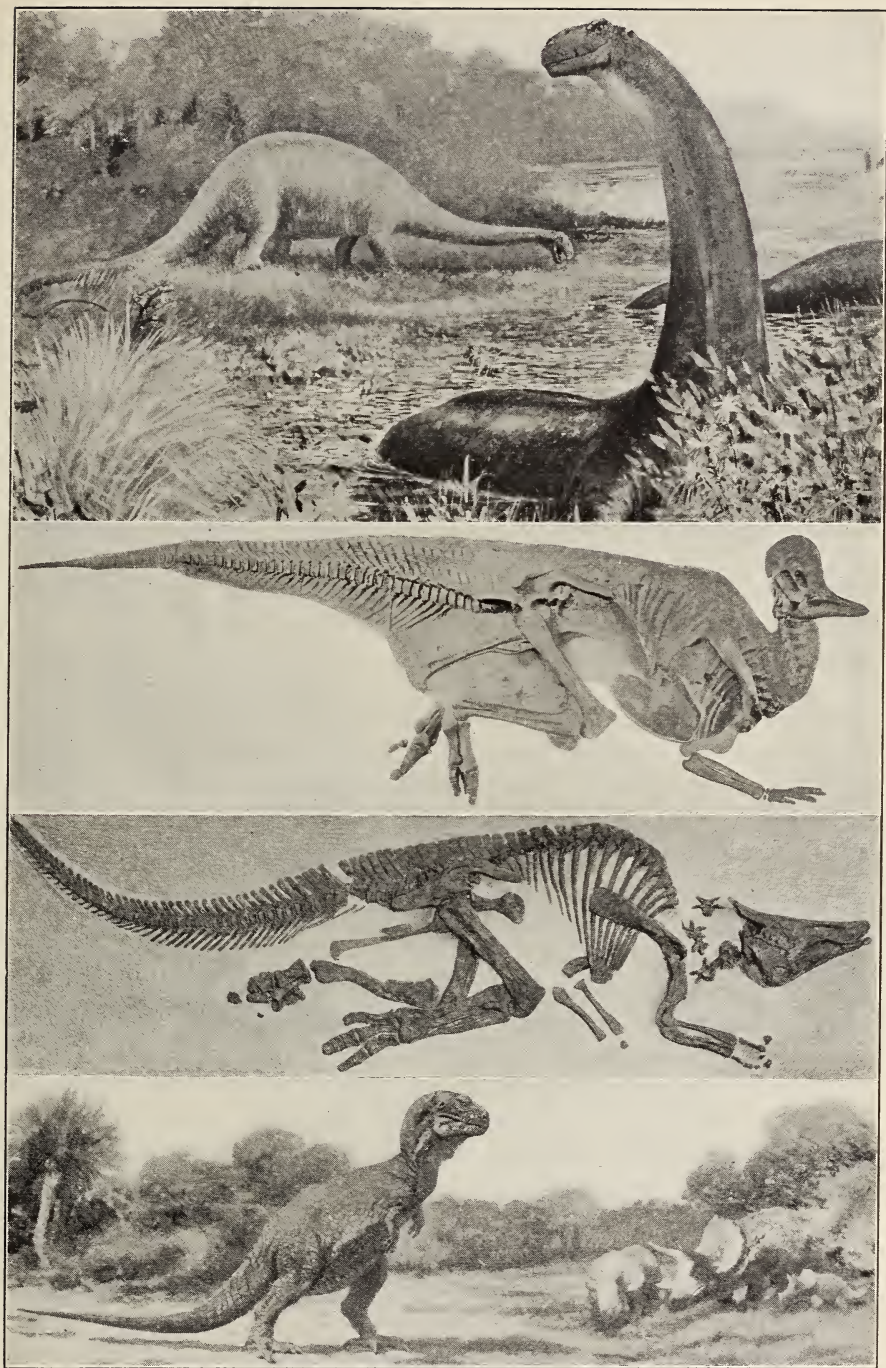


FIG. 42 TYPES OF THE DINOSAURS.—No. 1, Upper, Brontosaurus; 2, Corythosaurus Casaurius, skeleton slab mount, right side; 3, Saurolophus; 4, lower, Tyrannosaurus and Triceratops. (Courtesy, American Museum of Natural History, N. Y.)

**Species of the Dinosaurs.—**

1. The Trachodon, 30 ft. long by 15 ft. high. Herb-eater, Duck-billed.
2. The Ornithomimus, 12 ft. long. Food Crustaceans.
3. Monoclonius, skull 6 ft. long. Horned ancestor of the
4. Triceratops, 25 ft. long.
5. Ankylosaurus, stocky, short-legged, heavy-bodied. Armored.
6. Albertosaurus, 30 ft. long by 15 ft. high. Flesh-eater.
7. Saurolophus.
8. Corythosaurus, Crested Dinosaur.
9. Hypacrosaurus, Long-spined Dinosaur.<sup>5</sup>
10. The ocean correspondence was the Ichthyosaurus.
11. The Brontosaurus.
12. Tyrannosaurus, etc., etc.

**Canadian climate like that of Florida today.**—The region in which these fossil remains are found was once the bed of a vast inland sea, when North America was vastly different in conformation from what it is now. Likewise, the region now known as Southern Canada then had a climate much like that which Florida in the Everglade region has today.

To the Rosicrucian a study of Humanity as a whole will reveal in the units of the species the natures, traits and many characteristics peculiar to all the types and species of the lower Kingdoms of Life, and the atavistic persistence of many tendencies in the homo, inherited not alone from his racial ancestors but from the multiform types of Mineral-Man, Vegetable-Man and Animal-Man, is excellent proof of his continuous existence throughout a remote Past and a prediction of his continuous existence throughout an infinite Future.

In the prehistoric reptilia of ancient Atlantis, the types distinguished between flesh and herb-eaters, the armored species, pugnacious, warlike, and those of a gentleness comparable to that of the modern dog, will be found on careful study to furnish us with excellent illustrations of the earliest manifestations of those characteristics which were to be later observed in the earliest expressions of the true homo, and perpetuated, with modifications, throughout all races, tribes and groups.

**Patriarchs lived in the consciousness of their descendants.**—We read in the Older Scriptures of the great ages to which the Patriarchs attained. Many well intentioned folk accept such ages literally as given. As a matter of fact, the Patriarchs did not

live much longer than, even if as long, as do the present races who live in a state close to Nature. Their great ages consisted in the fact that after so-called physical death, they lived in the consciousness of their tribal descendants, and thus living, the descendants were always conscious of the continued existence of their ancestors. This is an illustration of the practical operation of the Cosmic Memory. (Gen. v.) It was not impossible that Enoch begat Methuselah at the age of sixty-five years, but it is far from the known processes of protoplasm to conceive that Methuselah begat Lamech at the age of one hundred and eighty-seven years,



FIG. 43  
ORNITHOLESTES SEIZING AN ARCHAEOPTERYX.  
(Courtesy, American Museum of Natural History, N. Y.)

or that he lived to the age of nine hundred and sixty-nine years. Such a long life IN THE CONSCIOUSNESS OF HIS DESCENDANTS was not only possible but probable, and this very possibility made also possible the correct perpetuation of religious and esoteric traditions throughout many centuries, before writing was introduced.

**Ego not fully indrawn in early Atlantis.**—In the early part of the Atlantean Epoch the Ego had not yet fully indrawn and assumed full control over its vehicles, and the blood, being the

particular vehicle of the Ego, but with the latter not fully functioning therein as yet, was utilized by the Racial and Family Group Spirits of the early homos to perpetuate the consciousness of the species as it differentiated from that of the three preceding Kingdoms. Memory, it will be observed, is a prerogative only of the Human Kingdom.

**Sight, the Gift of the Atlantean Epoch.**—As the greatest aid to consciousness on the external plane, sight was the gift to Man of the Atlantean Epoch. Prior to this epoch and during his Lemurian existence he had no eyes as those organs are now known. He had instead two sense centers which were highly sensitive to the extreme light conditions of his time, and just as throughout all Nature organisms develop special organs in response to exterior



FIG. 44  
TRICERATOPS.

(Courtesy, American Museum of Natural History, N. Y.)

environment, under the very Law of Adaptation to Environment, so the eyes as well defined organs were developed during the Atlantean Epoch.

**How Man first “knew” his Wife.**—Lemurian Man first “knew” his wife or opposite sex polarity through the personal contact of the sex function, but his consciousness was of an interior spiritual nature. Atlantean Man was the first to know the physical world as an objective reality through the development of sight and the stream of consciousness that translated sight sense perception.

**Lemurians had no Memory.**—Lemurian Man had no memory, for his consciousness being as stated, of an interior nature, was as yet in the transitional state between the dream consciousness

of the animal and the full waking consciousness that reached its fullest extent during the Atlantean Epoch. Sight and Memory therefore are the two great developments in Man during this Epoch.

**Extent and Orders of the Reptilian Era.**—While the gigantic reptiles previously mentioned are the product of the Atlantean Epoch, their prototypes originated in the latter part of the Lemurian. The entire Reptilian Era was of about 12,000,000 years



FIG. 45

TRACHODON, (*Rearing*) COMPARED WITH THE HUMAN FIGURE.  
(*Courtesy, American Museum of Natural History, N. Y.*)

duration, and numbered eighteen great Orders. Of these Orders, only five exist today, the

- Turtles (Testudinata)
- Tuateras (Rhynchocephalia).
- Lizards (Lacertilia).
- Snakes (Ophidia).
- Crocodiles (Crocodilia).

**Only five survive.**—Prof. Osborn says: “The evolution of these five surviving orders has either been extremely slow, or entirely arrested during the 3,000,000 years which are generally assigned to Tertiary time; we can distinguish only by relatively minor changes the turtles and crocodiles of the base of the Tertiary from those living today.

Early Life Forms now degenerating; *that Kingdom ended.*—“In other words, during this period of 3,000,000 years THE ENTIRE PLANT WORLD, THE INVERTEBRATE WORLD, THE FISH, THE AMPHIBIAN AND THE REPTILIAN WORLDS HAVE ALL REMAINED AS RELATIVELY BALANCED, STATIC, UNCHANGED OR PERSISTENT TYPES, WHILE THE MAMMALS (types that suckle their young; having breasts), RADIATING 3,000,000 YEARS AGO FROM VERY SMALL, INCONSPICUOUS FORMS, HAVE UNDERGONE A PHENOMENAL EVOLUTION, spreading into every geographic region formerly occupied by the reptilia and passing through multitudinously varied phases not only of direct, but of alternating and reversed evolution.”<sup>6</sup>

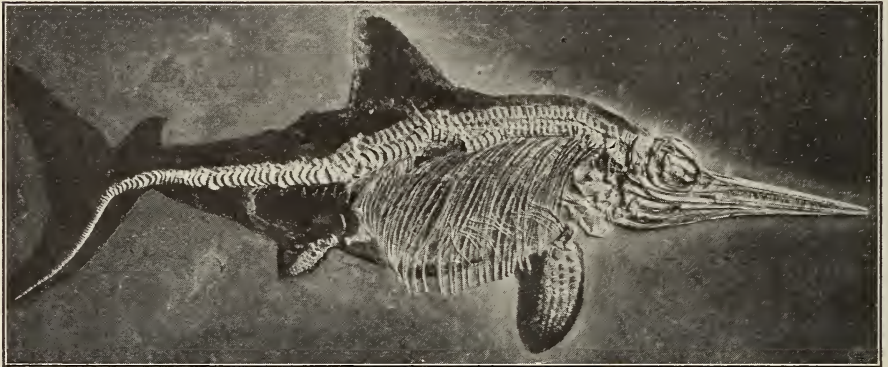


FIG. 46  
 ICHTHYOSAUR'S QUADRICISSUS. SKELETON SHOWING COMPLETE OUTLINES OF BODY, PADDLES AND FINS. FROM THE JURASSIC SLATES OF HOLZMADEN IN WURTEMBERG, GERMANY.

(Courtesy, American Museum of Natural History, N. Y.)

**Progress of the Mammalia; Laggards and Stragglers.**—Here Rosicrucian and physical science again unite, for the Rosicrucian knows that evolution is a continuous process, and that any life form must go forward or begin its disintegration as a form or kingdom. Thus the reptilia are to the Rosicrucian an interesting study of an organic life wave, which, having reached its epitome, is now slowly, through the leisurely processes of Nature, in its disintegration. On the other hand, the Rosicrucian sees in the progress of the mammalia the true evolutionary process, slowly incarnating the life wave of the disintegrating kingdom or species and carrying it on to higher forms and planes. And we also witness the phenomena of alternating and reversed evolutions, for the

former is easily discernible in the lower types, while of the latter we have an instance in the anthropoids, the present members of which are degenerate types, they as well as some human aborigines evolving (apparently and temporarily) downward. We say

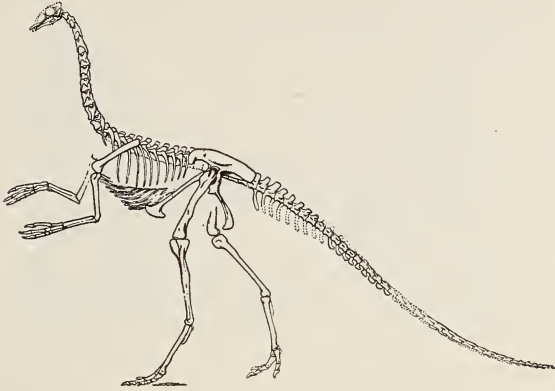


FIG. 47

ORNITHOMIMUS. THE "LIGHT LIMBED, BIRD-LIKE, TOOTH-LESS, "OSTRICH" DINOSAUR, STRUTHIOMIMUS AFTER OSBORN.

(Courtesy, American Museum of Natural History, N. Y.)

temporarily, for the Rosicrucian sees in these degenerates the laggards in human evolution and knows that future human evolutionary waves will take up and carry onward these "stragglers."

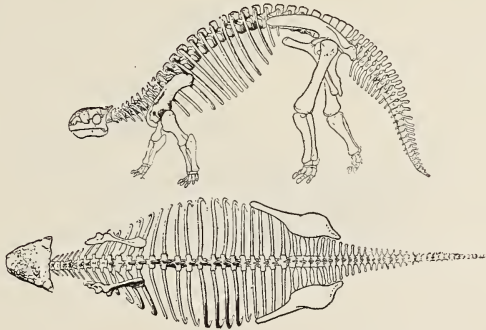


FIG. 48

ANKYLOSAURUS MAGNIVENTRES. DORSAL AND SIDE SKELETON.

(Courtesy, American Museum of Natural History, N. Y.)

**Origin of the Birds (Aves).**—It is a far cry from the Gigantosauros (Brachiosauros), sometimes over 100 feet in length, with huge shoulder and forearm, the quadripedal type like the Brontosauros and the Diplodocus, with its long, slender neck and tail,

swift moving; the carnivorous Tyrannosaurus and the Stegosaurus, to man of today, but every species has contributed through its development in the higher phases of the Animal Kingdom to give to Man his ability to fight, seek and procure food, maintain



FIG. 49  
DECKERT'S RESTORATION OF THE MONOCLONIUS.  
(Courtesy, American Museum of Natural History, N. Y.)

his right to it and to conquer even the Elements, for it must be remembered that from the lizard-like reptilia came the birds. And from the birds Man received his inspiration to conquer the



FIG. 50  
DECKERT'S RESTORATION OF THE CORYTHOSAURUS.  
(Courtesy, American Museum of Natural History, N. Y.)

air, in which he has been successful, and in the same progressional manner as the remote originators of the birds (Aves).

**“Offensive and Defensive Energy Complexes.”**—In the study of the reptilia, we find the natural provisions for offense developed. Opposed to the Tyrannosaurus was the Ceratopsia, or



horned herbivorous dinosaur (related to the Stegosaurus and the Iguanodontia). Similarly to the Tiger and Lion are opposed the horned animals. In the Human Kingdom to those who fight with the crude weapons of brute force are opposed those who fight subtly and successfully with the powers of mind and intellect. It is a matter of "Offensive and Defensive Energy Complexes." (Osborn).

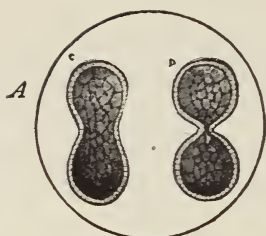
**Antiquity of the Aves.**—Incidentally we may observe in passing that the birds originated in the late Permian or early Triassic times from a small "lizard-like reptile of partly bipedal habit and remotely related to the bipedal ancestors of the dinosaurs" and entered into a terrestrio-aboreal mode of life, probably for purposes of safety.<sup>7</sup> These ancient birds are known as the Archaeopteryx and had claws at the ends of the bones of the wings to enable them to hang from trees. The first form was the four winged, in which the hind legs evolved wings. As the power of flight evolved, the two hind leg wings degenerated, the forearm wings developed, as also the rudder functions of the spreading tail feathers.

**Tetrapteryx.**—The four wing phase was known as the Tetrapteryx. The lateral scales gradually became transformed into long primary feathers.

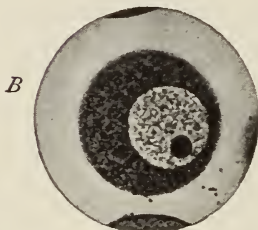
Our principal reason for describing somewhat in detail these purely physical conditions pertaining to both the Lemurian and Atlantean Epochs is to enable the student to trace the origins of so many traits and tendencies in the Human Kingdom which would be otherwise almost inexplicable.

**Study of Origins a Study of Consciousness in Evolution.**—The study of such origins is really a study of the evolution of consciousness and reason. The latter term is often defined as "the faculty of the mind by which man draws conclusions, and determines right and truth."<sup>8</sup> This is a definition not altogether satisfying to the Rosicrucian, for he knows that Mind itself is not as yet an organized or perfected vehicle, and this is proved by the further definition that reason may sometimes be irrational and absurd. It is rather the ability to co-ordinate in the waking consciousness the impacts of sense perception.

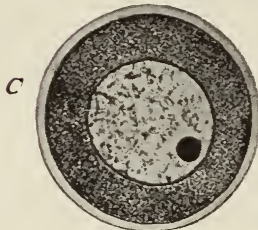
**Intelligence of Divine origin.**—However, it will be observed that each succeeding evolutionary step is an amplification, enlargement and development of the consciousness of the preceding stage of life expression, in which the natures, properties, attributes and



A—*Achromatin* with network of chromatin threads. An organism of the bacteria type.



B, C—Single celled eggs from the ovaries of a sea-urchin. The chromatin is here shown concentrated into a black dot within the nucleolus.



D—Multicellular group from an onion root-tip. The chromatin is shown in the black, wavy and irregular formations.



E—Multicellular group from the embryo of a California giant Redwood Tree. The solid blacks show the chromatin; the thin lines the cell boundaries, and the dots the protoplasm.

—(From Osborn "Origin and Evolution of Life," after Lawson.)

FIG. 51

CHROMATIN AND PROTOPLASM CONTRASTED.

Protoplasm is the principal *visible* substance of the growing cell. Chromatin is the principal *visible* center of heredity.

In this illustration, the Protoplasm is shown by the grayish and dotted areas and the Chromatin by the black, wavy rods, and other shapes. A-C represents the single cell; D-E cell clusters.

tendencies are preserved and expressed with greater freedom and increasing orderliness and intelligence, for through all the stages of Life there is a certain latent, inherent intelligence, otherwise we should be obliged to postulate that the Absolute and its immediate Expressions, of which all life forms are primordially emanations, was unintelligent, which is unthinkable. The unfoldment of consciousness is the unfoldment of the Divine Intelligence and Reason.

**How Consciousness is "carried over."**—How is the consciousness of one Kingdom preserved and carried over into the next succeeding stage? It is effected through the persistence of the archetypal forms developed in the Thought-world under the Creative Hierarchs on the esoteric or spiritual side, and by the basic elements through which the life-wave manifests on the physical side.

**Protoplasm and Chromatin.**—In regard to the latter, the two principal factors are Protoplasm, which has already been mentioned, and Chromatin, of equal importance. As to which is the most ancient has long been a matter of dispute between biologists and bacteriologists, with the balance of favor resting on protoplasm. The latest investigations and researches into cytology and protistology seem, however, to "indicate that CHROMATIN ELEMENTS REPRESENT THE PRIMARY AND ORIGINAL LIVING UNITS OF INDIVIDUALS"<sup>9</sup> and that Protoplasm is the secondary product. Here, from an investigation of the purely physical side, we find the spiritual and the physical revealed in unity, as true Hermeticism teaches it should be found.

**Earth made for Man.**—Many times has occult science affirmed that the Earth was made for Man, not Man for the Earth, except as heretofore stated, that Man might "dress the garden and keep it," that is, take charge of it after it was concreted for his use, and develop it for the future evolution of his own species in higher expression. Therefore, it is to be expected that without the spiritual element we should not look successfully for a physical origin. In Chromatin we find the Spiritual Unity. In Protoplasm we find the Physical Vehicle, and both will be found co-existent in cell formation from the earliest known stages.

**Seat of Heredity.**—From research into the functional and chemical separation of the Chromatin we now know Protoplasm to be the EXPRESSION, and Chromatin to be the SEAT of HEREDITY which is the modus of preservation and perpetuation of unit manifestations of the life-wave, and thus has a physicochemical basis.<sup>10</sup>

**Distribution of Chromatin; Protozoa and Metazoa.**—Applying this truth to our knowledge of the cell, the nucleus may be said to contain the “physical basis of inheritance, and that the Chromatin is its essential constituent.”<sup>11</sup> According to Prof. Osborn, “In the development from unicellular (Protozoa) into multicellular (Metazoa) organisms the Chromatin is distributed through the nuclei to all the cells of the body.” In this process, as Boveri has demonstrated, “all the body cells lose a portion of their chromatin and only the germ cells retain the entire ancestral heritage.”<sup>12</sup>

**Phosphoric constituency; the visible center of Energy Heredity.**—The notable chemical characteristic of Chromatin, as compared with Protoplasm, is Phosphorus, again identifying it with the faculties of Man which depend to a large degree upon the phosphorus constituents of the organism through which consciousness is made possible. And as we should expect, we find that the chemical, molecular and atomic constituency of Chromatin is infinitely more complex than that of any other form of matter known to science. “It is the VISIBLE CENTER of the energy complex of heredity, the larger part of which is by its nature INVISIBLE. Chromatin, although within our microscopic vision, is to be conceived as a gross manifestation of the infinite energy complex of heredity which is a COSMOS IN ITSELF.”<sup>13</sup>

**Development of the Individual.**—According to these findings, the continuous progress of the Life-wave since its first manifestation in Archaeozoic time is the progression of the physicochemical energies of the Chromatin, “THE DEVELOPMENT OF THE INDIVIDUAL LIFE IS AN UNFOLDING OF THE ENERGIES TAKEN WITHIN THE BODY UNDER THE DIRECTING AGENCY OF THE CHROMATIN (or Spiritual Principle in manifestation) AND THE EVOLUTION OF LIFE IS ESSENTIALLY THE EVOLUTION OF THE CHROMATIN ENERGIES.”<sup>14</sup>

**Size of a Hydrogen Atom.**—The lightest known atom is that of Hydrogen, with an average diameter of 1/100,000,000 of a centimeter, with negatively charged particles or electrons of about 1/1,800 of the atom mass, travelling with velocities ranging from 10,000 to over 100,000 miles per second. Now the most compact type of Chromatin is the sperm-nucleus of the sea-urchin and is about 1/100,000,000 of a cubic millimeter in bulk. The sphere of activity of an atom is about 1/100,000,000 of a centimeter, or in other words, 1/10,000,000 of a millimeter.

**Chromatin a Miniature Cosmos.**—Chromatin will thus be seen to be a miniature cosmos, including fiercely “acting, interacting and reacting”<sup>15</sup> particles, an evidence of its tremendous power and potency.

Physical science admits its ignorance “as to how the Chromatin responds to the actions, reactions and interactions of the body cells, of the life environment and of the physical environment, so as to call forth a new adaptive character<sup>16</sup> unless it be through some infinitely complex system of chemical messengers and other catalytic agencies.”<sup>17</sup>

In studying the evolution of life upon our planet, we must keep constantly in mind the fundamental biologic law that “the causes of evolution are to be sought within four complexes of energies, which are partly visible and partly invisible, namely:

**Fundamental Biological Law.—**

1. Physicochemical energies in the evolution of the physical environment;
2. Physicochemical energies in the individual development of the organism, namely, of its protoplasm **CONTROLLED AND DIRECTED BY ITS CHROMATIN;** Selection and Elimination. Incessant competition, selection, intraselection (Roux) and elimination between all parts of organisms in their chromatin energies, in their protoplasmic energies and in their actions, reactions and interactions with the living environment and with the physical environment.
3. Physicochemical energies in the evolution of the heredity-chromatin with its constant addition of new powers and energies;
4. Physicochemical energies in the evolution of the life environment, beginning with the protocellular chemical organisms, and such intermediate organisms as bacteria, and followed by such organisms, cellular and multicellular, as the higher plants and animals.<sup>18</sup>

**Inter-reaction between the Visible and the Invisible.**—In this tabulation by Prof. Osborn the inter-reaction between the visible and the invisible is clearly apparent once the spiritual nature of the Chromatin is understood, and its office as a vehicle through which the directing energies of the Spiritual Powers guiding all evolutionary process is recognized.

**Algae as Earth-Builders.**—Thus the importance of Protoplasm and Chromatin as builders, preservers and perpetuators from cellular structure is shown, just as we also recognize the importance of true Algae as the “earth-forming powers of life.”

**Chlorophyll.**—As bacterial forms derive their energy from the geosphere or solid earth as distinguished from water and air, and also from the hydrosphere, the principal agent for seeking life in the atmosphere is Chlorophyll, which collects carbon from its union with oxygen in carbon dioxide. This it does by utilizing the energy of sunlight, and this power of the chlorophyll in algae is one of the most important operations in nature. All Color in the four Kingdoms is deposited by the forces which work along the negative pole of the Light Ether, and this is said to be one of the reasons why plants and animals have most color on the side turned towards the sun. It is also one of the agencies in furnishing their “camouflage” or protecting coloring to animals, birds and insects.

**How Plants respond to Light.**—The power of chlorophyll is most ancient, and near the base of the Archaean rocks of the Adirondacks may be seen graphites formed from fossilized plant tissues. “The plant organ responds to the directive influence” of the energy of the sun’s rays by a curvature which places it either in a direct line with the rays of light, as in grass seedlings, or at right angles to the light as in ordinary foliage leaves. “Of the light that falls upon a green leaf a part is reflected from its surface and another part is absorbed. That which is reflected and transmitted gives to the leaf its green color; that which is absorbed, consisting of certain red, blue and violet rays, is the source of the energy by means of which the leaf is enabled to carry on its work.”

**Chlorophyll photosensitive.**—Chlorophyll is a “very complex photosensitive system” and its action in the first stage “consists in the separation, either partial or complete, of negative electrons under the influence of sunlight” and the transformation of the energy of light waves into the energy of electrified particles and the initiation “of a whole train of chemical reactions resulting in the building up of the complex organic molecules which are the ultimate products of the plant’s activity.”<sup>19</sup>

**Chlorophyll and the Spectrum.**—According to Prof. Loeb, chlorophyll seems to absorb vigorously the light rays of the Solar Spectrum between B and C, the natures of which are most ener-

gizing, and again between F. Chlorophyllic plant tissue consists principally of Carbon, Hydrogen and Oxygen,<sup>20</sup> while the main object of bacterial life seems to be to seek Nitrogen.<sup>21</sup>

**Coloring of the Red Sea.**—The blue-green algae or Cyanophyceae are found almost everywhere in both fresh and salt water, on damp soil, rocks and bark, and it is a notable and interesting fact that the red of this species is what gives to the Red Sea its characteristic coloring. The antiquity of the algae is shown by the fact that they are responsible for the formation of the ancient limestones, some of which, at the base of the pre-Cambrian, being at least 60,000,000 years old.<sup>22</sup>

**Human embryo in gestation.**—The Human embryo in the process of gestation passes through all the phases of mineral, vegetable and animal life-expression structurally. It is this fact that makes it possible for the heredity-chromatin to perpetuate and transmit organic tendencies observable in the homo as pertaining also to the lower forms of life expression. Even in the higher forms of mammals the heredity-chromatin "recalls primitive stages in the development of the fishes, for example, the gill-arch structure at the side of the throat, which through change of function serves to form the primary cartilaginous jaws (Meckelian cartilages) of mammals as well as the bony ossicles which are connected with the auditory function of the middle ear. Similarly, profound structural ancestral phases in protozoan, fish and reptile structure pervade every part of the mammalian body."<sup>23</sup>

**All primitive processes a preparation.**—All these primitive processes were but the preparation for the great change that was to take place ere the evolution of consciousness from the trance, dreamless sleep and dream sleep stages could result in full waking consciousness and reason. This great change was the elevation of the horizontal spinal column through which the earth currents flowed in the lower kingdoms, to the upright position through which the spiritual currents could flow, connecting the latent consciousness of the homo with that of the higher and inner spheres of being, so that at last Man might awake, and become indeed "as one of the Gods."

**Oxyhemoglobin.**—This change also meant the fuller development of the crystals of oxyhemoglobin, the red coloring of mammalian blood, a development which resulted in the gradual indrawing of the Ego into its human vehicles.

**Pituitary Gland.**—The intimate relation between the Chromatin and the Pituitary Gland is to be noted in the human hand, and

in this respect the hand is an indicator of the status of all the functions in the homo which are directly influenced by the condition and status of the Pituitary gland.

**Human Hand; Brachydactyly.**—Short, pudgy fingers, with almost no nails form the congenital brachydactyly hand, and is due *ETHER* to a sudden alteration in the Chromatin or to a congenital defect in the Pituitary Gland, as Drinkwater has shown.

**Normal Brachydactyly.**—The congenital brachydactyly is rather an extreme type and seldom seen. The normal brachydac-



FIG. 52

TYPES OF THE HUMAN HAND.

No. 1. Congenital brachydactyly, due to sudden alteration in the chromatin or congenital defect in the pituitary gland.

—(After Osborn and Drinkwater.)

No. 2. Brachydactyly, due to abnormal secretions of the pituitary gland.

—(After Osborn and Cushing.)

No. 3. Dolichodactyly, indicating insufficient secretions of the pituitary gland.

tyly is the rather broad hand, with “stumpy” fingers and short nails. This type, according to Cushing, is due to supernormal secretions of the Pituitary Gland. The brachydactyly is the hand of the worker and usually of the materialist.

**Dolichodactyly.**—Subnormal secretions of the Pituitary Gland produce the Dolichodactyly or long hand with narrow, slender fingers. This type of hand is usually found among those who are termed “temperamental,” which, strictly speaking, is synonymous with lack of balance and self-control.

**Where the Pituitary Gland originated.**—The Pituitary Gland itself, attached to the brain, originated in our earliest fish and reptilian ancestors, and the activity through its office as a vehicle



of the heredity-chromatin shows the persistence as to differentiation of proportion in the hands, feet and other parts of the human body today, as it showed in the examples cited of the gigantic reptilia.<sup>24</sup>

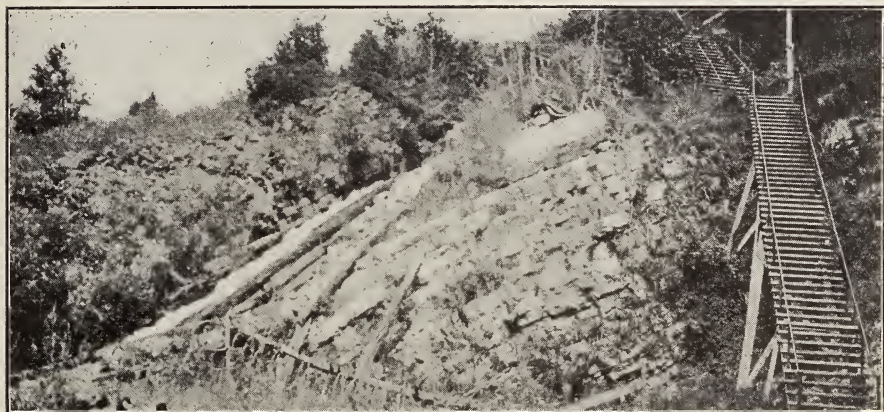


FIG. 53  
ILLUSTRATING UNCONFORMABLE STRATA. CONTORTED  
SCHIST. ST. LAWRENCE, NEAR BEAUPRE, P. Q.  
(Photo by Allen.)

**Age of mountain uplifts.**—The changes in the Earth's crust were vastly more extreme during the Mesozoic and Palaeozoic times, than during the Tertiary, the era in which the principal evolutionary processes of mammalian life were operative. Yet the Tertiary of the Cenozoic has witnessed many of the most notable mountain uplifts. The Himalayas belong to the Miocene; the Swiss Alps and the Pyrenees to the Oligocene; our Rocky Mountains to the Eocene, Oligocene, Miocene and Pliocene; the Sierra Nevadas to the Jurassic, while older than them all, the Appalachians, with the White Mountains of New Hampshire, commenced their uplift far back in the Carboniferous of the Palaeozoic, completing it in the Permian at the close of the Palaeozoic and the very beginning of the Mesozoic times.<sup>25</sup>

**Corroboration of the North Pole Teaching.**—These latter heights therefore were contemporaneous with Lemurian conditions and existed throughout the Atlantean times, as did also some land formations still extant at the North Pole. The Rosicrucian teachings of the beginnings of organic life forms at the North Pole is further corroborated by the "North Polar Theory" of Wallace, sup-

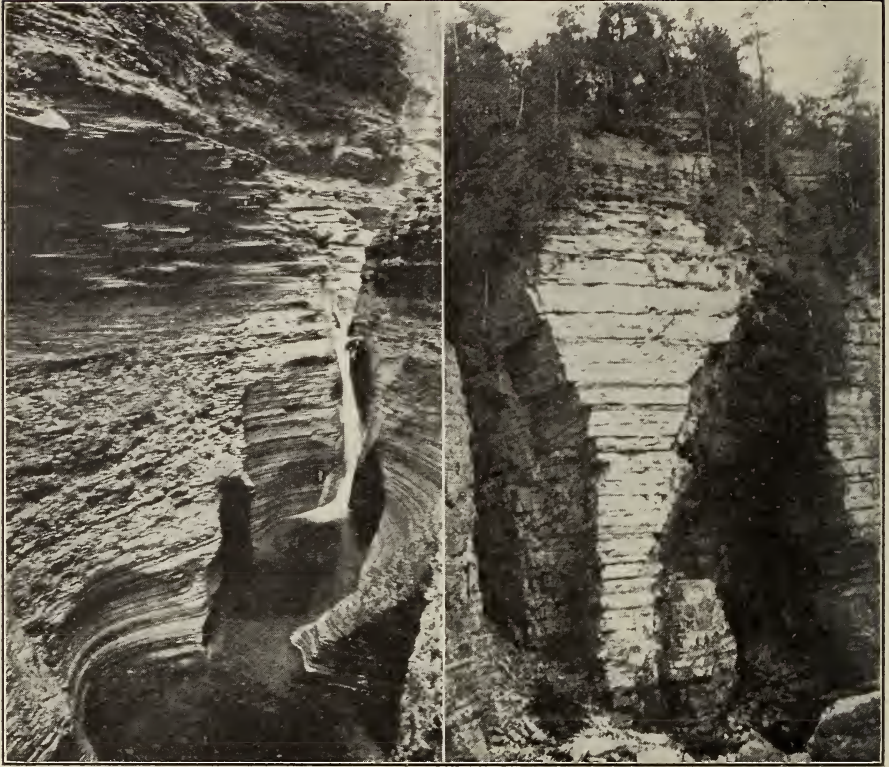


FIG. 54  
CHANGES IN THE EARTH'S CRUST.

Results of erosion activities. Left, Watkin's Glen, New York, where the erosion has been through Devonian rocks of the Palaeozoic. The Glen is from 100 to 300 feet deep and is a winding gorge about  $\frac{1}{2}$  miles long. The rocks are of the Portage and Hamilton groups and the operations of Nature here shown represent between 30,000 and 50,000 years. The "pot-hole" formations are cause by the whirling of stones by the early rapids in local whirlpools causing perfectly rounded indentations sometimes many feet deep. Right, Ausable Chasm, New York, showing "Elephant's Head," a gigantic illustration of erosive activities.

—(Photos, Left by A. B. Allen; Right, by G. F. Plummer)

ported latterly by Matthew, that there was originally a northern land connection between the Eastern and Western Hemispheres during Tertiary time (at least) and that this land connection was explanatory of the principal features of *mammalian migration and geographical evolution*.<sup>26</sup>

**Conscience.**—Through all these long ages of evolutionary process, in the unfoldment, development and expansion of consciousness, a subtle power is also germinated and developed, which finds expression only in the Human Kingdom, the subtle power known

as CONSCIENCE. This is a powerful principle possessed by every human being from the lowest to the highest in some form or modification, colored by the contemporaneous ethics and concepts, morally, of races, locale and environment. It has already been stated that the purpose of human existence was to assimilate experience. Heindel has termed it the "feeling of past pain," a very correct definition. We may amplify this definition by giving it as the manifestation of the COSMIC MEMORY OF ALL PAST EXPERIENCE.

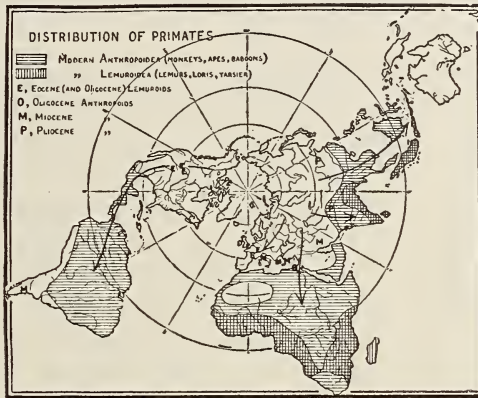


FIG. 55  
 MAP SHOWING THE DISTRIBUTION OF MAMMALS ACCORDING  
 TO THE NORTH POLAR EXPLANATION OF THEIR GEO-  
 GRAPHIC MIGRATIONS. THIS REFERS ESPECI-  
 ALLY TO THE PRIMATES.

(After W. D. Matthew, 1915.)

**Present Humanity never Dinosaurs.**—While we have shown many examples of the forms of life expression existent upon the Earth during previous ages contemporaneous with man-in-the-making, it must not be assumed that present humanity were once dinosaurs. These life forms belonged to another life-wave, which will in due time become ensouled in human forms, but present humanity belongs to a still earlier life-wave.

**Remote origin of Conscience.**—Nevertheless, the development of Conscience began even in the present life-wave long ages prior to Man's awakening AS Man to the objectivity of the material or physical world. So also, in the activities of the earliest life forms known to science today we may witness tendencies operative under the direction of the Group Spirits which are the prototypic origins of what will some day manifest as conscience when the existent life-wave is humanly ensouled.

**How Conscience acts.**—The “conscience fund” of the Government is an evidence of the power of this vital principle, for in obedience to its dictates wrong doers are prompted, sometimes many years after, to make restitution for their transgressions. No man can escape his conscience. It acts always constructively. It approves a contemplated good work. It disapproves a wrong one. When one contemplates a worthy action, there arises a sense of justification that resulted from previous right actions in past incarnations and even more remote phases of evolution. When one contemplates or is about to commit a wrong deed there arises within the cosmic memory the sense of pain, which accompanied or resulted from error in the past.

**Conscience and the panoramas.**—This principle of conscience is made more and more permanent and effective in its operations by the panoramas already mentioned, one just after the death of the physical body and the other just prior to commencing the building of a new one for the next mortal expression. Another form of panorama is also noted in the flash of life incidents sometimes experienced by those who are drowning, falling from great heights or about to be executed. This form is similar but of shorter duration to the panorama experienced just after death, and is due to the separation of the Etheric Body from the Physical.

**Dimensions; Fourth, etc.**—The transitional states of consciousness are really progressions from one dimension to another. We often speak of one, two, three and nowadays of the “Fourth Dimension.” These “dimensions” are really amplifications of preceding states of consciousness. Consciousness in the mineral stage of evolution is locked, trance-like. In the Vegetable Kingdom the evolving spirit moves in one dimension only—extent. In the Animal Kingdom, its consciousness functions in two dimensions. In the Human Kingdom Man’s consciousness cognizes three dimensions, length, breadth and thickness.

**Interpenetration.**—The development of Man’s consciousness to that of the comprehension of the spiritual planes amplifies to four dimensions, length, breadth, thickness and—INTERPENETRATION. In other words, to the spiritual consciousness, the solids of the physical world interpose no barriers, and such consciousness is extensive not only in linear directions but in interior or internal and subliminal directions as well. The expression of this state in diagrammatic form has often been attempted by the construction of tesseracts or geometrical figures expressing not only linear fig-

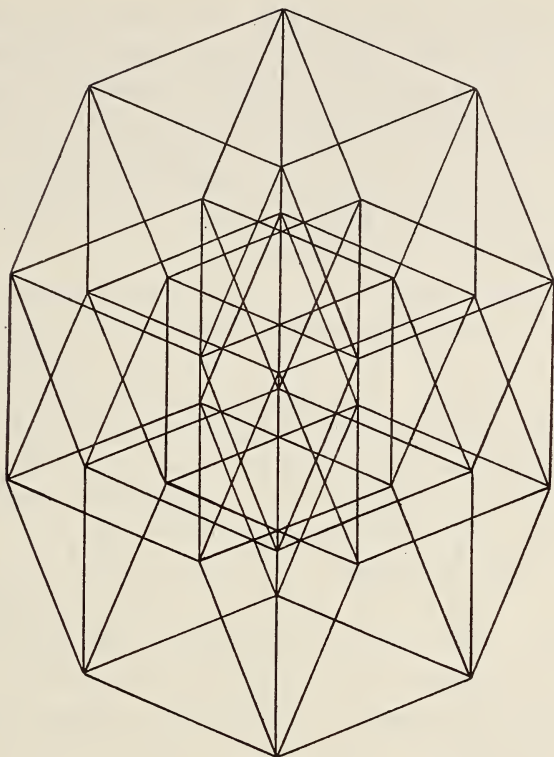


FIG. 56

## THE PENTACT. (FR. HYDE 9°.)

For the general theory and illustration of the Fourth Dimension, the student is referred to the excellent work by MR. CLAUDE BRAGDON, entitled, "A PRIMER OF HIGHER SPACE." The Figure shown herewith is a summary of many rules and many figures. FR. HYDE, 9° gives in this resume the original series of bodies of the square, cube, tesseract type. It will be noticed that in a square (or triangle)

- 2 lines meet at every point.
- in a cube (or tetrahedron)
  - 3 lines meet at every point.
  - 2 squares (or surfaces) meet at every line.
- in a tesseract.
  - 4 lines meet at every point.
  - 3 squares meet at every line.
  - 2 cubes meet at every square.
- in a pentact (or 5-dimensional body of this nature)
  - 5 lines meet at every point.
  - 4 squares meet at every line.
  - 3 cubes meet at every square.
  - 2 tesseracts meet at every cube.

This can be verified from the projection of the pentact which is given in the Figure, and the curious reader will be able to pick out in this Figure, 32 points, 80 lines, 80 squares, 40 cubes and 10 tesseracts.

ures but of solids, cubes, etc. The bibliography of the Fourth Dimension Hypothesis developed along purely mathematical lines is voluminous and need not be discussed at further length herein. For those students who are interested in the mathematical exposition of this interesting and fascinating problem we publish the

diagram prepared by Frater Hyde, 9°. From the esoteric standpoint dimensions above three indicate that all dimensions are really states of consciousness both as applied to mundane and supermundane conditions. And as there are many inner or interior world regions and planes, so there is a definite state of consciousness or "dimension" pertaining to each, consequently not only a "Fourth Dimension" but a fifth, sixth, seventh and still inner or "higher" dimensions as well.<sup>27\*</sup>

**Karma.**—The evolution of consciousness from its primitive states, and its secondary attribute, Conscience, brought about the establishment of another condition or state, known as Karma. This principle, Karma, we term the primary attribute, as it is really the first resultant upon the attainment of full waking consciousness. Waking consciousness may be termed the cause, Karma the effect. Conscience, as the secondary attribute is the means by which the homo may modify the effect.

**Law of Cause and Effect.**—Karma, which is now known as a distinct Law of Life by all schools of genuine occultism, is often defined as the "Law of Cause and Effect" and in its operation is explained by the saying, "as ye sow, so shall ye reap."<sup>28</sup>

**Personal Responsibility.**—Karma is the personal responsibility for acts committed—

- a Consciously.
- b Unconsciously.

**How Operative.**—Every act we perform, or thought we conceive, or word we utter, has a direct and an indirect result. If the thought, word or deed is good, the result will be principally for good, allowing for a certain amount of error in judgment due to human fallibility.

If the thought, word or deed be wrong, the result will be wrong, with a still smaller latitude for human error in judgment.

**Good and Bad Karma.**—Results are what constitute the Karma of the person from whom the causes of the results originated. Good results mean good Karma. Wrong results mean wrong or so-called evil Karma. Each Life Expression is a page in our individual ledger showing the balance of good and bad Karma.

---

\*For a clear, concise and interesting exegesis of Fourth Dimensional concepts, the student is referred to "A Primer of Higher Space," by Claude Brugdon. Also to other works by this same excellent writer.

The amount of good Karma we accumulate helps to determine our status of advancement in the next succeeding incarnation. The bad Karma accumulated must be brought over with us, as a "balance forward" to our next ledger page, to be "worked out" if possible during that incarnation.

By endeavoring to live a life of good thoughts, good deeds and good words, we develop good Karma, and by our inattention to this law, and on the theory that we "live one life at a time" indulge in all the appetites of the flesh, we accumulate a store of bad Karma that may require many incarnations to work out in pain and suffering.

**Law of Consequence or Compensation.**—This working out of the Law of Karma is, in its operation, the Law of Consequence or Compensation, for as we are also told in Scripture that we must pay the "uttermost farthing,"<sup>29</sup> so in very truth we must pay every Karmic debt, and from this accounting there is no escape, nor can riches or coldly scientific benefactions reduce the account one jot or tittle.

**Parable of the Talents.**—The Law of Karma and its accompaniment, the Law of Compensation, is the real basis of explanation for all the seeming inequalities of human life, why the rich man is unable to be happy, why the poor man oftentimes has a happiness envied by the rich, why the youth born to affluence turns out an apparent degenerate, why the poor boy rises from obscurity to eminence in the seats of the mighty, even to the rulership of a nation. It is the exemplification of the Parable of the Talents, that to whoso hath been faithful over a few things will be given rulership over many things.<sup>30</sup>

**How it explains exceptional cases.**—In the cases of those who may be confirmed invalids without any apparent reason for such a condition, and apparently not amenable to medical treatment, impossible of correct diagnosis, we would find on looking into their status psychically that the cause lay in their neglect of important physical functions during a previous incarnation, as a result of which they built the vehicles for the present incarnation imperfectly and must suffer the penalty for such neglect.

In the case of a truly good man, generous, yet who seems never able to get ahead and succeed in life, we shall find the same solution in his Karma.

**Where Karma begins.**—Up to a certain point in human evolution, Man is unaware that he is under any such laws, but after

attaining a certain definite intellectual status, where, under his existing mental code and ethical system, he is expected to and does know that he should obey the laws relative to right and wrong doing, he learns from objective conditions that for every offence there must be punishment; that if he escapes it at the hands of his fellowmen, he cannot escape it at the hands of his conscience, and as he progresses in intellectual and spiritual unfoldment, he also learns that his responsibility is not confined to his own acts as they relate to himself, but also as they relate to society, and finally as they will relate to generations who shall come after him. Thus he becomes amenable to the Law of Karma on the physico-intellectual plane, and as he gradually develops his spiritual insight and learns of the Law of Karma and Compensation as actual conditions, he sets to work to eliminate his past Karma by full, free and frank recognition of former error, a sincere desire to make full restitution if possible, and finally to develop a greater balance of good Karma by engaging in a life of Good Thoughts, Good Deeds and Good Words.

**Restitution necessary.**—It is most important that this Law of Karma and the Law of Compensation (that we must make restitution in some adequate way for every offence) be fully understood and pondered, for not only does it concern those conscious acts, either right or wrong, that we commit daily, but also does it concern those acts committed UNconsciously. Words or deeds spoken or performed even in jest, may oftentimes be the causes of unhappiness to others whom we may not know of.

**Shown in After-Death Panorama.**—Yet as we were the causes of their unhappiness, WE are responsible therefor, and by the Law of Compensation must make restitution when the knowledge of such unhappiness comes to us, even if through the after death panorama, for then we shall see our lives clearly, not alone all that we may know of them consciously, but the multitudinous incidents that we were not mortally cognizant of. While it may not be possible for us to make restitution personally to the ones who suffered at our hands unconsciously to us, we must nevertheless by becoming conscious of the incident nullify its astral activity by redoubled efforts in the next incarnation toward right thought, right action and right feeling.

**Guardian of the Threshold.**—It is this very Law of Karma that brings us face to face, as it were, with the GUARDIAN OF THE THRESHOLD, that principle so frequently mentioned by oc-



cultists and mystics, yet regarding which so many conflicting theories and explanations have been offered.

The Guardian of the Threshold is not necessarily met with by those who simply develop spiritual clairvoyance, unless they choose to do so, and if they are at all instructed it is a condition which few care to undertake to meet willingly.

**When met.**—Generally speaking, there are two distinct occasions when the Guardian of the Threshold is encountered:

1st. After death, if the individual is sufficiently advanced to understand spiritual conditions. Otherwise it comes to such as a demoniacal influence in accord with the evil powers commonly taught by popular theology.

2nd. As a test in REAL initiation, not the initiation of degrees in a mortal school, but the inner, spiritual initiation into the actual mysteries.

**What the Guardian really is.**—The Terror or Guardian of the Threshold IS THE EPITOME OR KARMIC ACCUMULATION OF THE CONCRETED THOUGHT FORMS OF OUR INDIVIDUAL BAD KARMA, and takes the form principally developed by the major aspect of our hidden thoughts. If the thoughts have been sensual, the Guardian will be a sensual monstrosity, and similarly, according to whether our thoughts have been vicious, brutal, malicious, revengeful, envious, covetous or idolatrous.

**Fear.**—The terror comes from our FEAR at meeting face to face—OURSELVES—as we really have been predominantly, unknown to our fellowmen.

Our ability to pass the Guardian depends upon the amount and strength of our good Karma, and the consequent courage we possess in meeting the evil force, conquering it, and passing beyond. The good is ultimately always the conquering power or force, but if our good Karma be weak, then our meeting with the Guardian will not be pleasant nor easily accomplished, and many an unsuccessful incarnation is due to the inability of the individual to pass the Guardian in his previous death to rebirth interim, and the result is that he has been susceptible to its maladventent influence thereafter, until, inspired by the vary forces of repulsion for evil, he casts aside the selfish desires of the flesh and earnestly seeks the good, and thenceforward climbs slowly but steadily up the constructive pathway that leads to light and life, with freedom from this horrible form of obsession, for no obsession by unseen entities can equal the obsession of one's own self by one's own evil Karmic Guardian.

### Importance of being able to meet the Guardian successfully.

—No amount of study or theorizing will enable the student of the mysteries to successfully encounter the Guardian. Only the Life of Right Thought, Right Action and Right Feeling will put him in a condition and position to do so. This passing is the hell that we must all experience, but to whoso is duly prepared will come the bright and powerful assistance of the spiritual forces that guide and govern man in his long journey through the ages of evolutionary process and the gradual unfoldment of his consciousness to higher and higher states and planes of comprehension and understanding.

### QUESTIONS ON INSTRUCTION No. 10

1. What do occult writers often fail to correlate?
2. What accompanied Atlantis on its appearance as a Continent?
3. What are the causes of earthquakes?
4. What does Prof. Dana say about them?
5. Are the Nature-forces left to "work out their own way"?
6. How does the necessity for changes in earth's crust become apparent?
7. What are the means employed for effecting such changes?
8. What additional proof is given of movement from the North Pole?
9. What do the New Hampshire boulders indicate?
10. What is Man of today said to be?
11. Where does Mankind derive its fear of serpents?
12. Of what was Atlantis the home?
13. What was the principal habitat of the dinosaurs?
14. Name some of the species.
15. To what is the ancient Canadian climate likened?
16. What do the ancient types of reptilia furnish?
17. What is understood by the so-called great ages of the Patriarchs?
18. How did they really live to advanced ages?
19. What was the status of the Ego in Atlantean times?
20. What was the principal attainment of Man in Atlantean times?
21. How did Man first "know his wife"?
22. What notable attribute did the Lemurians lack?
23. Give an idea of the extent and orders of the reptilian era.
24. How many survive?

25. What has become of the early life forms?
26. What does the progress of the mammalia indicate?
27. How did the birds originate?
28. What is their relative antiquity?
29. What was the Tetrapteryx?
30. What does the study of Origins really constitute?
31. What is the origin of Intelligence?
32. What is Chromatin and what is its relation to Protoplasm?
33. For what was the Earth made?
34. What is the seat of Heredity?
35. How is Chromatin distributed?
36. What is its notable characteristic?
37. Of what is Chromatin the visible center?
38. What is the development of the individual said to be?
39. What is the size of a hydrogen atom?
40. What is Chromatin further said to be?
41. State the fundamental biologic law.
42. How is the inter-relation between the visible and the invisible shown?
43. What are the algae said to be?
44. What is the nature and value of chlorophyll?
45. How do plants respond to light?
46. How is chlorophyll said to be photosensitive?
47. How does it relate to the spectrum?
48. How does it affect the "Red Sea"?
49. Through what does the human embryo pass in the process of gestation?
50. What are all the primitive processes said to be?
51. What is oxyhaemoglobin?
52. What intimate relation does the Pituitary Body sustain?
53. Describe differences in the human hand.
54. Where did the Pituitary Body originate?
55. What was the age of Mountain uplifts?
56. How is the North Pole teaching corroborated?
57. What is conscience?
58. Have any of present Humanity ever been dinosaurs?
59. What is the comparative antiquity of conscience?
60. How does conscience act?
61. How does it relate to the panoramas?
62. What are transitional states of consciousness said to be?
63. Are there more dimensions than an additional fourth?
64. What is Karma?

65. How is it operative?
66. What is meant by good and bad Karma?
67. What is the Law of Consequence or Compensation?
68. How does it explain the Parable of the Talents?
69. How does it explain "exceptional cases"?
70. Where does Karma begin?
71. What is necessary?
72. What is shown in the after death panorama?
73. What is the Guardian of the Threshold?
74. When is it met with?
75. Of what is the Guardian the epitome?
76. What is said of Fear?
77. What is the importance of being able to meet the Guardian successfully?
78. Have you attempted to visualize to yourself what YOUR personal Guardian may be?
79. Are YOU, by practicing daily introspection, attempting to prepare to meet it?
80. Have YOU estimated the Karma that may be influencing your daily activities?
81. If not, *WHY NOT*?



INSTRUCTION XI.  
FORMATIVE PROCESSES IN MAN.

THE CELL, ITS DEVELOPMENT AND AMPLIFICATION; TRANSITIONS.  
VESTIGIAL REMAINS, BASIC STRUCTURE OF PROTOPLASM,  
ORGANISMS.

---

**Humanity is Divinity thinking Itself into Manifestation.**—It has been said that “Humanity is Divinity thinking itself into manifestation.” It might be corrected to read, “thinking itself into concrete expression.” This is a true concept, and in its light we may regard all the creative and formative processes noted in the foregoing Instructions as stages in the progressional development of the Divine Mind itself, for even Divinity must be in a state of progression, otherwise there would be an ultimate terminus to all progress.

**Evolution interim between the Mineral and Human Stages.**—Referring to the Kingdom of Life in general, Involution may be said to have terminated at the Mineral stage. Referring to the Homo, it may be said to have terminated with the indrawing of the Ego into full possession and occupancy of its vehicles. Between the arrival at the Mineral stage of the Life Kingdom and the status of the true Homo multitudinous transitional and transmutative processes have been accomplished.

**How the Mineral Spirit adjusts itself.**—We find on referring to Instruction No. 4 that “the Mineral spirit being so confined by the process of crystallization adjusts itself to the geometric and purely mathematic form of crystals, remaining inert until acted upon by exterior forces.”

**Assimilation by Vegetable, Animal and Human Spirits.**—Next, we find that the Vegetable Spirits assimilate the crystallized elements, transmuting them into crystalloids which are in turn assimilated by the Spirits of the Animal and Human Kingdoms, transmuted into cells and compounded into organs. Above all we must remember that—

LIVING MATTER DISPLAYS THE ENERGY OF COLLOIDAL AND THE PLAN OF CRYSTALLOIDAL MATTER.

**Progressional development of the primal cell.**—With this in mind then, we must regard the evolution of living matter from the mineral stage to the human as the progressional development of the primal cell into and through complex forms. For the motif of such progressional development we may refer to the Instruction wherein we found that a creating God vivifies each individual and inseparable atom of Cosmic Root Substance in the spatial locale for a solar system WITH HIS OWN LIFE OR UNIVERSAL PRINCIPLE. (Instruction No. 1.)

**Cell Intelligence.**—If this is the case with the primal atoms, then it is easy to understand that their resultant combinations in mass must also be vivified with that Divine Life which includes the Divine Intelligence in modicum, and that therefore, every cell of the earliest form of vegetable substance has its own allotment of the Divine Intelligence, and the aggregate intelligence of a given mass is the aggregate intelligence of the cells composing that mass. We may even use the term “consciousness,” remembering that either term used must be held in mind as applying only in evolutionary process.

**The Cell and the Egg.**—The gradual manifestation and concretion of the vehicles of the Ego was, as has been so often stated, a process of crystallization from within outward. This is also true of the cell, and the composition of the cell therefore, and the Egg, which is a good illustration on a large scale, should be studied with their analogies and correspondences to the human vehicles.

**Physical Correspondences.**—Physically speaking,—

Mass corresponds to the Physical Vehicle.

Molecules correspond to the Etheric Vehicle.

Atomic Structure corresponds to the Astral Vehicle.

Electrons correspond to the Mental Vehicles.

Ions—pure Electricity, Light, or God, to the EGO, or Essence.

**Cell Correspondences.**—In regard to the cell (in humans from 1/125 to 1/5000 of an inch in diameter), the

Cell Wall corresponds to the Physical Body.

Inner Lining (Membrana Pellucida) corresponds to the Etheric Body.

Protoplasm (Cytoplasm) corresponds to the Astral Body.

Nucleus corresponds to the Mental Sheath.

Nucleolus corresponds to the EGO.

**Egg Correspondences.**—Similarly with the Egg, the Shell corresponds to the Physical Body.  
 Shell Lining corresponds to the Etheric Body.  
 White of the Egg corresponds to the Astral Body.  
 Yolk of the Egg corresponds to the Mental Sheath.  
 Germ-Speck or Kernel corresponds to the Ego.

The activities of the centrosomes in cells compares with the activity of the Threefold Spirit.

Simple as they may appear to those uninformed in biological and zoological science, nevertheless the births and deaths and the

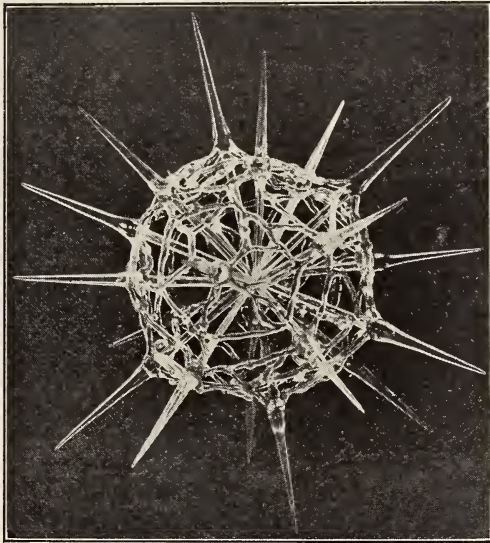


FIG. 57  
 MODEL SKELETON OF RADIOLARIAN. STAURASPIS  
 STAURACANTHA.  
 —(Courtesy of the American Museum of Natural History, N. Y.)

countless progressional combinations and developments of the simple protoplasmic cells accomplish the miracles of evolutionary life.

**Twenty-six stages in Descent of Humanity.**—Haeckel has traced the descent of the human race in twenty-six stages<sup>1</sup> from organisms like the Monera (simple, structureless masses of protoplasm with hardly recognizable nuclei), the Amoebae (“simple protoplasmic bodies with distinct nuclei and nucleolei, effecting movement by extending parts of the body into finger-like pseudopodia”),<sup>2</sup> the Mollusca, Crustacea, Radiata and all the other earlier forms of protozoic life, up to the present.

The charts given in "Rosicrucian Symbology" (by the author of this book) show comparative developments of foetal Chick, Tortoise, Dog and Man, and the progressional development of the foetal human brain in strict analogy to the evolutionary development of



FIG. 58

LANUGO, THE TEMPORARY HAIRY COVERING ON THE FACE OF A FIVE MONTH'S EMBRYO, ACCORDING TO ECKER.

—(Weidersheim's "Structure of Man." Macmillan.)

animal life.<sup>3</sup> The extent to which this is true is shown by Prof. Walter, who says: "Even Man during embryonic growth passes through a fur-bearing stage, when soft, delicate fetal fur, "lanugo," covers all of the body except the red part of the lips, the external



FIG. 59

LANUGO: AN ATAVISTIC DEVELOPMENT OF HAIR ON ADRIAN JETTICHJEW, KNOWN AS THE "RUSSIAN DOG-FACED MAN"

(After Weidersheim.)

genitalia, the digital tips already covered by the nails, the palms of the hands and the soles of the feet. Before birth, however, the temporary lanugo practically vanishes, to be replaced by another covering of hair which is much less general in its distribution and which becomes locally accentuated at puberty."<sup>4</sup>



**Every Homo recapitulates earlier Forms of Being.**—The student will see from these charts that every human being in the course of its foetal life and gestation recapitulates all the earlier stages of its evolution, being in due course invertebrate, vertebrate, fish, bird, reptile and mammal, and is it not clear that such being the case, we preserve throughout each and every incarnation in our cosmic memory the knowledge of our earlier forms of existence? This fact is what makes it possible for us, if we make it a special study, to reconstruct with exactitude the extinct forms of bygone ages, and the unconscious development of this cosmic memory enables archaeologists and palaeontologists to accomplish their seeming wonders.

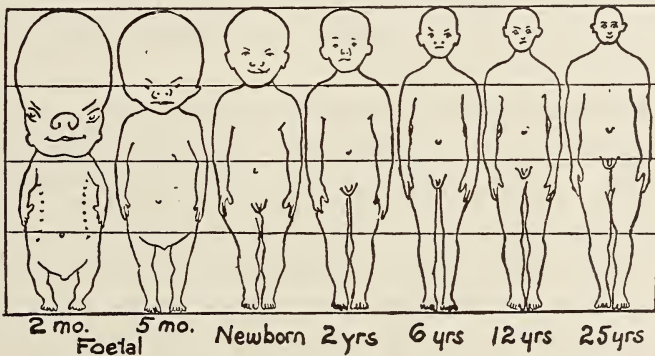


FIG. 60.  
 FROM EMBRYO TO MATURITY. CHANGES IN THE PROPORTIONS OF THE HUMAN FIGURE DURING PRENATAL AND POSTNATAL GROWTH.  
 —(After Stratz, in Morris' "Anatomy.")

**Origin of Selective Power.**—Man, born of an egg exactly as are all the other higher forms of life, is the epitome of cell development and extension. The Divine Intelligence implanted in the Cosmic Root Atom is inherited by the cell and multiplied and amplified therein by affinity and association. It reaches still greater expansion in the organ of which that given cell forms a part, and gives to the organ the selective power to assimilate its own immediate and exact requirements from nourishment provided for the entire vehicle of which that organ is but a single part.

**Cell Consciousness inferior to Life Spirit Consciousness.**—This cell consciousness is the inner cause and reason for the marvelous selective powers exhibited in so many departments of Nature. In each Life Kingdom the individual cell consciousness

is under the direct control of the phase of the Consciousness pertaining to the Life Spirit wave of that Kingdom. Thus in the Vegetable Kingdom, the individual cell consciousness or intelligence is absorbed in the Dreamless Sleep Consciousness of that Kingdom; in the Animal Kingdom by the Dream Sleep Consciousness of that Kingdom, and in the Human it finally rises to greater activity and power in obedience to the dominant control of the Ego.

**Present Human Form not final.**—There can be no fixed visualization in the mind of the Absolute as to the ultimate form of evolving Humanity. As the Absolute through the Supreme Being and the Creative Gods is slowly thinking Itself into manifestation or concrete expression, gradually producing a better Humanity, so Humanity, as made up of the Egos who have learned to build their vehicles apart from the guidance of Celestial Lords, is slowly building better bodies.

**Cast Off Human Models.**—As Man of today is vastly different in appearance as well as attainment from the earliest known types, so Man of an equal time hence will differ as radically. The shores of time in the long interim between the Mineral Kingdom and present Humanity are strewn with the debris of cast off and defunct human models, just as the inventor having proved that his idea is practicable builds and discards model after model in perfecting and improving the expression of that idea. And sometimes the last model is such a great advance over the first that it requires some stretch of the imagination to conceive that the one was the parent or ancestor of the other.

**Ontogeny, Phylogeny, Epigenesis defined.**—These evidences of Man's age-long career are revealed to us through the science of Ontogeny or the history of the development of the individual usually called Embryology. With this must be coupled the science of Phylogeny or the history of the palaeontological development of organisms. The ability of the Homo in his advance to cast off obsolete forms and build under his prerogative of free-will better and more improved forms, is called Epigenesis.

**Degenerate Forms.**—The study of these sciences reveals many misconceptions. We have already explained that Man is not descended from the monkey, but that the monkey is the degeneration of Man; more properly speaking, the degeneration of the obsolete FORMS of early Man. This is also seen in the other Life Kingdoms. Coal, some fossils and petrifications are the degeneration of the Vegetable Kingdom, as witnessed by the "Petrified

Forest" of Arizona. Arctic moss and rock fungi are also degenerations of the same Kingdom. Polyyps are degenerations of the mammalia, and various minerals show the presence of early vegetal forms.

**Vestigial or Rudimentary Organs; Skull Theory.**—Chief among the evidences of human debris revealed by ontogenical study are what are commonly known as "vestigial organs" or "rudimentary organs." Those pertaining to the head and skull show the transitional period from the Animal to the Human Kingdom since the acceptance of the vertebral theory of the skull set forth by Goethe. This fact is that the skulls of humans and all other vertebrate animals are but the transformation and amplification of the topmost portion of the vertebral columns.<sup>5</sup> Through the understanding of this important truth the transition from the horizontal to the upright spinal column takes on greater importance.

**Ascent of the Spiritual Currents.**—This greater importance means that although the animals have skulls and cerebral systems, the Ego could not indraw until, by the upright position, the development of the last vertebra should assume a form which would give to all portions of the brain the power to function the full waking consciousness necessary to the human Ego. This was accomplished by the ASCENT of the spiritual currents UP the spinal column, away from the earth plane instead of parallel to it.

**Examples of the Rudimentary Organs, In Animals and Whales.**—We will now note some of the so-called rudimentary organs. Among the animals we find in the mid-bone of the upper jaw, fore-teeth or incisors, which never fully develop and therefore serve no useful purpose. Whale embryos are noted, possessing teeth, which are afterward lost and whalebone substituted.<sup>6</sup>

**Ear Lobes, Human.**—In Man, the ear lobes are no longer under his control as they still are with the animals. Although the muscles exist, he is for the most part unable to exercise them. They can be developed by exercise and will power, but they are "imperfect organs on the road to complete disappearance."<sup>7</sup>

**Third Eye-lid, Human.**—There is also the third eye-lid, the tiny crescent shaped fold in the inner corner of the eye near the root of the nose. It is known as the "plica semilunaris." As far back as the silurian times the primitive fishes possessed this, and it is seen in active use among cats, dogs and other mammals, as well as among the birds and reptiles. There are also the eyes that do not see, found among those fishes that make caves and sub-

terraneous streams their habitat.<sup>8</sup> Also in many invertebrate animals.

**Among Reptiles.**—Among the reptiles we find the defunct hind legs, still observable in the hinder portion of the giant serpents, boas, etc.<sup>9</sup>

**Among Plants.**—Among the plants we often find the rudimentary organs in the blossoms, for instance, in the Labiatae we frequently find only two of the stamens or male organs developed, the other aborted.<sup>10</sup>

**Mid-jaw Bone, Man.**—Goethe's discovery of the mid-jaw bone in Man, which can be seen in human embryos, was another startling evidence of Man's transitional progress.<sup>11</sup>

**Tails, Human; Origin of the Mammary Glands.**—Rudimentary human tails are seen in the three, four or five tail vertebrae (vertebrae coccygeae) as aborted organs. In Man the mammary glands of the breasts are rudimentary. The mammary glands are of especial interest, as they are the evidences of the chief cause of the origin of mammals out of reptile-like forms. The process was as follows: Due to change of labor of the skin glands on the reptilian belly side instead of continuing as perspiration and fatty glands they gradually transformed into milk secreting glands. The cause that led to this change was the habit of the new born of the species licking the ventral skin of the mother. The irritating stimulus thus caused led quantitatively to the enlargement of the important mammary glands and the various problems of the female bosom may be thus phylogenetically traced back to this primal basis.<sup>12</sup>

**Gill-clefts, Cable-Tow.**—The gill-clefts of amphibians, some of the reptilia, and those seen in human embryos come under the head of rudimentary organs but are of great antiquity, as they are a persistence from the Moon Period of evolution. These gill-clefts constituted the apparatus through which the pioneers of the life-wave of Virgin Spirits breathed the hot, vaporous fire-mist of the Moon Period. These beings were then animal-like, but not in the semblance of any known animals of today, and instead of inhabiting the earth's surface, they existed in suspension just above it by cords analogous to the umbilici. This fact is symbolized by the modern "Cable-Tow" of exoteric initiations.<sup>13</sup>

**Prostate and Clitoris.**—The prostate of man is the rudiment of the female uterus, while in woman the clitoris is the rudimentary masculine organ.<sup>14</sup> The evidences of rudimentary beards

and mustaches on many women are common to all observers.<sup>15</sup> By some the vermiform appendix is considered a rudimentary organ.

**Urschleim or "Original Slime"; Infusoria and Cell Theory.**—The preceding paragraph brings up another phase of Man's evolutionary progress and process, that of sex. Oken's theory that all phenomena of organic life proceeded from a common chemical substance or simple vital substance which he designated "Urschleim" or "original slime," gave to science the first real clue to the phenomena of generation. Now we use the term "Proto-

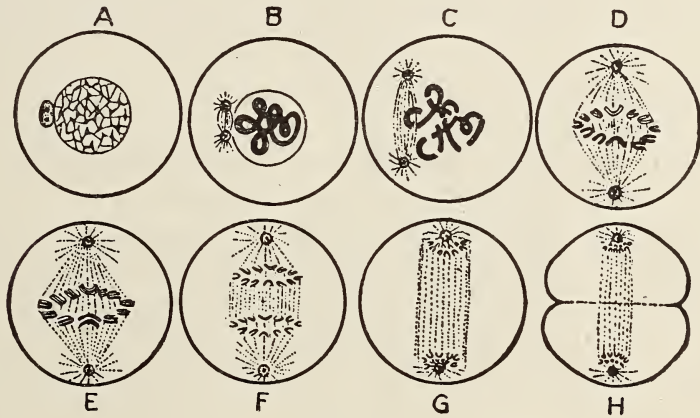


FIG. 61

Cell division. Diagrams showing the actual processes involved, in what is called mitosis or nuclear division. A, nucleus, normal, centrosome by its side. B, spindre appears, which in C becomes separated into chromosomes; D, centrosomes at opposite poles, chromosomes form an equatorial plate; E, each chromosome divides longitudinally and in F and G the halves become drawn to the opposite poles; H, the cell divided into two. —(After Wilder, in Lull's "Organic Evolution," Macmillan.)

plasm" in lieu of "original slime," in the sense of cell-substance. In 1809 Oken asserted that "the primitive slime produced in the sea by spontaneous generation," at once assumed the form of microscopically small bladders, which he termed "Mile" or "Infusoria." Organic nature has for its basis an infinity of such vehicles.<sup>16</sup> Substituting for bladder or infusorium the word cell, and we come at once to the cell theory, one of the greatest discoveries of the century.

**Cuvier, Linnaeus and Agassiz; Each Cell a Creative Thought.**

—That great trio of scientists, Cuvier, Linnaeus and Agassiz, while differing on many points regarding the evolution of organic species, agreed on one point which effectually undermined the assertion of the Church regarding the individual creation of Man as a

distinct type. Agassiz summed up this agreement in the words that he (Man) is the "embodied creative thought of God."<sup>17</sup> And Oken asserted that "Man has been developed, not created."<sup>18</sup> These two statements agree in the Rosicrucian philosophy perfectly. We have stated previously in this Instruction that each cell embodies a modicum of the Divine Intelligence, EACH CELL IS A CREATIVE THOUGHT OF GOD in manifestation, and what scientist can tell whether that cell will develop into a predicted form or not? From the creative thought develops the higher and more complex organism.

**Sexual Differentiation.**—Passing from the reproduction of simple cells by fission to the higher forms of reproduction and propagation in the Human Kingdom, Rosicrucian science states three distinct states of sexual differentiation:

- 1 Hermaphroditismus, both sexes in same individual.
- 2 Gonochorismus, union of two different individuals.
- 3 Parthenogenesis, virginal reproduction.

**Hermaphroditism in the Kingdoms; Transition to Sexual Separation.**—The first form is still common in the Vegetable Kingdom, less so in the Animal Kingdom and rare in the Human, although instances have been authentically noted therein. The garden snail produces in one part of its sexual glands eggs and in another part sperm. In some human hermaphrodites self fructification has been possible; in others copulation and reciprocal fructification of two hermaphrodites has been necessary for causing the development of the eggs. THIS LATTER PHASE IS THE TRANSITION TO SEXUAL SEPARATION, now complete in the Human Kingdom.

**The Luciferians; Fall of Man; Temptation of Adam and Eve.**—Man was hermaphroditic while human propagation was carried on under the guidance of the Hierarchies; the sexes became separate when the Luciferian Spirits, stragglers from the Moon Period who did not become Angels but were far in advance of present Humanity, "opened Man's eyes to the knowledge of good and evil." The Angels who advanced, work downwards on Man through the power of Creative Love. The Luciferians who, not being Angels, yet unable to use a Physical Body, required a physical brain for exterior contact, work upwards through the Creative Sex force. Thus they influenced Man to utilize his sex powers for creative purposes independently of the higher guidance. From this has arisen the tradition of the temptation of Adam and Eve and the

assurance of the Tempter that they should become as Gods, knowing both good and evil.

But the Luciferians were also "Light Bringers" to Man, for without this knowledge Man would have lived a painless but aimless existence, lacking progress.

**Salvation and Redemption.**—In the exercise of his free-will, in the use of his sense and sex powers for propagation, Man has also given way to sense and sex dissipation and sensuality, and his SALVATION will consist in his REDEMPTION of his Creative Powers from their present low estate and their transmutation to the higher forms of mental creative activity. MAN WILL AGAIN BECOME HERMAPHRODITIC, and the process is even now under way.

**Transformation of Sex.**—In the great American Museum of Natural History, in New York City, may be seen an exhibit that demonstrates this truth to the thoughtful student. Therein are specimens of common fowl in which experiments in the transformation of sex have been carried on, and which scientists the world over are carefully watching. In this exhibit, the ovaries of a common hen have been transferred to the cock, which transference has caused the latter to develop the plumage of the female and lose his comb. Similarly, the removal of the ovaries of the female has caused the bird to put on the plumage and spurs of the male.

**Importance of the experiment.**—Now the significant truth in this experiment is that such a process begun and maintained artificially would in time develop a distinct species characteristic, resulting ultimately in an hermaphroditic product. Such experiments begun with the simpler organisms and continued through higher forms, ultimately in the Human, indicate the return path to Man's original estate under conditions and exercise of free-will.

**Psychic and Mental Indications.**—The psychic and mental indications of the transition, the accomplishment of which is, needless to say, aeons distant, are also evident. First, the teaching of a higher creative estate by multitudinous schools of "New" Thought, and the exercise of the mental creative faculties; secondly, the desire for motherhood by thousands of women who will not pay the penalty of becoming the human chattels of men for the privilege, yet who insist upon the recognition of their inherent right to become mothers. And both these forces are becoming powerful levers in the present unsettled state of domestic relationships.

**Gonochorismus.**—Gonochorismus or sexual separation, requiring reciprocal relations between the divided sexes, is the universal method of propagation among the higher animals and Humans. In this form, every individual produces only one form of generative substance. The females produce eggs, egg-cells or ova. The males produce the fructifying sperma, which, like that of the Cryptogama, consists of floating, vibratile cells actively moving in a fluid, the zoosperms, spermatozoa, or sperm cells.

**Parthenogenesis.**—Parthenogenesis or virginal reproduction is the interesting form of transition from sexual reproduction to the non-sexual formation of germ cells and occurs among many insects. In this case cells become capable of developing themselves into new individuals without requiring the fructifying seed. The phenomenon has been noted even in the case of Humans, and has been well attested.<sup>19</sup>

**Every Being has a male and female nature.**—From his original hermaphroditic estate, Man has preserved the dual nature, male and female, internally. That is, every man and every woman retains physiologically and psychologically some evidence of the opposite sex, not only in the rudimentary organs but in temperament, intuitive faculties and mental traits. There is so much of the female in every man, and so much of the male in every female that it has actually been reduced to specific law, as given by C. G. Leland, "THAT IN PROPORTION TO MALE DEVELOPMENTS IN WOMAN, OR THE FEMALE IN MAN, THERE IS A CORRESPONDING MASCULINE OR FEMININE DEGREE OF MENTALITY."<sup>20</sup>

**Alternation of incarnations; effeminacy.**—This is more readily understood by Rosicrucian students when the alternation, exact or comparative, of sex polarities in succeeding incarnations is recalled. In the light of that truth, it may be seen not only how we preserve the dual nature, but how it is apt to preponderate according to the previous incarnation. A woman, say, who for the purpose of accomplishing a definite work, has had several successive incarnations as a female, on incarnating as a male, will manifest to a marked degree the feminine nature, which is ordinarily termed "effeminacy." Vice versa, masculinity is also noted in many women.

**Sexual secondary characteristics.**—Besides the sexual secondary characteristics, such as the antlers of the stag, the mane of the lion, tail of the peacock, spurs of the cock and beard of the



man; the developed breasts and lactatory glands of the female as distinguishing features of sexual separation, we may note in passing the gradual abortion or deletion of the little toes of both sexes, the deletion of bodily hair or hirsute coverings, except as sexual characteristics, and the differentiation between the combative and the creative instincts, selective and protective in both sexes.

**How the Homo is differentiated; At-One-Ment.**—The Human being is differentiated principally by sexual separation. Woman or Womb-Man is woman only through her ovaries. Man is man only through his testes. Humanity is at present Divinity in diversity. The return to hermaphroditism will mean the At-One-Ment of Humanity with itself and its At-One-Ment with Divinity, or complete Unity.



FIG. 62  
TYPE OF THE AVERAGE HUMAN FOOT, SHOWING THE GRADUAL DELETION OF THE LITTLE TOE.

**How one species reacts upon another.**—The differentiation and even the extinction of species is often caused by the smallest incidents. For instance, in Paraguay, the horse and ox nearly became extinct due to the laying of eggs by flies in the navels of newly born calves and foals, thus causing umbilical infection. Thus one department of nature can react powerfully upon a totally distinct and separate division.<sup>21</sup>

**Protective conditions.**—In studying the Kingdoms we must not omit to observe that while Man is now left to devise his own protective conditions through the exercise of his creative faculties and free-will, Nature through the Group Spirits is still attentive to the requirements of her multitudinous children. Examples of this protective care are seen in the formation and colorings



FIG. 63

Natural protective features showing how the formation and coloring of many of the lower forms are adapted to environment and habitat. Upper left, the Indian Kalima Butterfly exactly resembling a tropical leaf even to the mid rib. Right, The "Walking Stick" so closely resembling a twig that it must be disturbed in order to be discerned. Lower, The Indian "Walking Leaf," even the legs of which are leaf-like in appearance.

—(Photos by Brown Bros. N. Y.)

adapted to environment and habitat. An illustration of this is shown in the case of the Indian Kalima Butterfly, which, when its wings are closed, can hardly be distinguished from the leaves of the tree it frequents.

**The Porcupine Family.**—As a persistence from the reptilian age, we have albinism and again, in the famous Lambert family of London in the last century, the perpetuation of scales. This family was commonly known as the “porcupine family.” Edward Lambert, born 1717, was remarkable for his monstrous skin formation. His whole body was covered with “a horny substance, about an inch thick, which rose in the shape of numerous thorn-shaped and scale-like processes, more than an inch long.” This formation was transmitted to his sons and grandsons, but not to his granddaughters.<sup>22</sup>

**God is Evolution.**—In considering the vestigial remains of past evolution, we must not forget that the evidences of present and future progress are equally notable. For “God Himself is Evolution, embracing all things, especially Himself, the Self-evolved, ever working in mysterious ways His wonders to perform—the Maker and the Made.”<sup>23</sup>



FIG. 64

A SOLAR ECLIPSE. SHOWING PROMINENCES 47,000 MILES HIGH. YERKES EXPEDITION, GREEN RIVER, WYOMING, JUNE 8, 1918.

**Awed, but not terrified; Solar Eruptions and Vulcanism.**—We may be awed but not terrified by the tremendous operations of nature constantly going on about us. We may view with interest but not fear the solar eruptions such as those of 1878, the ascent of which were at the rate of 400,000 miles an hour, sending enormous jets of incandescent and metallic vapors hundreds of thousands of miles out into space at a temperature of 1700 degrees. The magnetic waves of that eruption and of recent activities are known to have revived apparently extinct volcanoes and increased the activities of others. This was effected by the magnetic waves penetrating the gas pockets beneath the volcanoes, inaugurating electrical activity which expands the gas, causing it to force its way through the crater core.<sup>24</sup>

**Human Mind Stuff evolving; Measurements of the Atom and the Electron.**—The Human Mind stuff through which the Ego can understand and explain such phenomena is constantly developing towards a true vehicle, and Man will ever be in the forefront of evolutionary processes and develop the intelligence required to meet the exigencies of nature's activities, be they what they may. The power of the Divine Intelligence operating through the Human Ego enabling it to understand the magnitude of celestial operations, and reversely to measure the Atom at 300,000,000 to the inch and the Electron at 30,000,000,000,000 to the inch, may be safely relied upon to maintain Man's supremacy in the gradually increasing control of the nature forces, which in some aeon-distant age will be completely his to command, so far as our limited solar system is concerned. Yet the comparative insignificance of our solar system may be understood when we realize that a cube whose sides were equal to the distance across the nebula near Vega would hold hundreds of millions of similar solar systems.<sup>25</sup>

**Area of our Solar System.**—Yet our own solar system with its sun, eight planets, twenty-seven moons and eight hundred asteroids occupies an area whose diameter is approximately 6,000,000,000 miles<sup>26</sup> and "the power developed by a million Niagaras in a million years would not equal the energy expended by the Earth in a single second as it circles around the sun."<sup>27</sup>

**Our Atmosphere.**—As part of the Earth-aura, our atmosphere extends upwards of 40 miles and more<sup>28</sup> and is the great protection against too rapid loss of Earth's heat by radiation.

**Human evolutionary evidences.**—Humanity is progressing, is in a state of continuous change and transition. Physical indications are not wanting. The differentiation between hands and feet

in Man is pronounced. The hands are able to perform the most delicate manipulations, but in his advance from earlier types Man has lost the power to flex his toes to the same degree of facility. Man can join his thumb and little finger, but the orang utang with the same bones and muscles cannot do so. An examination of human skeletons shows that the first seven pairs of ribs join the breast bone, whereas all of them once did. The finger and toe nails are the refined evolutionary resultant of the claws with which Man once tore his food. Human teeth are the modified placoid scales still found in sharks. The canine teeth are the oldest survivals and are a reminder of the day when all teeth were "sharp-pointed, hold-fast organs." The development of the molars and incisors is the result of the gradually refined process of mastication.<sup>29</sup>

**Teeth.**—Formerly Man had, as do the sharks, row after row of teeth in reserve. Now he has but one replacement, the "permanent" teeth which replace the so-called "milk-teeth." The late



FIG. 65  
HOW THE HUMAN FACIAL ANGLE WAS EVOLVED.  
(After Witkowski.)

appearance of the wisdom teeth and sometimes their failure to appear at all may be an evidence that in continuance of this deleting phase of evolution, future man may be toothless. At least when he ceases to be carnivorous he may expect great modifications in his teeth. It is also interesting to note that the vertebrae of the spinal column decrease with age and growth. A baby has thirty-three or four, while in young manhood they are reduced to twenty-six.<sup>30</sup> Also in the higher mammals the persistence of the seven cervical vertebrae has been pointed out by Dr. A. B. Allen.

**Skull.**—The skull always furnishes most interest to the student. The diagram outlines its development from the fish stage. Bones grow principally by being broken down, and this furnishes the greatest opportunity for evolving Man to effect the necessary

changes in his Physical Body, as he builds and rebuilds from incarnation to incarnation. The jaw of the baby, for instance, does not grow by simply being added to. On the contrary, all the material of which it is composed is gradually broken down little by little and reassembled before the adult jawbone is formed.

**Osteoblastic cells.**—This reassembling of the bone tissue is performed by cells designated as osteoblasts, and the breaking down by cells called osteoclasts. When the activities of the latter predominate, the bones shrink, and this we see exemplified in ex-



FIG. 66  
SECTIONAL VIEW OF HUMAN BONE, SHOWING NATURE'S  
MARVELOUS ENGINEERING AND STRUCTURAL SKILL

treme old age when chin and nose sometimes almost seem to meet, especially if the teeth are gone.<sup>31</sup> Besides this, we have the complete renewal of the Physical Body every seven years.

**Blood cells.**—This process is especially interesting when we consider the purpose of the bones besides that of support. This purpose is the production of red blood cells in their marrow tissue. The number of these red blood cells, exclusive of the white corpuscles produced and the number regulated by the spleen, is about 75,000,000,000.<sup>32</sup> Each cell is known to live but ten days and therefore a new supply must be constantly coming from the bone marrow. The chief purpose of the white corpuscles, it may be explained, is to fight disease.<sup>33</sup>

**Natural and artificial light.**—Another evolutionary phase which ordinarily goes unnoticed is man's adaptation to the use of artificial light, thus lengthening the hours of his activity and productiveness; while the animals and vegetable life forms are still obedient to primal conditions and regulate their activities by the rising and the setting of the sun. This adaptation to artificial light has been applied to stimulating hens to lay more than their ordinary daily quota of eggs.

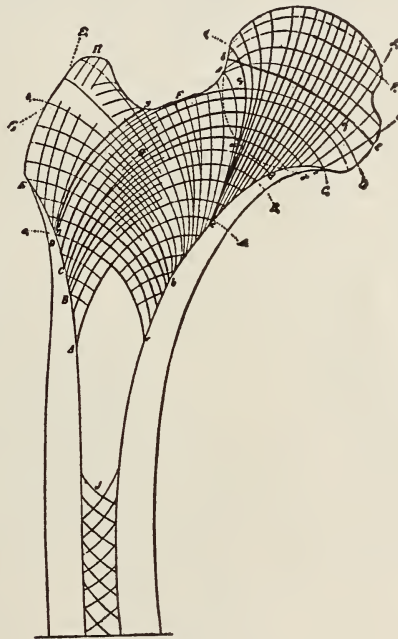


FIG. 67

DIAGRAMMATIC SECTION OF FIG. 66 SHOWING WONDERFUL PLAN OF BONE STRUCTURE, AS CAREFULLY DETERMINED BY NATURE AS THOUGH BY THE MOST SKILFUL ENGINEER. ANOTHER EVIDENCE OF THE DIRECTIVE INTELLIGENCE OPERATING THROUGH WHAT ARE COMMONLY CALLED THE "FORCES OF NATURE."

**Additional evolutionary reminders.**—A reminder of our great progress that also remains overlooked is the thickness of the skin on the soles of our feet. This is not due, as ordinarily supposed, to the constant pressure upon them of the weight of the body, but is a persistence of one of the amphibian forms of man in his ascent, called the "Mud-puppy," which had thickened soles. Our feet have changed in shape, but have never fully relinquished the thickness of skin for the delicacy which the other parts of the



FIG. 68  
MESA VERDE CLIFF DWELLINGS, ANCIENT REMAINS OF A  
PRE-HISTORIC RACE IN COLORADO.

—(Photo by J. Walter Fewkes, Ph.D., Courtesy Scientific American.)

body have attained.<sup>34</sup> The fact that man has hair on the chest but not on the back is a result of his earlier life when the chest muscles and arms required full play, while the back needed



to be covered for protection. This subject of the human hair is exceedingly important, for it gives many clues to man's ancestry, prominent among which is the fact, for instance, that the hair on the arm runs from shoulder to elbow, while from the wrist it runs to the elbow, similar to the course noted on the anthropoids.<sup>35</sup>

**Pre-historic Man, Grand Gulch, Utah.**—Nature is persistent in her evolutionary urge, and yet extremely reticent in relinquishing any well established forms. The study of the skulls and remains of the pre-historic race recently discovered in Grand Gulch, southeastern Utah, antedating even the cliff-dwellers, proves to a great extent Man's evolution not from the monkey, but independently from a high order of aboriginal anthropoids. The Cro-Magnon men of the Cro-Magnon races found in Europe were fully equal to the highest existing human races so far as skull development and



FIG. 69  
THE CASA GRANDE RUIN. RELICS OF A PRE-HISTORIC RACE  
IN SOUTHERN ARIZONA, COVERING 620 ACRES.

cranial possibilities are concerned, while the Neanderthal men, also found in Europe, were lower than any existing human races.<sup>36</sup> Both were of the Pleistocene sub-division.

Our world is growing bigger and better, Man is advancing, and all the lower Kingdoms are in close pursuit. Our earth has an area of about 200,000,000 square miles.\* On this target are being thrown planetary fragments, exclusive of the planetary dust, amounting to the enormous number of 146,000,000,000 per annum.<sup>37</sup> Little by little this accumulation with its psychometric values is exercising a definite influence upon our environment, imperceptible now, but later on bringing into our mental sphere the

\*To be exact, 196,940,000 square miles.

aura of other worlds. Man is improving, perfecting, discarding the obsolete, developing the newer and better forms and mental characteristics.

**Man leads and prepares the way.**—Man has prepared the way for the lower Kingdoms to progress much more rapidly. What he has accomplished through incredible time periods lower forms are already attaining. In the micro-organism *Freia-elegans*, a ciliated infusorian of the family of Stentoides, Claparede and Lachmann have described a visual organ or eye, “immediately behind the point of truncation” in “a lunate spot of intense black.”<sup>38</sup> This is the exact manner in which sight was first developed in the time approximately beginning with the later Lemurians and definitely accomplished by the early Atlanteans.



FIG. 70  
SPERMATOZOA, HUMAN, RECENT AND DRIED.

(After Hollick.)

**Man repeats the activities of the lower cells.**—Man repeats on a large scale the activities of the cells that compose his substance. The male seeks the female in copulation. The female is actuated by two sets of motor impulses, one to receive the advances of the male, the other to repel them, although the latter is more seeming than real. The male seeks energetically. So likewise do the cellular elements in creative activity. “The spermatozoid and the ovule . . . repeat on a small scale what the two individuals perform in their larger sphere. Thus, it is the spermatozoid that, in its capacity of male element, goes in quest of the female. It possesses, in view of the journeys it has to make, organs of locomotion that are lacking in the female and useless to

it. The spermatozoid of man and of a great number of mammals is equipped with a long tail, the end of which describes a circular conical movement, which together with its rotation about its axis, determines the forward movement of the spermatozoid. (In search of the egg.) The same mode of progression is seen in the zoospores of Algae and in Mastigophores, which are armed with flagella."<sup>39</sup>

**Importance of cell activities; Basis of organic life in protoplasm.**—In spite of possible concepts to the contrary, we have not laid too much stress on the importance of cell activity nor of reproductive processes in these Instructions, for the basis of organic life activities in manifestation or concrete expression are embodied therein. Science has made great advances in its knowledge of the composition of protoplasm. Dr. MacDougal has found

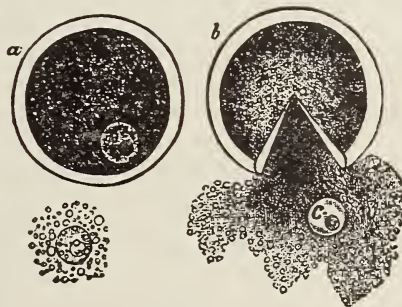


FIG. 71

HUMAN EGG, OR OVUM. a. SHOWS THE PARENT CELL CONTAINING THE PRIMITIVE GERM. b. THE PARENT CELL RUPTURED AND THE OVUM ESCAPING. THIS IS THE FIRST STAGE OF A POSSIBLE FUTURE HOMO. THE OVUM IS SHOWN HIGHLY MAGNIFIED.  
—(After Hollick.)

that the living matter of plants was composed of three principal substances, “the pentoses of mucilages, the albumens of their derivatives and some fatty substances.” The protoplasm of most plants is composed largely of the first named group of substances, of which a common example is gum arabic. These three main components do not dissolve or diffuse into each other, and hence exist simply as finely divided particles intimately mixed, and the surfaces between the particles of different kinds of matter give opportunity for the play of molecular forces which constitute the essential energy of protoplasm.

**Not a universal formula.**—Protoplasm made up in this way is sometimes miscible or soluble in water, and at other times not. . . . It is not to be taken for granted that this is a universal

formula. Specialized organs, or cells, eggs, spores, pollen cells, etc., may have a protoplasm in which the protein material may make up almost the entire solid matter.<sup>40</sup>

**What Rosicrucians teach.**—It is the Rosicrucian teaching that protoplasm will be found to be the material basis of life, all its component parts being differentiations of the primal substance, with Heredity-Chromatin Energy as the motive power, and the Cell as the vehicle, that form the key to the mysteries of manifested organic life.

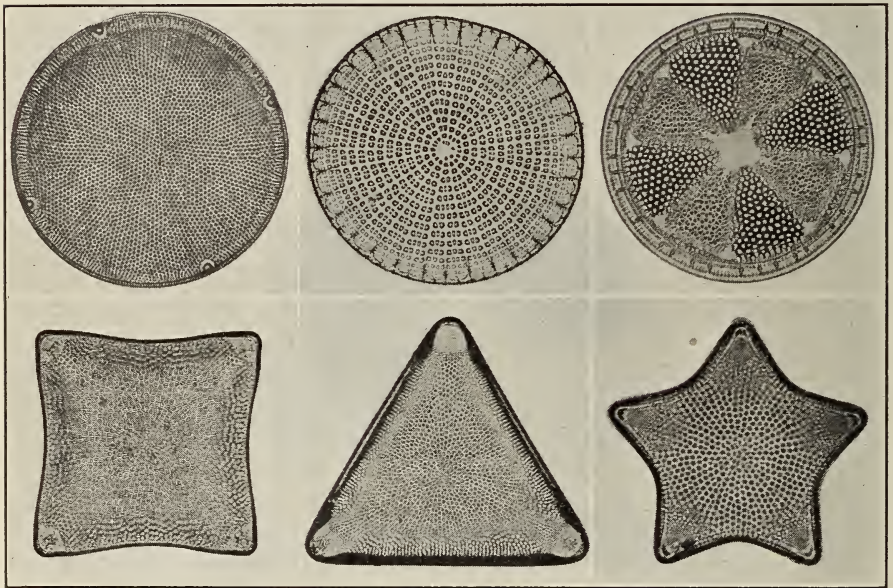


Fig. 72

DIATOMACEAE. FROM MICROPHOTOGRAPHS BY P. O. GRAVELLE. UPPER ROW; LEFT TO RIGHT.—AULACODISCUS RADIATUS, TAMPA BAY, FLA. ARACHNOIDISCUS INDICUS, EHR., SENDAI, JAPAN. ACTINOPTYCHUS HELIOPELTA, EHR., LOWER.—TRIGONIUM ARCTICUM, (*Bright*) CL., SENDAI, JAPAN, AS ALSO THE TWO FOLLOWING.

**Adherence to PLAN of Crystalloidal Matter; Diatomaceae.**—No organisms better illustrate the adherence to the plan of crystalloidal matter mentioned on page 256 of this Instruction, and previously, than the low types known as diatoms, or the diatomaceae. The diatomaceae are microscopic unicellular algae inhabiting fresh and salt water. Each individual or frustule consists of two more or less symmetrical silicified halves.<sup>41</sup>

**Where found.**—Diatoms, radiolarians and sponges “have skeletons composed of hydrated silica, mineralogically opal, and are

found principally in the environment of granitic and other igneous rocks, the essential constituents of these rocks being the lime-soda feld spars from which the sodium of the ocean has since been leached. Waters issuing from such rocks are, as a rule, relatively richer in silica than waters issuing from modern sedimentary areas."<sup>42</sup>

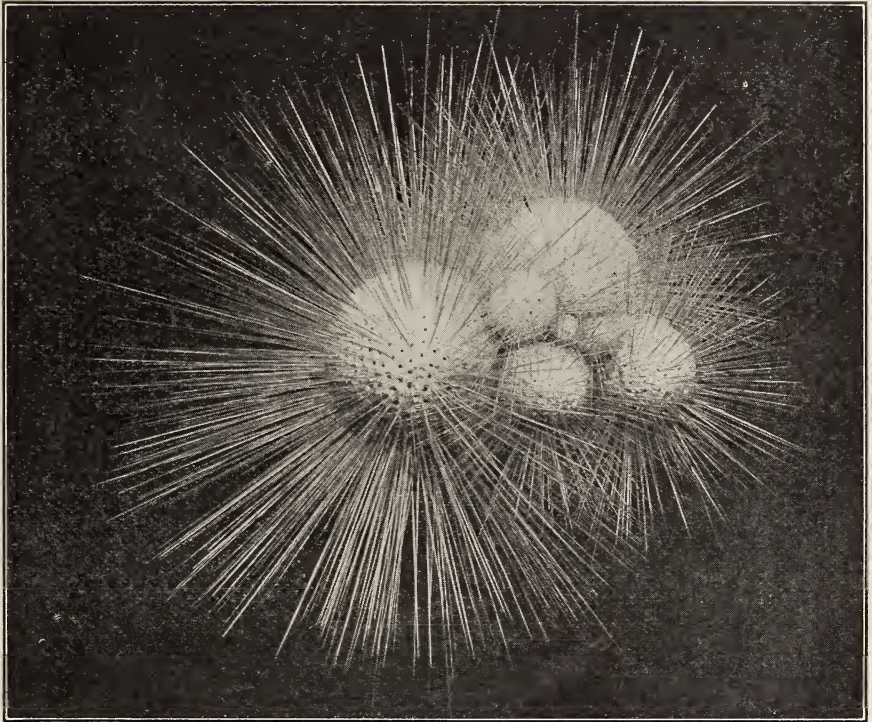


FIG. 73  
GLASS MODEL OF A FORAMINIFERA; GLOBIGERINA  
BULLOIDES.  
—(Courtesy of the American Museum of Natural History, N. Y.)

**What they indicate.**—Small as they are, these diatoms and other micro-organisms indicate how man has utilized all the gradually accreting chemical compounds in his ascent from “original slime,” for to imagine the earth in its primitive, exoterically lifeless state we must, as Prof. Osborn says, “subtract all those portions of mineral deposits which as they exist today are mainly of organic origin, such as the organic carbonates and phosphates of lime, the carbonaceous limestones, the graphites derived from carbon, the silicates derived from diatoms, the iron deposits made by

bacteria, the humus of the soil containing organic acids, the soil derived from the rocks which are broken up by the bacteria, and even the ooze from the ocean floor, both calcareous and silicious, formed from the shells of foraminifera and the skeletons of diatoms."

**Earth's surface primitively different.**—"Thus, before the appearance of bacteria, of algae, of foraminifera, and of the lower plants and lowly derived invertebrates, the surface of the earth was totally different from what it is at present; and thus the present chemical composition of terrestrial matter, of the sea and of the air . . . is by no means the same as its primordial composition 80,000,000 years ago.<sup>43</sup>



FIG. 74  
 CHANGES IN THE EARTH'S CRUST,  
 RIPPLE MARKS ON LEDGES AT AUSABLE CHASM.  
 THESE ARE NOT ALONE OF GEOLOGICAL INTEREST BUT  
 ALSO AS MUTE EVIDENCES OF A PERIOD WHEN THE  
 PROPORTION OF WATER TO LAND DISTRIBUTION  
 WAS MUCH GREATER THAN NOW.

(Photo by Parsell.)

**Ocean originally fresh; Volume of salt and origin.**—Assuming on the consensus of best authority that the ocean, primitively a fresh-water body, is less than 100,000,000 years old, and that it has received approximately 63,000,000 tons of sodium yearly, which has united with its equivalent of chlorine to form the salt (NaCl) of the sea, we may understand how the ocean itself has been no slight contributory to the evolutionary processes and the liberation of the Mineral Spirits. Analyses of ocean water and the body fluid of the highest animals, the blood serum, shows interesting comparisons. The table is appended:

**Table of Comparisons between Sea-Water and Blood serum.—**

Life Elements	Sea Water	Blood Serum
Sodium .....	30.59	39.0
Magnesium .....	3.79	0.4
Calcium .....	1.20	1.0
Potassium .....	1.11	2.7
Chlorine .....	55.27	45.0
SO <sub>4</sub> (Sulphur Tetroxide) .....	7.66	.....
CO <sub>3</sub> (Carbon Trioxide) .....	0.21	12.0
Bromine .....	0.19	.....
P <sub>2</sub> O <sub>5</sub> (Phosphorus Pentoxide) .....	.....	0.4 <sup>44</sup>

**What Rosicrucianism emphasizes.**—Many excellent occult writers assume to deal intimately with vast periods in creative and evolutionary progress, but ignore the minutiae and detail. Rosicrucianism is actively interested in all such time periods, world planes or regions, regional sub-divisions, etc., but while it realizes the importance of recognizing in the Sun the parent of our solar system it also emphasizes the necessity for an accurate knowledge of all forms of life upon our own planet as the immediate, definite, tangible basis of our knowledge of Man's true ancestry.

**Importance of the Algae; Carbon and Crust Formers.**—Therefore in the study of Man's evolutionary progress as an organic being comprehending within himself both material and spiritual natures and elements, Rosicrucianism invites the student to contemplate—not so much his lofty position as a human being, but the simple Algae of which mention has already been made. They, with the diatoms and bacteria as carbon-formers, anticipated the animal world as factors in the actual formation of the Earth's crust.<sup>45</sup>

**Primordial Seas.**—The surface of primordial continental seas was literally covered with minute algae which served principally as food for the floating protozoa, while the diatoms, minute, floating plants "especially characteristic of the cooler seas," formed the siliceous ooze bottoms.<sup>46</sup>

**First forms of life upon our planet.**—The answer to the query, "what was the first form of life found upon our planet?" is answered by the study of the algae. Prof. Loeb states that "in 1883 the small island of Krakatoa was destroyed by the most violent volcanic eruption on record. A visit to the island two months after the eruption showed that the three islands were covered with pumice and layers of ash reaching on an average a thickness of thirty meters and frequently sixty meters."<sup>47</sup> Of

course all life on the islands was extinct. When Treub in 1886 first visited the island, he found that the blue-green algae were the first colonists on the pumice and on the exposed blocks of rock in the ravines on the mountain slopes. Investigations made during subsequent expeditions demonstrated the association of diatoms and bacteria (with the algae).<sup>48</sup>

“The algae referred to were, according to Euler, of the nostoc type. Nostoc does not require sugar, since it can produce that



FIG. 75  
NAHANT, MASS. FRONT VIEW OF TIDE POOL GROUP, SHOW-  
ING ENTIRE GROUP FROM ABOVE WATER SURFACE.  
—(Courtesy of the American Museum of Natural History, N. Y.)

compound from the  $\text{CO}_2$  of the air by the activity of its chlorophyll. This organism possesses also the power of assimilating the free nitrogen of the air. From these observations and because the Nostocaceae generally appear as the first settlers on sand, the conclusion has been drawn that they or the group of Schizophyceae to which they belong FORMED THE FIRST SETTLERS OF OUR PLANET.”<sup>49</sup>

**Prof. Loeb’s explanation.**—Referring once more to the statement that “living matter displays the energy of colloidal and the



plan of crystalloidal matter” and realizing that Man is the epitome of differentiation between living and non-living matter, we may accept the explanation of Prof. Loeb, that “the essential difference between living and non-living matter consists then in this: the living cell synthesizes its own complicated specific material from indifferent or non-specific simple compounds of the surrounding medium, while the crystal simply adds the molecules found in its super-saturated solution. This synthetic power of transforming



FIG. 76  
A LIVING ALGAL POOL COLONY.

(Photo by Parsell.)

small “building stones” into the complicated compounds specific for each organism is the “secret of life,” or rather one of the “secrets of life.”<sup>50</sup>

**Man becomes proud, then humble.**—Man may view with pride his present lofty position in the evolutionary status of life; he may view with pride the really marvelous products of his brain and hand co-operating, but he becomes humble when he realizes through a study of earlier forms from the most minute, through the most gigantic, that his present form, composition and mental status is resultant only upon the destruction and abolition of incalculable myriads of previous types or models.

**Archetypes only, are prepared in the Inner Worlds.**—Many students of occult science have come to believe themselves so close to the “inner worlds” that they look with disdain on the salient facts and truths, stranger than any fiction, of the physical world. It is a popularly accepted belief among many students of Rosicrucian and Theosophic literature, that all the work of building new types, forms and human bodies is done while in the archetypal regions of the inner worlds.

**Their realization is the function of the Physical World.**—The belief just referred to is founded on misconception of all the conditions involved. The archetypes of new forms, types and better vehicles, physical and otherwise, ARE devised and instituted in the appropriate region therefor in the inner worlds, but the tangible realization or accomplishment of them IS CARRIED OUT IN THE PHYSICAL WORLD.

**New bodies come only by evolutionary process.**—Because Egos who are now in the spiritual regions may be studying how to build better bodies for a future incarnation, it does not mean that they will be able in that incarnation to construct exactly the vehicle they now devise or think out. Before them are set, by the Hierarchies, examples of highly developed bodies that will be the types extant in future ages, BUT THE ATTAINMENT OF THOSE TYPES WILL HAVE TO BE WORKED OUT BY THE SLOW PROCESS OF EVOLUTION IN AGES TO COME, just as we have worked up to our present status through ages past and through countless primary forms and types.

**Our ancestor, the Shark.**—Man may learn of his future by studying his past, and it is for this reason that the Rosicrucian philosophy lays such stress on the importance of knowledge of our earlier and evolutionary form. Man laughs with amusement when he is told by science that the common hen is a first cousin to the alligator,<sup>59</sup> but he is apt to resent the idea that he, in common with the hen, has inherited definite characteristics, cerebral and anatomical, from the shark. Yet this dreaded amphibian is the primordial ancestor from whom much of the present organic life has inherited well defined features.

**Ears and Movable Jaws.**—To the shark we owe our ears and movable jaws. The real beginnings of the true brain as such go back to the worm *Amphioxus*, while in the common ancestors of the shark and man two structural developments of great importance appear. The first, as stated, is the development of ears, the

shark being the only fish with true ears. Secondly the development of the hinged jaw, movable at will and PERMITTING THE DEVELOPMENT OF SPEECH. The leverage power of the human jaw is estimated at 10 lbs. That of the shark is 162 times greater.<sup>51</sup>

**Tuatera; Pineal or Third Eye.**—Men smile with condescension at the idea of a “third eye” when informed as to past functions of the Pineal Gland. Yet in the American Museum of Natural History, New York, in 1916, there were two specimens of the rare and almost extinct Tuatera, or “*Sphenodon punctatum*,” of New Zealand, looking exactly as did its ancestors of 6,000,000 years ago in Jurassic times.<sup>52</sup>

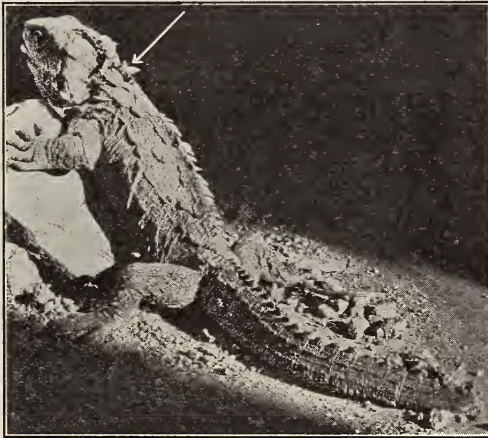


FIG. 77

TUATERA. SPHENODON PUNCTATUM. NEW ZEALAND. THE ARROW POINTS TO THE PINEAL EYE.

—(Courtesy of the American Museum of Natural History, N. Y.)

**Pineal Eye and Third Optic Nerve.**—In this little “monster” of about two feet in length, the Pineal Eye was quite prominent, situated at the union of neck and body; a round protuberance of approximately the size of a homeopathic pill, grayish in color and covered with translucent skin. In every animal with a backbone there is a third optic nerve, and the modern discoveries concerning the importance of the Pineal Gland in Man show his inheritance from the past, of powerful, potent faculties, NOW DORMANT.

**The Trilobite.**—An example of the myriad processes and types through which the Life Wave has worked its way in evolutionary

progress is shown by the Insecta. The forms, types and species are almost innumerable, yet in the Trilobite we have the Father of all the insects of to-day.<sup>53</sup>

Nature is at least consistent. The multitudinous phases of evolutionary process through which the lower forms up to the human have progressed are illustrated in every classification. We have shown examples of the Insecta, Reptilian and Amphibian forms.

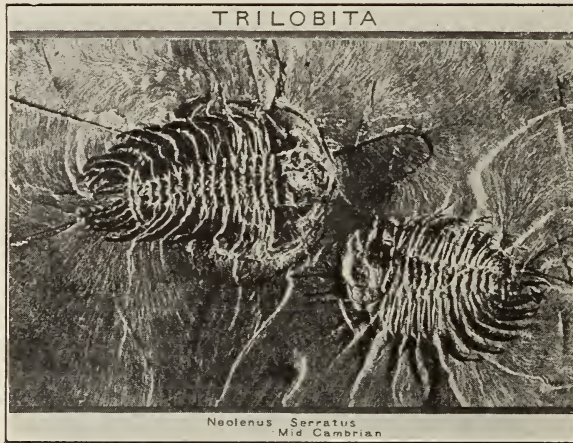


FIG. 78

TRILOBITE. (*Trilobita neolenus*.)

—(Courtesy of the American Museum of Natural History, N. Y.)

**Evolution of the Horse; Eohippus.**—The same is illustrated in the evolution of the horse. From the “Dawn Horse” of Wyoming, known as the “Eohippus,” no larger than a small fox terrier, and with four toes, to the splendid companion of man of today is at least 3,000,000 years.<sup>54</sup> Evolution is a slow but sure process and the differentiation both as to size, anatomical development and intelligence in the case of the horse is paralleled by the similar evolution of Man from pre-historic times to his present attainment. From both of these examples we may assume equal differentiation in as many ages to come, and therefore to a development, expansion, mental and intellectual growth beyond our present imagination.

**Principle underlies everything.**—The examples and instances cited in these Instructions are not presented for the purpose of furnishing interesting reading, but to emphasize the importance of

one thing—PRINCIPLE. In this case it is the Principle underlying all the transitional forms, types and species which have contributed to give the homo his present place “in the sun.” Principle is everything, underlies everything; “therefore, if we study the principle which is the foundation of the universal law, we shall understand Man’s relationships to the universe. Study of Principle leads to comprehension OF DETAIL, BECAUSE DETAIL IS BUT THE WORKING OUT OF PRINCIPLE IN ALL THE VARIED PHASES OF LIFE MANIFESTATION.”<sup>55</sup>

THE AMERICAN MUSEUM OF NATURAL HISTORY, NEW YORK.

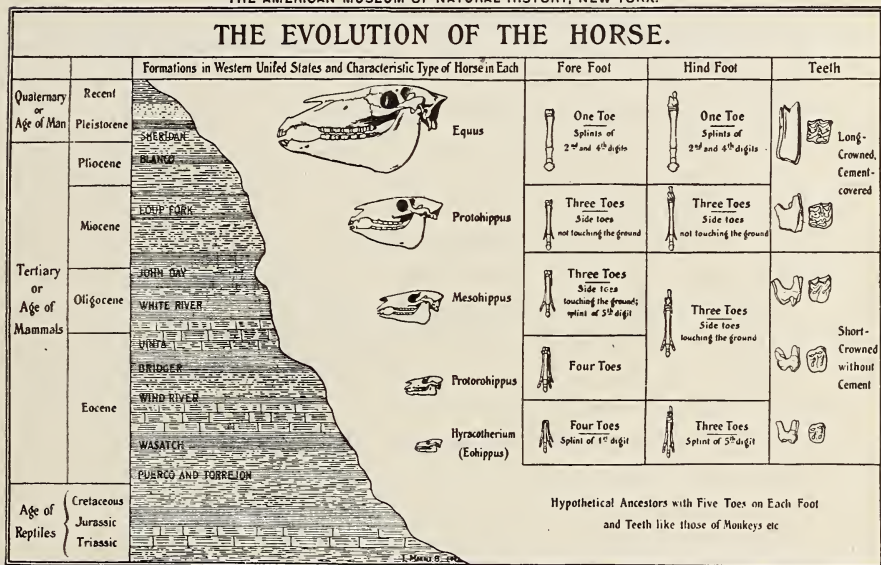


FIG. 79  
 CHART SHOWING THE EVOLUTIONARY DEVELOPMENT  
 OF THE HORSE.  
 —(Courtesy of the American Museum of Natural History, N. Y.)

**Catching vibrations from Nature’s Thought Waves.**—Matter and Energy being considered as two phases of the same condition, we may say that Nature, or the Expression of the Divine Intelligence, has vibrated from original Matter or Cosmic Root Substance, everything into being, from the condensation of atomic nebulae to suns and planets. And when our individual comprehension becomes attuned to the higher phases of being, the scientific-spiritual state of consciousness, we may catch vibrations from Nature’s “infinite thought waves” and then shall we truly know that all Life is related, not bound by earthly or material laws or limitations, and our thoughts may penetrate the realms of the universe and solve the sublime mystery of its yet unknown laws.

## QUESTIONS ON INSTRUCTION No. 11

1. What is Humanity said to be?
2. What two interims between Involution and Evolution are noted?
3. How does the Mineral Spirit adjust itself?
4. How is assimilation by Vegetable and Animal spirits effected?
5. What does living matter display?
6. What is the evolution of living matter?
7. With what is each separate cell invested?
8. In treating of the cell, what physical correspondencies are given?
9. What cell correspondencies are given?
10. What egg correspondencies are given?
11. How many stages in the descent of the human race have been traced by Haeckel?
12. What does every homo recapitulate?
13. What was the origin of the power of selection?
14. To what is the cell consciousness inferior?
15. Is the present human form its final one?
16. Are there such things as cast off human models? If so, how may that be?
17. Define Ontogeny, Phylogeny and Epigenesis.
18. What are "degenerate forms"?
19. Give examples of them.
20. What are vestigial or rudimentary organs?
21. What was the discovery of Goethe regarding the human skull?
22. Of what importance to man was the ascent of the spiritual currents?
23. Give examples of the rudimentary organs.
24. What significance have our ear lobes?
25. What is the third eye-lid?
26. What evidences do we find among reptiles?
27. What evidences do we find among plants?
28. What discovery of Goethe's can be found in human embryos?
29. What are the vertebrae coccygeae?
30. What was the origin of the mammary glands?
31. What significance have gill-clefts for us?
32. What is the esoteric meaning of the "Cable-tow"?
33. What are the human prostate and clitoris said to be?
34. What is meant by Urschleim or Original Slime?

35. What are the Infusoria?
36. On what did Cuvier, Linnaeus and Agassiz agree?
37. What is each cell said to be?
38. What sexual differentiation is noted by Rosicrucian science?
39. Give examples of Hermaphroditism in the Kingdoms.
40. What is the transition phase to sexual separation?
41. Who were the Luciferians?
42. What was the Fall of Man?
43. What was the Temptation of Adam and Eve?
44. What is meant by Salvation and Redemption?
45. Give an example of the transformation of sex.
46. What is the importance of this experiment?
47. What psychic and mental indications are present?
48. Explain Gonochorismus.
49. Explain Parthenogenesis.
50. How does every male have a female nature and vice versa?
51. Do incarnations alternate strictly as to sex?
52. Explain effeminacy.
53. Name some secondary sexual characteristics.
54. How is the homo differentiated?
55. What is at-one-ment?
56. How does one species react on another?
57. Instance some natural protective conditions.
58. Explain the "porcupine family."
59. Give an additional definition of evolution.
60. What is the extent of some notable solar eruptions?
61. What is the status of the human mind stuff?
62. What are the relative measurements of the atom and electron?
63. What is the area of our solar system?
64. How high does our atmosphere extend?
65. Give some human evolutionary evidences.
66. What do the human teeth indicate?
67. Is the human skull of steady, permanent growth?
68. What are osteoblastic and osteoclastic cells?
69. Where do the blood cells originate?
70. What does the use of artificial light indicate?
71. Give additional evidences of human evolution.
72. What does the pre-historic man of Grand Gulch indicate and help to prove?
73. What is man's mission in evolution?
74. What does man repeat and how?

75. Where is the basis of organic life found?
76. What do Rosicrucians teach regarding Protoplasm?
77. What are the diatomaceae?
78. What do they indicate?
79. What is the origin and volume of ocean salt?
80. Give comparisons between ocean water and human blood.
81. What is the importance of the Algae?
82. What was the first form of life on our planet?
83. How and where are archetypes worked out?
84. What is the importance to the student, of the shark?
85. What is the Tuatera?
86. What confirmation have we of the ultimate destiny of our planet?
87. What is it that underlies all, and is to be studied above all?





## INSTRUCTION XII.

### ROSICRUCIANISM AND RELIGION.

AGREEMENT BETWEEN OCCULT AND ACADEMIC SCIENCE, POINTS OF CONTACT, DEVELOPMENT, THE KABBALAH, THE NOBLE EIGHT-FOLD PATH OF BUDDHISM, CONCENTRATION.

---

**No conflict between Academic and Occult Science.**—Between legitimate occult science and academic science there should be no conflict and only such controversy as may lead to closer examinations of the premises of both schools. Especially is this true in regard to Rosicrucian science, and in the preceding Instructions we have endeavored to cite the many instances where the teachings of the Brotherhood are confirmed by the findings and conclusions of academic science.

**Rosicrucianism, the Egyptian Wisdom Teaching.**—The Rosicrucian philosophy, while often termed the “Western Wisdom Religion,” might be more accurately designated as the “Egyptian Wisdom Teaching.” For it is distinctly the cultus of the Egyptian Mysteries in contradistinction to the Hindu school. Rosicrucianism, while defined in Instruction No. 1 as having for its subject Man, is in reality a synthesis of Science, Religion and Philosophy, and furnishes innumerable points of contact between all three. It thus offers a common ground of association for all earnest truth seekers, regardless of previous religious or philosophical and present scientific affiliations.

**Rosicrucianism and Religion are identical in purpose.**—Both seek closer knowledge of God. Religion seeks through faith. Rosicrucianism seeks through the demonstrable and revealed evidences of His power and activity, especially through the study and knowledge of God’s image—Man.

To the truth seeker, regardless of whatever religious associations he may have sustained, Rosicrucianism will give a broader outlook and concept of the revealed evidences of Deity in the natural world.

In the Rosicrucian teachings the popular concepts of Father, Son and Holy Ghost are broadened into a reasonable comprehension of just who these exalted beings really are; their place, time and present status in evolution; their relationships to humanity, and their offices and responsibilities thereto.

**Rosicrucian concept of God.**—God, as popularly conceived by orthodox religion, is seen in the Rosicrucian teachings to be the Architect of our Solar System, not of the Universe, nor yet of the Cosmos, but merely an expression of a vastly greater Trinity. Everywhere in Rosicrucian Science the student finds the expression of the Trinity, Three in One and One expressed in Three.

**The Smaragdine Tablet.**—Father, Son and Holy Ghost form the inseparable triad of the past evolutionary periods of our earth. The three-fold Body, three-fold Spirit and three-fold Soul form the trinitarian composite known as Man. God, the Supreme Being, and finally the Absolute, compose the Trinity of Deific Beings whom the Rosicrucian terms God. Thus "God," as understood by the Rosicrucians, is not simply the Creator of our little Solar System, but the Absolute expressing in threefold manifestation, to which Man conforms in obedience to the Hermetic Law, "as above, so below." This law, although found elsewhere in the Hermetic Writings on which Rosicrucianism is fundamentally based, is also found in amplified form in the Smaragdine Tablet or emerald table found in the tomb of Hermes, a cave near Hebron, discovered, according to Albertus Magnus, by Alexander the Great. The tablet bears thirteen sentences in Phoenician characters, as follow:

1. I speak not fictitious things, but what is true and most certain.
2. What is below is like that which is above, and what is above is like that which is below, to accomplish the miracles of one thing.
3. And as all things were produced by the mediation of one Being, so all things were produced from this one thing by adaptation.
4. Its Father is the Sun, its Mother is the Moon; the Wind carries it in its belly, its Nurse is the Earth.
5. It is the Cause of all Perfection throughout the whole world.
6. Its power is perfect if it be changed into earth.
7. Separate the earth from the Fire, the subtle from the gross, acting prudently and with judgment.

8. Ascend with the greatest sagacity from the earth to heaven, and then again descend to the earth and unite together the powers of things superior and things inferior. Thus you will obtain the glory of the whole world, and all obscurity will fly far away from you.
9. This thing is the fortitude of all fortitude, because it overcomes all subtle things and penetrates every solid thing.
10. Thus were all things created.
11. Thence proceed wonderful adaptations which are produced in this way.
12. Therefore am I called Hermes Trismegistus, possessing the three parts of the philosophy of the whole world.
13. That which I had to say concerning the operation of the Sun is completed.

An exegesis of this tablet belongs to a later volume in this series, dealing exclusively with the Hermetic teachings of the Rosicrucian Order, but the student will see from the lines given the close approximation with the esoteric teachings of all genuine world religions.

**The Kabbalah.**—Neither is Rosicrucianism a form of Kabbalism or the study of the Kabbalah (Quabbalah, Cabala, etc.), exclusively as such. A study of the Kabbalah is included in its general inquiry into the esotericism of religious thought, as revealed by the study of Comparative Religion, but Kabbalism is not made an integral part of the Rosicrucian philosophy. Rosicrucianism originated among the sacerdotal castes of antiquity, and attained its fullest development in the person of "C. R. C.," of whom more will be said in the final Instruction.

Since the Christian era, however, and until early in the present century, exoteric Rosicrucianism has been composed almost exclusively of monastic brethren, many of its Initiates having been Abbots, Bishops, and, it is believed on excellent historical evidence, one a Pope.

The study of the Kabbalah, while not a part of the strict Rosicrucian curriculum, is, however, excellent when taken in connection with a critical exegesis of Hermeticism, and this plan the modern Brotherhood in the Outer follows to a considerable extent.

The Kabbalah is not easy to sum up in outline. The word "Kabbalah" denotes first, "reception," then "received by tradition" and by the ancient Jews was applied to the whole of their religious doctrine with the exception of the Pentateuch, and included the Prophets, the Hagiographa and the oral traditions of the Mishnah.

Kabbalism treats of the nature of Deity, Cosmogony, the Divine Emanations or SEPHIROTH, creation of Angels and Man, their Destiny and Revealed Law. According to the Kabbalah, God is conceived as Boundless Being, above everything, and called En Soph. He is the space of the universe, but the universe is not His space.

**The Non-existent desires to Manifest.**—In this state of boundlessness He cannot be described in words or comprehended by the intellect, and as such He was, in a certain sense, AYIN, the non-existent (Zohar, iii-283). To make His existence manifest En Soph had to become active and creative. This involved intention, desire, thought and work, and as these conditions belong to the finite, En Soph had to become operative through ten Sephiroth or Intelligences emanating from him like rays.

The desire to become manifest, and consequently the desire for an idea of creation, was co-eternal with Deity, and the first emanation or manifestation of the primordial will is called the First Sephirah.

**Order of the Sepiroth.**—This First Sephirah, or substance which existed in Deity from eternity, contained nine other Intelligences or Sephiroth. These again, therefore, emanated one from the other, second from the first, third from the second, continuing in this manner up to ten.

These Ten Sephiroth form among themselves a perfect Unity and represent different aspects of one and the same thing. They are:

1. The Crown,	Kether	6. Beauty,	Tiphereth
2. Wisdom,	Chokmah	7. Firmness,	Netzach
3. Intelligence,	Binah	8. Splendor,	Hod
4. Love,	Chesed	9. Foundation,	Yesod
5. Justice,	Geburah	10. Kingdom,	Malkuth.

Their evolution is thus explained:

“When the Holy Aged, the concealed of all concealed, assumed a form, he produced everything in the form of male and female, as things could not continue in any other form. Hence Wisdom, the second Sephirah and the beginning of development, when it

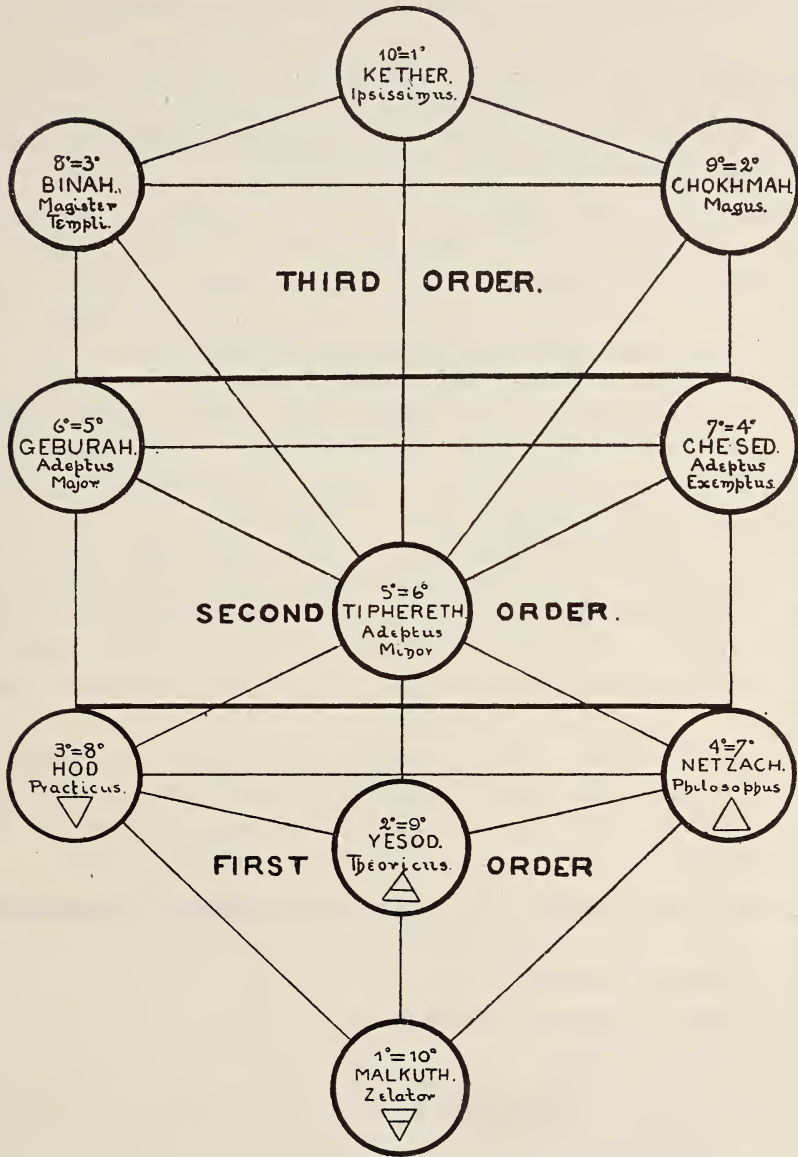


FIG. 80  
THE "SEPHIROTHIC TREE OF LIFE," SHOWING THE SEPHIROTH,  
THE ORDERS AND THE GRADES OF THE PATH.

proceeded from the Holy Aged (i. e., the First Sephirah) emanated in male and female, for Wisdom expanded, and Intelligence, the third Sephirah, proceeded from it, and thus were obtained male and female, viz.: Wisdom the father and Intelligence the mother,

from whose union the other pairs of Sephiroth successively emanated." (Zohar iii-290.) These two opposite potencies, the masculine Wisdom and the feminine Intelligence, Sephiroth Nos. 2 and 3, are joined together by the first potency, the Crown, or Sephirah No. 1; they yield the first triad of the Sephirotic decade, and constitute the divine head of the archetypal man.

**Evolution of the Sephiroth.**—From the junction of Sephiroth Nos. 2 and 3 emanated the masculine potency Love or Mercy (4) and the feminine potency Justice (5), and from the junction of the two latter emanated again the uniting potency Beauty (6). Beauty, the sixth Sephirah, constitutes the chest in the archetypal man and unites Love (4) and Justice (5), which constitute the divine arms, thus yielding the second triad of the Sephiric decade. From this second conjunction emanated again the masculine potency Firmness (7) and the feminine potency Splendor (8), which constitute the divine legs of the archetypal man; and these sent forth Foundation (9), which is the genital organ and medium of union between them, thus yielding the third triad in the Sephirotic decade. Kingdom (10), which emanated from the ninth Sephirah, encircles all the other nine, inasmuch as it is the Schechinah, the divine halo, which encompasses the whole by its all-glorious presence."<sup>1</sup>

**Ezekiel's Vision.**—These ten Sephiroth, termed the World of Emanations, are also called the Primordial, Archetypal or Heavenly Man, and it is this form that is said to have been seen by the Prophet Ezekiel in the mysterious chariot. (Ezek. i, 1-28.)

**The Three Worlds.**—The three triads represent respectively the

- a Intellectual World.
- b Moral or Sensuous World.
- c Material World.

In the Sephirotic or archetypal man, the Sephirah on the right side are masculine and represent Severity. Those on the left are feminine and represent Mercy. The four central Sephiroth represent the principle of Mildness.

**Adam, the Microcosm.**—From the heavenly Adam (i. e., the Sephiroth) was created the earthly Adam, the Microcosm.

This is the merest skeletal digest of the complex and involved philosophy of the Kabbalah, of which both the Sepher Yetzirah and the Sepher Dtzenioutha are treated historically and exegeti-

cally in the regular degrees of the First Grade in the Work of the Brotherhood in America.

**Tetragrammaton.**—Probably the feature of the entire Kabalah that has made the greatest impression on both Jewish and later scholars is the Tetragrammaton, the Hebrew name of Deity, Yod, He, Vau, He, expressed in four letters, IHVH. The true pronunciation is known to but few, and there are at least twenty different mystical pronunciations extant. It is the “secret, sacred, unpronounceable name” to the devout Hebrew. It is capable of twelve transpositions which all convey the meaning of “to be,” and these twelve transpositions are said to correlate with the signs of the Zodiac. They are: IHVH, IHHV, IVHH, HVHI, HVIH, HHIV, VHHI, VIHH, VHIH, HIIHV, HIVH, HHVI. There are also three other tetragrammatic names, AHHI (Existence, Eheieh), ADNI (Adonai, Lord) and AGLA (Aglia), this last a notarikon of the sentence, AThH GBVR LOVLM ADNI, Ateh, Gebor Le-Olahm Adonai; “Thou art mighty forever, O Lord.”<sup>2</sup>

Arcane societies have assumed to find in the Tetragrammaton the so-called “Lost Word,” or “Creative Word.” Its letters embody the human form,



**Abraxas.**—The Sephirotic Emanations call to mind the Greek idea of emanations expressed in the mystic name ABRAXAS. This word or one similar spelled Abrasax has been found engraved on stones called Abraxas Stones, used as amulets and charms by the Basilidean Gnostics. In the Greek notation, the letters make up the number 365, and the Gnostics therefore gave the name to the 365 “Orders” of spirits which, according to their belief, emanated in succession from the Supreme Being. These Orders were supposed to occupy 365 heavens, “each fashioned like, but interior to that above it.” The lowest of these heavens was popularly believed to be the habitat of the spirits who composed the Earth and its inhabitants. Little value, however, attaches to these mystic talismans except as curiosities. Some of the more common specimens have the head of a fowl, arms and bust of a man and the body and tail of a serpent.

**Abracadabra.**—Analogous to the word Abraxas is the magical formula also used by the Gnostics to invoke the aid of beneficent spirit powers against disease and accident. It is often found on the “Abraxas Stones” above mentioned. Precise instructions for its use were given by the Gnostic physician Serenus Sammonicus. To cure fevers and agues the paper on which the word was written was to be folded in the form of a cross, hung from the neck by a linen strip of such length that the paper could rest over the pit of the stomach. It was to be worn nine days and then just before sunrise, was to be cast by the wearer behind him into a stream of running water, flowing easterly. The letters were arranged as follows:

ABRACADABRA  
 ABRACADABR  
 ABRACADAB  
 ABRACADA  
 ABRACAD  
 ABRACA  
 ABRAC  
 ABRA  
 ABR  
 AB  
 A

or

ABRACADABRA  
 BRACADABR  
 RACADAB  
 ACADA  
 CAD  
 A



*La Chausse*

FIG. S1

A GNOSTIC “ABRAXAS” GEM.

While the study of Kabbalism and Gnosticism is not only interesting, but affords a deep insight into the esotericism of the ancient sacred writings and discovers the basis of many mediaeval and modern concepts regarding cosmogony, the Rosicrucian finds of more practical value in assistance toward living the definite life, without which true spiritual progress is impossible, the



teachings of Buddha; not the modern Theosophical interpretations, but his original utterances.

**What Buddha enjoined.**—First of all, in full agreement with the Charge given to every Neophyte in the Rosicrucian Order, Buddha taught that we must not believe a thing merely because it has been said, nor in traditions merely because they have been handed down from antiquity, nor rumors as such, nor writings by



FIG. 82

THE MANDALAY BUDDHA, 2400 YEARS OLD. CAST IN TIME OF BUDDHA HIMSELF WHO WAS SUPPOSED TO HAVE BREATHED HIMSELF INTO THE IMAGE.

(Copyright.)

sages, merely because sages wrote them, nor in fancies that we may suspect to have been inspired; nor from inferences drawn from some haphazard assumption we may have made; nor because of what seems an analogical necessity; nor on the mere authority of our own teachers or masters. We should believe only when our own reason and inner consciousness corroborates the writing, doctrine or saying.

**Meaning of the term Buddha.**—The word Buddha means the “Enlightened,” or one who has attained the perfect wisdom. While

Gautama Siddartha is known as the greatest, there have been many Buddhas. According to the old teaching, a Buddha is one who becomes so imbued with the desire and determination to be such, that he begins at once to live the life that results eventually in his return to earth in a later incarnation fitted to guide humanity in some cycle adapted for special spiritual revelation and manifestation.

**How Buddhahood is attained.**—Those who determine upon the attainment of Buddhahood strive not only throughout the life expression in which their determination is made but also throughout all succeeding incarnations to subdue every passion, gain wisdom from experience and develop the higher faculties. Such a one thus grows wiser, nobler in character and stronger in virtue birth after birth, until he finally reaches the stage when he can become the “Perfected,” Enlightened, All-wise, The Teacher.

**Ignorance.**—Buddhism teaches that ignorance causes most suffering because it makes us prize that which is not worth prizing, grieve for that which should not call forth grief, esteem as real the unreal and illusionary and thus waste our lives in the pursuit of unworthy purposes and objects.

**What is most valuable.**—Correspondingly, that which is most valuable to humanity is to learn the secret of man’s existence and destiny, and to be able to estimate life and its relations at their true value. Thus may we not only attain the greatest happiness but avoid causing all possible suffering to our fellow-men.

**The Four Noble Truths.**—Our ignorance may be dispelled by the knowledge of the “FOUR NOBLE TRUTHS.” These are:

1. “The miseries of evolutionary existence resulting in births and deaths, life after life.
2. The cause, productive of misery, which is the selfish desire, ever renewed, of satisfying one’s self, without being able ever to secure that end.
3. The destruction of that desire, or the estranging of one’s self from it.
4. The means of obtaining this destruction of desire.<sup>3</sup>

**The Noble Eight-Fold Path.**—The conquest over self and desire is to be accomplished through the Noble Eight-fold Path, the eight parts of which are called “angas.” They are:

1. Right Belief (as to the Law of Causation, or Karma).
2. Right Thought.
3. Right Speech.
4. Right Action.
5. Right Means of Livelihood.
6. Right Exertion.
7. Right Remembrance and Self Discipline.
8. Right Concentration of Thought.

**Salvation means Emancipation.**—"The man who keeps these angas in mind and follows them will be free from sorrow and ultimately reach salvation, which in this case means emancipation."<sup>4</sup>

**Buddha's summary.**—Buddha summed up his whole doctrine in one gatha or verse:

Sabba papassa akaranam  
Kusalassa upasampada  
Sachitta pariyo dapanam—  
Etam Buddhanusasanam.

"To cease from all evil actions,  
To generate all that is good,  
To cleanse one's mind;  
This is the constant advice of the Buddhas."<sup>5</sup>

**Synonymous with Rosicrucian teachings.**—These teachings of Buddha as just cited are the clearest possible statement of the teachings of the Rosicrucian Brotherhood. Rosicrucianism teaches that the greatest value to humanity lies in the secret of man's existence and destiny; it seeks to shorten involuntary incarnations by knowledge; it teaches that this process can be effected only through Right Thought, Right Action, Right Feeling and Right Living, exactly in complete accord with the precepts of the Noble Eight-Fold Path. And Rosicrucianism agrees absolutely with Buddha's own summary of his doctrine.

**Buddhism and Rosicrucianism BOTH teach positivity.**—Further than this, Buddhism and Rosicrucianism parallel each other in their admonitions to cultivate POSITIVITY, NOT NEGATIVITY. "To cease from sin" may be desirable, but it is passivity. But "to get virtue" is a POSITIVE ACTION, and Buddha taught that we should not merely be not evil, but that we should be POSITIVELY good.<sup>6</sup>

**The Five Observances.**—Upon the Buddhist laity are enjoined the FIVE OBSERVANCES or universal precepts, which all faithful Buddhists repeat publicly at the Viharas.

1. I observe the precept to refrain from destroying the life of beings.
2. I observe the precept to refrain from stealing.
3. I observe the precept to refrain from *unlawful* sexual intercourse.
4. I observe the precept to refrain from falsehood.
5. I observe the precept to abstain from using intoxicants.<sup>7</sup>

**Karma inescapable.**—The close analogy between the Five Observances and the Ten Commandments of Mosaic Law is obvious. Rosicrucianism and Buddhism are again at one in their insistence that every man receives under the operations of unerring Karma “exactly that reward or punishment which he has deserved, no more, no less. No good deed or bad deed, however trifling and however secretly committed, escapes the evenly balanced scales of Karma, which is a causation operating on the moral as well as on the physical and other planes. Buddhists say there is no miracle in human affairs; what a man sows, that must and will he reap.”<sup>8</sup>

**Meditation.**—Rosicrucianism teaches with Buddhism the value of meditation as the process by which one extinguishes passion and attains knowledge. Meditation has two broad general divisions:

Samatha, The attenuation of passion by leading the holy life and by continued effort to subdue the senses.

Vidarsama, The attainment of supernormal wisdom by reflection; each of these divisions embraces twenty aspects.

**Four other paths.**—The practice of meditation and the precepts and observances lead to four other paths:

1. Sotapatti, The beginning or entering into which follows after one’s clear perception of the Four Noble Truths.
2. Sakardagami, The path of one who has subjugated lust, hatred and the delusion that he need only return once to this world.
3. Anagami, The path of those who have so far conquered self that they need not return to this world.
4. Arhat, The path of him who is free from the necessity of re-incarnation and has capacitated himself to enjoy perfect wisdom, boundless pity for the ignorant and suffering and measureless love for all beings.

**Personal Transmutation.**—With all these teachings Rosicrucianism is in thorough accord, and regards the active prosecution of these developmental processes, moral and ethical, as actually producing PHYSICAL results as well, for it is impossible to raise

the vibrational tone or status of the spiritual self without correspondingly raising the vibrational status of the physical body as well. This complete process the Rosicrucian terms personal **TRANSMUTATION**.

**Another point of contact.**—And even here, the close relationship or point of contact between Rosicrucianism and true Buddhism continues, for against the Rosicrucian concept of Cosmic Root Substance Buddhism places the doctrine, "All things are made of one essence (Swabhava), yet things are different according to the forms which they assume under different impressions."

**Sakya Muni and Meditation.**—Sakya Muni (Buddha) taught that Right Meditation leads to spiritual enlightenment, or the Buddha-like faculty that is inherent in every man, and Rosicrucianism asserts that to whoso is willing to "live the life," the strenuous striving for self-control of all physical and mental conditions that enthrall mankind to materialism, will come spiritual enlightenment regardless of school.

**Rosicrucianism agrees with all religious fundamentals.**—With the fundamentals of all world religions Rosicrucianism is a Unity. This does not mean that it endorses all the foibles of so-called "Churchianity." With the man-made doctrines of salvation, redemption, justification, etc., it has naught to do. There is a real salvation and redemption and they have been explained in the foregoing Instructions, but with the inventions of an inconstant theology that is obliged to change to meet the progressional development of the human mind and the advancement of science Rosicrucianism has no common ground.

**Theological Salvation and Redemption untenable.**—Theological salvation is untenable, for no human soul could be eternally lost even if it desired to be. Salvation being untenable, redemption belongs to the same category. Humanity exists in and of the Being of its great Parent, the Absolute, and no part of the ALL can ever possibly be lost. All is in the ALL, and the ALL is in All.

**There is a true Science of the Soul.**—Yet with the Church, as she was before Oecumenical Councils, wrought havoc with human freedom of thought and before the personal ambitions of human leaders fettered her progress in her divine mission, the Brotherhood has much in common. Rosicrucianism teaches that there is a true science of the soul just as there is a true science of the body, and there is a well defined method of guiding and correcting soul growth, just as there is a corresponding method of guiding and checking bodily growth.

**Rosicrucianism and the Sacraments.**—In this process of soul growth Rosicrucianism asserts the importance of the Seven Sacraments of Holy Church as definite channels through which spiritual power may enter into, nourish, sustain and develop the growing soul of the aspirant.

**Thirty-three Sacraments.**—This is true to such an extent that not only is soul growth taught in the Degrees of the Exoteric and Esoteric side of the Order, but the benefit of the Sacramental System is also offered through the established Holy Orders of the purely religious side of the Brotherhood in the Outer as well. For the Rosicrucian System, recognizing the true value of Sacraments as external, outward visible manifestations of inward spiritual grace, has a well defined code of Thirty-three Sacraments, similar to those of the Greek Occult Church.

**Psychology a misnomer.**—At the present time, although university chairs are endowed for the purpose of teaching it, there is no real Psychology.

The proof of this statement is seen in the meaning of the term itself. "Psychology" means "Soul knowledge or Soul Wisdom." So-called psychology deals with everything BUT the soul. It treats speculatively with the "Me," the "I," the Consciousness, the Senses, Reflexes, the Mentality, etc., but it lets the soul severely alone, and it is well that it does, for the time is not yet when the soul and its spiritual associations and relations has become a matter of authoritative text-book study. Spiritual things are to be discerned only in ONE way—SPIRITUALLY, and to discern them means a long period of spiritual development.

**Brotherhood publishes no formulas for development.**—While many books purport to offer unfailing methods for personal spiritual development, none have ever been authoritatively set forth by the Rosicrucian Brotherhood, for the simple reason that it would be impossible to do so. Every human being's development is a strictly personal problem and must be guided by as careful diagnosis as a physician would make for physical treatment. Failure to recognize this is why so many become mentally deranged in trying to follow general advices published in easily procured volumes.

**Given only in the Secret Work.**—In the Secret Work of the Brotherhood as conducted in America, personal development is made a personal study. The work, practice and study of each aspirant is carefully mapped out and daily record charts of progress prepared and preserved. It is well known that in medical

work what is one person's salvation may be another person's death and prescriptions are not transferable. So it is in spiritual development.

Aside from the general rules for right living, thinking and acting, when it comes to specific developmental work the temperament, mental characteristics, personal traits, weaknesses as well as strength, ambitions fulfilled or unfulfilled, must be carefully studied by a competent Teacher. No all-inclusive formulas for development can be given out. Each case must be individual.

**Brotherhood open to all.**—The doors of the Brotherhood are open wide to all who knock, on the following basis of association, expressed in the form of definite affirmations:

**The Affirmations.**—We affirm:

1. The existence of One Infinite Intelligence, Omnific, Omniscient and Omnipotent in its functions, from which we emanated as unconscious spirit substance and to which we return as conscious, individualized entities.
2. The Incarnation of the Spirit in visible form or Matter, to be for the the purpose of Experience.
3. That all Life is continuous, without Beginning and without Ending; Evolutional, in a constantly ascending scale of Progression.
4. That the Mortal may attain to the Knowledge of the Spiritual while yet Incarnate.
5. The Truth of Re-incarnation as a factor in the Soul's Evolutionary Progress, necessary as many times as may be required for the Assimilation of the Requisite Experience.

In the personal guidance of the Order, directions are given for Concentration, Meditation, Contemplation, Prayer, Dietetics, Exercise, Rest, Vitality, Healing and finally Spiritual Insight and LIBERATION.

**Hypnotism forbidden.**—The cultivation, study or practice of hypnotism is especially prohibited to Fraters of the Brotherhood, either as a means of entertainment, healing, or an avenue to possible clairvoyance. While the academic study of hypnotism is useful to the student, the study of this power for personal practice is in strict opposition to the teachings of the Order. In every case of hypnotic control the operator projects a definite portion of his etheric vehicle into that of his subject (or victim) and there IT REMAINS. This results in a union of karmic conditions, prevents the subject from future supreme control and exercise of his free-

will and does incalculable harm to the progress of both Egos. It harms him who operates and him who is operated upon. In medical practice anaesthetics, suggestive therapy and psycho-analysis will almost invariably accomplish the results sought otherwise by hypnotism.

**Mediumship not allowed.**—Neither is the cultivation or practice of so-called mediumship permissible, for the teachings of the Rosicrucian Brotherhood are directed toward the development of POSITIVE, INDEPENDENT SPIRITUAL INSIGHT, the full, free and complete exercise of the spiritual faculties independently of any form of psychic “control” or obsession: This latter is just as harmful to the subject or involuntary medium or psychic as hypnotic control, and is, in a way, almost identical with it, the hypnotic operator in this case being the unseen spirit or entity of whom the subject has no more knowledge than he would have of a stranger on the street. One certainly would not bid a total stranger into his drawing room, unannounced, or without proper credentials, neither should he permit his mental sanctorum to be invaded by still more subtle, elusive, insidious and sometimes malignant entities from the invisible worlds, for dead men are not always good men; in fact a dead man so-called is often for a time not quite as efficient as a living man.

**Earth-bound astrals not desirable associates.**—Our Earth region is too close to the lower astrals to make it prudent for a sensitive individual to submit to the contact with earth-bound entities, and many a time the involuntary medium entertains spiritually those whom he would abhor in physical life. Obsessions of a malignant character threaten those who defy this principle and ignore the warnings of those who may be in a position to know.

**Some development possible to all.**—It is possible and in full accord with natural, constructive laws, for EVERY individual to develop SOME degree of spiritual sensitivity and insight if they are willing to keep at it persistently and unflinching long enough. But real development means a complete transmutation of the physical structure as well as the spiritual vehicles and it is not accomplished quickly nor without effort and endurance.

In this quest, the victor is he who persists faithfully to the end, and to such come the reward of knowing at first hand the verities of the life unseen.

**Rosicrucians and “The Philosopher’s Stone.”**—Rosicrucians are accused of being a credulous sect devoted to the chimera of seek-



ing a stone that will "raise" baser metals to higher ones. This is called "seeking the PHILOSOPHER'S STONE." The Rosicrucians are quite content to let such critics remain in full enjoyment of the satisfaction that may come to them from having proffered their opinions. Such criticism also comes from the peevishness of the disappointed ones who are unable to make progress toward the discovery of the true Stone themselves, and then vent their disappointment on those who "refuse to give them the formula."

**Spiritual Science comes first.**—The search for the Philosopher's Stone is one which has engaged the minds of a considerable number of the world's most brilliant thinkers throughout many ages. It is a search resulting from a true inner knowledge of basic facts and fundamental laws OF SPIRITUAL SCIENCE *FIRST*, and Material Science secondarily.

**The Philosopher's Stone a FACT, not a theory.**—The Philosopher's Stone is a FACT, not a theory, and some have proven it to their entire satisfaction and the good of humanity, but those who have succeeded have also entered into the full recognition and acceptance of the law that makes its comprehension a matter of personal attainment. Nevertheless, those who have attained are under another law which compels them to aid all legitimate efforts on the part of sincere seekers following after them.

**Seek first the Kingdom of God.**—The bibliography of Alchemy and Hermeticism is replete with apparently meaningless phraseology, intended to conceal rather than to reveal, yet perfectly understood by those who seek first the spiritual insight. The search for the Philosopher's Stone is the obedience to the spiritual admonition, "SEEK YE FIRST THE KINGDOM OF GOD, AND ALL THESE THINGS SHALL BE ADDED UNTO YOU."

**Charge to Neophytes.**—Every Rosicrucian Neophyte will remember these words, "Therefore, in your inquiries and reachings into the deep mysteries of Nature, learn first to know WHAT THINGS YOU HAVE WITHIN YOURSELF BEFORE YOU SEEK INTO FOREIGN MATTERS WITHOUT THEM, AND BY THE DIVINE POWER WITHIN YOU, FIRST HEAL YOUR OWN SELF AND TRANSMUTE YOUR OWN SOUL, THAT YOU MAY GO ON PROSPEROUSLY AND SEEK WITH GOOD SUCCESS THE MYSTERIES AND WONDERS OF GOD IN ALL NATURAL THINGS." And again:

"I admonish thee therefore that desirest to delve into the innermost parts of Nature, if that which thou seekest thou findest not within thyself, thou wilt never find it without thee."

**What Our Father Hermes saith.**—Our Father Hermes, in his Golden Treatise concerning the Physical Secret of the Philosopher's Stone, saith: "Through long years I have not ceased to experiment, neither have I spared any labor of mind; and this science and art I have obtained BY THE INSPIRATION OF THE LIVING GOD ALONE, WHO JUDGED FIT TO OPEN THEM TO ME, HIS SERVANT. To those enabled by reason to judge of truth He has given power to arbitrate, but to NONE OCCASION OF DELINQUENCY.

"For myself, I had never discovered this matter to any one, had it not been from fear of the day of judgment, and the perdition of my soul if I concealed it. IT IS A DEBT WHICH I AM DESIROUS TO DISCHARGE TO THE FAITHFUL, AS THE AUTHOR OF OUR FAITH DID DEIGN TO BESTOW IT UPON ME.

"Understand ye then, O sons of Wisdom, that the knowledge of the four elements of the ancient philosophers was not corporally or imprudently sought after, WHICH ARE THROUGH PATIENCE TO BE DISCOVERED ACCORDING TO THEIR CAUSES AND THE OCCULT OPERATION. For their operation is occult, since nothing is done except it be compounded and because it is not perfected unless the colors be thoroughly passed and accomplished."<sup>10</sup>

**Not corporally but spiritually.**—This gives a clue to the proper comprehension of the elements, but not as they are commonly understood; non corporaliter, it must be understood, sed spiritualiter et sapienter, not corporally but spiritually and wisely. The properties and attributes of Universal Spirit are abstrusely included in all existence and are to be understood only by its own intimate analysis and introverted light.<sup>11</sup>

**The Innermost Chamber of Life.**—"Our Mercury," says the wise Scholiast, "is philosophic, fiery, vital, running, which may be mixed with other metals and again separated from them. It is prepared in the INNERMOST CHAMBER OF LIFE, AND THERE IT MAY BE COAGULATED, AND WHERE METALS GROW THERE THEY MAY BE FOUND, EVEN IN THE ULTIMATE AXLE OF EACH CREATED LIFE."<sup>12</sup>

"This most precious Stone, are we at length to conclude then, is *Light* essentialized artificially in its proper substance, and exalted by fermentation into an immutable magnet, able to draw and convert the radical homogeneity of Nature into its own assimilative accord?"<sup>13</sup>

**Testimony of Scripture.**—Can the Philosopher's Stone be attained? Hear what Holy Scripture saith:

“To him that overcometh will I give to eat of the Tree of Life, which is in the midst of the Paradise of God.

“To him that overcometh will I give to eat of the hidden Manna, and will give him a White Stone, and in the Stone a new name written, which no man knoweth saving he that receiveth it.

“And he that overcometh and keepeth my works unto the end, to him will I give power over the nations; and he shall rule them with a rod of iron; as the vessels of a potter shall they be broken in shivers even as I received from my Father. And I will give him **THE MORNING STAR**.

“He that overcometh the same shall be clothed in White Raiment. And I will not blot out his name out of the Book of Life. Behold, I come quickly; hold fast that which thou hast that no man take thy **CROWN**.

“Him that overcometh will I make a pillar in the Temple of my God, and he shall no more go out; and I will write upon him the name of my God—and the name of the city of my God, which is New Jerusalem, which cometh down out of heaven from my God; and I will write upon him my new name.

“Behold, I stand at the door and knock, and if any man hear my voice and open the door I will come in with him, and sup with him, and he with me.

“And to him that overcometh will I grant to sit with me in my throne, even as I also overcame, and am set down with my father in his throne.

“They, then, who have been fortunate enough to perfect this work, having received so much grace from the Father of Lights as to obtain this inestimable gift of Wisdom Divine, what more on earth should they desire, but that it may always be applied aright in obedience to the Divine Will, for the benefaction of mankind and vindication of true virtue?”<sup>14</sup>

**Rosicrucianism is Progressive.**—Rosicrucianism is at once a progressive science, a progressive philosophy and a progressive religion. Orthodox religion is content to accept the Bible more or less literally. Thus it begins with a materialistic traditional account of the first man, Adam, and ends with Revelation, the greatest revelation of which is the astounding seeming fact that out of all the billions of human beings who have peopled this planet, only 144,000 are to be saved.

**The 144,000 explained.**—As a matter of fact this statement means that ALL HUMANITY IS to be saved. The esoteric truth is revealed by the significance of the numerical valuations of letters. Occult students see nine distinct layers in the Earth's crust as differentiated from the many classifications of academic geology. There are nine Initiations, Nine is the number of our evolutionary status. The ancient Hebrews had no numerals, but each of their letters had a numerical valuation. Therefore in reading Hebrew it is equally important to understand the numerical valuations that may be concealed. Adam is written ADM. The numerical valuations of the letters are, A—1, D—4, M—40. Theosophically written and added gives,  $1+4+4+0=9$ .

**Number of the Beast.**—In Revelation we find the number of the "Beast" given as 666. Theosophically written and added gives  $6+6+6=18$ , and  $1+8=9$ . Adam and the Beast each are synonymous with Humanity as a whole. The "Number of the Beast" therefore signifies Humanity, the materialism of which acts to retard its progress and is its own greatest and arch enemy 144,000 theosophically written and added gives  $1+4+4+0+0+0=9$ . Here we have the same number again. Thus if 9 is the number of Humanity and 9 is the number to be saved, it means no more or less than ALL humanity is to be saved, which is the teaching of the Rosicrucians.

**Only ceremonies of proven value retained.**—While the earlier spiritual scientists utilized pentacles and other geometrical forms and formulas as means of concentration, just as the modern clergy use antiquated and sometimes now meaningless ceremonial forms as religious mantras and stimuli, the modern Rosicrucians preserve in their ceremonial work only such forms as have been proven to have distinct occult values and practical merit, in ensuring uniformity of thought, action and intent during their Convocations. This is one point of departure from orthodoxy and standard ecclesiasticism. True spiritual science and academic science progress and take note of the progressional development of the human mind. The Church seems unfortunately to be content with the supernaturalism of nearly two thousand years of propaganda and expects the advanced mind of today to be content with the miracle worship of nineteen centuries past.

**Outward acceptance.**—This means that in many cases the pews are in advance of the chancels, for many regular adherents of orthodox church attendance secretly maintain their own private

personal views and concepts often widely at variance with the teachings of the "Church of their Fathers," while rendering as "in good form" outward complaisance with the Church as a still desirable social and moral institution. This means a general weakening of the religious fibre of modern life as is evidenced in the moral laxity of the times in many ways.

Right up to the present moment, almost, science has been relying on the expensive, often complicate apparatus used in the application of the Roentgen Rays or "X Rays" for medical examination. Yet we have now discovered that with a simple electric light properly enclosed, excellent shadowgraphs can be taken of the skeletal framework, in some cases better than with the former elaborate apparatus.<sup>15</sup>

So it is with our spiritual natures and soul growth. It is found that the elimination of old, obscure ceremonial, the true meaning of which is lost and perhaps outgrown, leaves the field clear for the application direct of the simpler and more easily applied factors of introspection, concentration, and the more rapid development of true spiritual insight; for this is a truly psychic age in spite of its apparent materialism, and the child of today knows more about the inner, subtler, properties of the human vehicle than his parents when of similar age.

**The World Soul.**—In this very fact, the Rosicrucian sees an important development, none other than that of the "World Soul." Just as the Three-fold Spirit reacts upon the Three-fold Body, extracting therefrom the Essence known as the Three-fold Soul, so the Great Christos or Sun Spirit indrawn into its Physical Vehicle, the Earth, is extracting therefrom the Planetary Soular Body, the gradual development of which is enlightening and illuminating all the Children of this World; for as it is written (Luke xvi, 8), "The children of this world are wiser in their generation than the children of light," meaning the earlier generations of humanity, who, while closer to spiritual conditions and relationships than are the present, yet had not developed the individual intelligence to the same degree.

**Ignorance the greatest sin.**—Ignorance may be called the greatest sin. And this is "the sin against the Holy Ghost" which will not be forgiven in this world nor in the world to come (Matt. xii, 31). Holy, i. e., sacred or Divine, and Ghost (Sax. Gust), signify to the Rosicrucian the Divine Breath or Intelligence breathed into the earliest forms of primordial life by the Divine Intelligence, developing, assimilating, guiding and unfolding

through all the developmental forms of evolving life up to man's present supreme status in the evolutionary scale. To blaspheme this Holy Guardian Angel or Divine Inner Self by the blindness of ignorance or the failure to realize that our physical senses are but the avenues through which we contact exterior conditions, and to suborn our inner guidance to the fallibility of sense perception, ignoring reason and succumbing to the lure of sensualism, is the true "sin against the Holy Ghost."

**Od Force; Electricity an Entity.**—This Divine Breath will sometime be found to be vastly more than a mere phenomenon of occult science. At present it is used more often in a metaphorical sense with little realization of its true importance. Nevertheless, the Divine Breath in Rosicrucian science is the "Primordial Electric Entity," for Rosicrucianism teaches that Electricity IS an Entity and "electrifies into life and separates primordial stuff (Cosmic Root Substance) or pregenetic matter into atoms, themselves the source of all life and consciousness. There exists a universal AGENT UNIQUE of all forms and of life, that is called Od, Ob and Aour, active and passive, positive and negative, like day and night; it is the *first light in Creation* (Eliphas Levi)—the 'first light' of the primordial Elohim, the Adam, 'male and female,' or (scientifically) Electricity and Life."<sup>16</sup>

"Od is the pure life-giving Light, or magnetic fluid; Ob the messenger of death used by sorcerers, the nefarious evil fluid; Aour is the synthesis of the two, Astral Light proper."<sup>17</sup>

Orthodox religion begins with the traditional account of a mythical personage. Rosicrucianism begins its study of man, aside from primordial cosmological processes, with the actual scale of his evolutionary progress. Agassiz gives the following generalization which the Rosicrucian student closely follows:

**Agassiz Table.—**

Radiata,	a	Polyps, Marine organisms, corals.
	b	Acalephs.
	c	Star-fish, Sea Urchins, etc.
Mollusca,	d	Acephala (Oysters and shell fish).
	e	Gasteropods (Snails).
	f	Cephalopods.
Articulata,	g	Worms.
	h	Crustacea (Lobsters, etc.).
	i	Insecta.

- Vertebrata, j Fishes.
- k Reptiles.
- l Birds.
- m Mammals (including man).<sup>18</sup>

**Resume of States of Consciousness.**—Heindel gives an excellent summary of the states of consciousness through which the evolving life forms have passed, correlated with the proper Periods:

Period.	Corresponding consciousness.
Saturn,	Unconsciousness corresponding to deep trance.
Sun,	Unconsciousness resembling dreamless sleep.
Moon,	Picture consciousness, corresponding to dream state.
Earth,	Waking, objective consciousness.
Jupiter,	Self-conscious picture consciousness.
Venus,	Objective, Self-conscious, Creative consciousness.
Vulcan,	Highest Spiritual Consciousness. <sup>19</sup>

The religious side of Rosicrucianism may be summed up in this, "To know God, by knowing his image, Man." To Live right, Think right, Act right and to seek at-one-ment with the Great Spirit which works in all and through all.

#### QUESTIONS ON INSTRUCTION No. 12

1. Should any conflict exist between Rosicrucian and academic science?
2. What is the Rosicrucian Philosophy accurately said to be?
3. In what way are Rosicrucianism and Religion identical?
4. What is the Rosicrucian concept of God?
5. What is the Smaragdine Tablet said to be?
6. Is Rosicrucianism the same as Kabbalism?
7. What relation does Rosicrucianism bear to monasticism?
8. What is the Kabbalah?
9. Of what does it treat?
10. How is God conceived of by the Kabbalah?
11. What does the "Non-Existent" desire?
12. What did the First Sefhira contain?

13. What do the Ten Sephiroth form among themselves?
14. How is their evolution explained?
15. Describe the bodily parts of the Archetypal Man.
16. What was Ezekiel's Vision?
17. What are the Three Worlds of the Kabbalah?
18. Who was Adam?
19. What is the Tetragrammaton?
20. Give the twelve transpositions of the characters.
21. Are there any other tetragrammatic names?
22. What have some societies assumed to find in the Tetragrammaton?
23. What did Buddha enjoin?
24. What is the meaning of the word "Buddha"?
25. Have there been more than one Buddha?
26. Which was the greatest of all Buddhas?
27. How is Buddhahood attained?
28. What did Buddha teach regarding ignorance?
29. What is most valuable to humanity?
30. What are the Four Noble Truths?
31. What is the Noble Eight-fold Path?
32. What does "Salvation" mean?
33. How did Buddha summarize his teachings?
34. With what are the teachings synonymous?
35. What do both Buddhism and Rosicrucianism teach?
36. What are the Five Observances?
37. What do both Rosicrucianism and Buddhism teach regarding Karma?
38. What is said of the value of meditation?
39. Name four other paths.
40. What is the process of personal transmutation?
41. Give another point of contact between Rosicrucianism and Buddhism.



42. What did Sakya Muni teach regarding Meditation?
43. With what is Rosicrucianism in unity?
44. Are the theological doctrines of salvation and redemption tenable?
45. Is there such a thing as true science of the soul?
46. What is the attitude of Rosicrucianism towards the Sacraments?
47. How many Sacraments are noted in the Rosicrucian ecclesiastical system?
48. What is said of psychology as now taught?
49. Does the Brotherhood publish formulas for personal development?
50. Why not?
51. How is such instruction given?
52. Is the Brotherhood open to all?
53. Give the Five Affirmations.
54. What does the Brotherhood teach regarding hypnotism?
55. Is mediumship allowed?
56. What is said of Earth-bound spirits?
57. Is personal development possible to all?
58. What is the Philosopher's Stone?
59. What comes first, in its search?
60. Is the Philosopher's Stone a fact?
61. What should be sought first?
62. Where should the Stone be sought?
63. What does our Father Hermes say concerning it?
64. How should the Elements be properly comprehended?
65. Where should our Mercury be prepared?
66. What is the testimony of Scripture?
67. Is Rosicrucianism static or progressive?
68. What is the significance of the 144,000 ultimately to be saved?

69. What is the "Number of the Beast"?
70. Does Rosicrucianism perpetuate useless ceremonies and formulas?
71. How are the X-Rays used as an illustration of soul growth and development?
72. What is the "World-soul"?
73. What is the greatest of all sins?
74. What constitutes "sin against the Holy Ghost"?
75. What is OD Force?
76. With what does orthodox religion begin?
77. With what does Rosicrucianism begin?
78. Give the Table of Agassiz.
79. Give a resume of the States of Consciousness.
80. Sum up the religious phase of Rosicrucianism.



## INSTRUCTION XIII.

### THE HUMAN TEMPLE.

ROSICRUCIANISM AND FREEMASONRY. SUMMARY OF THE TEACHINGS OF BOTH FRATERNITIES AS APPLIED TO MAN. BIBLICAL AND PHYSIOLOGICAL ANALOGIES. THE TEMPLE OF SOLOMON.

---

**Not a Matter of Controversy.**—It is not our purpose in these Instructions to discuss Masonic points of controversy. It is the teaching of the Brotherhood that Freemasonry owes its real origin to the Rosicrucians, a teaching based upon excellent historical and traditional evidence and supported by many well known Masonic historians and researchers.

**Origin of Freemasonry.**—Many enthusiastic Masons attempt to ascribe the origin of Freemasonry to an antiquity contemporary with the times of Noah and Enoch. Others assert that the Fraternity first assumed definite form and shape in 1717. With these controversies we have naught to do. We believe that Masonry is of an origin far more remote than many of its members realize, but also that such origin existed in the arcane schools, principally Rosicrucian, of great antiquity. This is well set forth in the excellent paper entitled "The Alleged Rosicrucian Origin of Freemasonry," published in "Masonic Notes," Kingston, Ont., 1919.

**Rosicrucian teachings applied to the Human Temple.**—As the larger percentage of membership of the Societas Rosicruciana In America is composed of Masons, many of whom are eminent in the Craft, the following Instruction is published as a summary of the combined Rosicrucian and Masonic teachings concerning the Temple, and showing how the esoteric teachings of Rosicrucianism explain and amplify the symbolism of Masonry and do actually demonstrate the practical application of occult principles to the physical structure of the homo.

**Where this Instruction was first given.**—This Instruction was read as a monograph before Metropolitan Lodge No. 1, Ark Mariner Masons, New York City, in 1918, and is printed complete

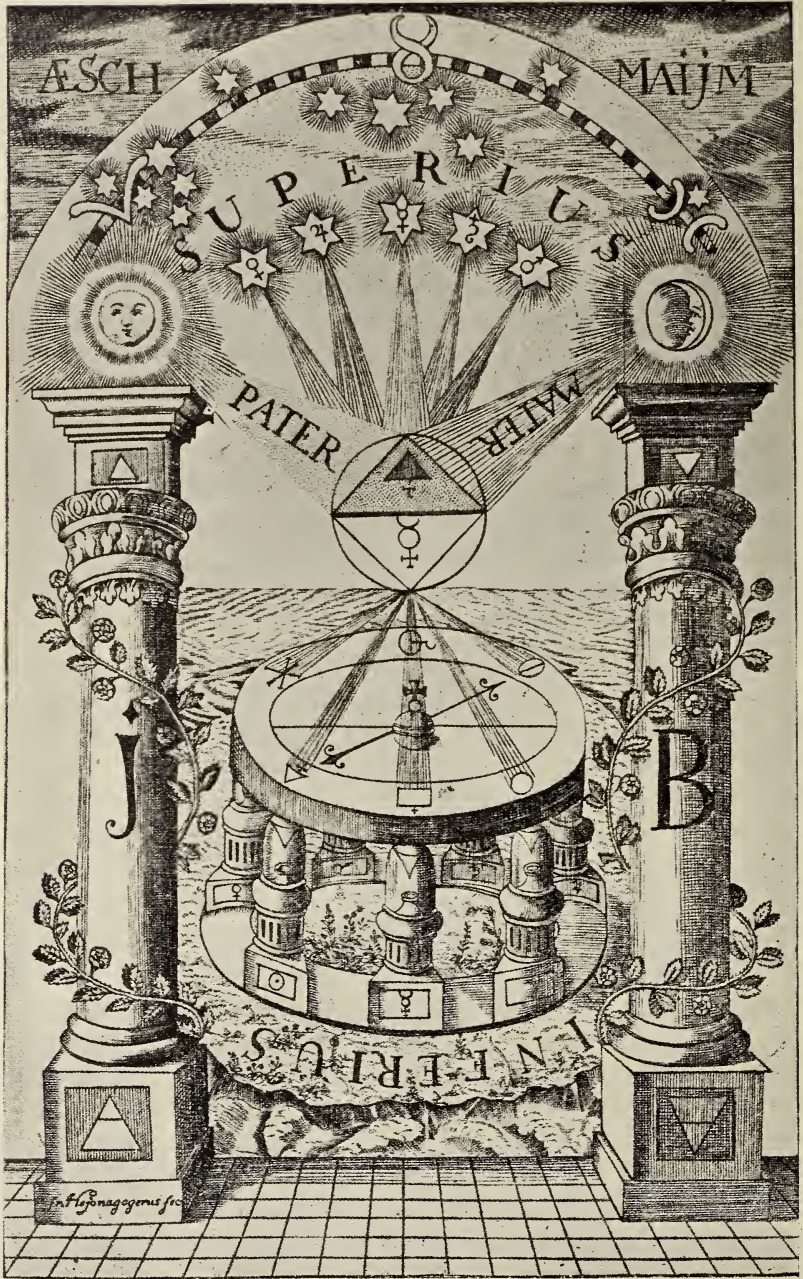


FIG. 83

ROSE CROSS TABLET WITH THE UNITED SYMBOLS OF ALCHEMY AND MASONRY, AN EVIDENCE OF THE PRIOR ORIGIN OF THE ROSICRUCIAN ORDER. (*Compass der Weisen par Kethmia Veve Baron Proeck*), BERLIN AND LEIPZIG, 1779, PAGE 112. (From *Les Illumine de Baviere et la Franc-Maconnerie allemande*)

as read. No Masonic Obligations have been violated by this procedure and it is hoped that this Instruction will be studied most carefully by all Masons to whom it may come, whether they are members of the Rosicrucian Fraternity or not.

**How Degrees should be used.**—Neither Rosicrucian or Masonic degrees are stepping stones to social or commercial preferment, and any member of either Fraternity who so uses them violates the principles of both Orders. The purpose of each great Brotherhood is to give Light and More Light to those who seek, and by their principles and teachings to illumine the Path which to so many is obscure.

**Assumed Egyptian origins of each Fraternity.**—Incidentally, the researches of students in both Fraternities who ascribe Egyptian origin to each Order is but added proof of the premise that Freemasonry originated in Rosicrucianism, inasmuch as in Egypt the esoteric preceded the exoteric, and Rosicrucianism is essentially esoteric, while Masonry is although symbolic, essentially exoteric.

**The House not made with hands.**—In nearly every Degree of Freemasonry are found allusions to a "House not made with hands, eternal in the Heavens." In the same Degrees the Candidates are presented with "Working Tools" of artisan crafts, which they are taught to employ for the more noble and glorious purpose of preparing their minds as living stones, adapted for the Master's use, in the construction of the spiritual Temple, "not made with hands."

**Identity of the Temple.**—This is surely a lofty ideal to place before the newly made initiate of the Fraternity, but it would perhaps be productive of results more satisfactory to the Craft and certainly more profitable to the Craftsman if each were instructed more definitely as to the nature and actual identity of the Temple to which such frequent allusion is made.

**When the Esoteric Truth was "Lost."**—Like the Christian Church, however, Masonry, as the Custos of the Lesser Mysteries, long since bartered its privilege of teaching the great truths profoundly concealed in the mystic and esoteric interpretation of its ceremonial, just as the Church exchanged the Divine Power of Thaumaturgy for political favor and prestige.

**Fable of the Material Temple.**—As long as Freemasonry continues to teach as truth the fable of the material magnificence of the Temple reputed to have been built by Solomon, just so long

will its initiates remain the blind children of a blind mother. If we accuse the Church of being a stumbling block in the pathway of advancing science and philosophy, what shall we say of an ethical organization of world wide extent, embracing in its membership notable scientists and archaeologists, yet stubbornly clinging to a worn-out and altogether untenable tradition, which at best it certainly fails completely to understand or interpret at the present day.

We are informed that "after David had been gathered to his fathers, and the last honors paid to his memory, Solomon wielded the sceptre of Israel, peace reigned within his borders and the Children of Israel looked forward with peculiar satisfaction for the display of that wisdom which was destined to astonish and amaze the world."

**Size of the Temple.**—Most assuredly, the wisdom referred to HAS astonished and amazed the world. Reflect, brethren, 80,000 workmen labored unceasingly, under the aid and guidance of three powerful Kings, with armies of assistants and laborers at their disposal, for more than seven years, to produce a little building 108 ft. 5 inches long, 36 ft. 5 inches wide and 54 ft. high. And so spacious was it and magnificent withal, and constructed by so many celebrated architects, that although the rough dwellings of American troglodytes and the cave dwellings of Homo Sapiens of 50,000 years ago, together with the Pyramids and other imposing monuments of antiquity still survive in excellent preservation, we are ingenuously informed that the spacious and magnificent Temple of Solomon escaped not the ravages of barbarous force.

**Only an Esoteric Temple meets requirements.**—Masonic scholars, many of them Craftsmen of repute, have attempted to read into the Hiramic and Solomonic legends and traditions various other motifs based upon History, Tradition and Mythos, but to the student unprejudiced by conventional hypotheses and acceptances, it will be apparent that truly no Temple made by hands can ever meet the ethical and esoteric requirements.

**The Human Body the real Temple.**—And it will also be just as obvious that upon this one point, the *real* Temple—truly made without sound of hammer or other instrument—positively *not* made with hands—Masonry is silent. Brethren, if you will accept it, the building of the only TRUE Temple in the ONLY TRUE SENSE is the building of the Temple of the Soul and the Three-fold Spirit, the HUMAN BODY.

It may be objected here that this is already admitted and asserted by the Craft. True. But if such is the case, why seek to perpetuate a fable which, in the light of archaeological knowledge of conditions extant in Palestine at the time ascribed to the Solomonic Temple, is even worse than ridiculous and very evidently an original cultus enhanced by the accretions resulting from over-enthusiastic imaginations during succeeding years far beyond the intent of the primal concept. Why fail to teach—to study—and to understand just *how* and *why* the Human Body IS the Temple of the Soul?

**Truth least emphasized in Masonry.**—Strangest of many strange conditions brought about by the passing of Time, the real truth of the Human Temple, while veiled in all the allegory and symbolism of Freemasonry, is the least emphasized therein.

**Holy Bible an exegesis of the Human Temple.**—Notwithstanding, this profound truth is the central point upon which the doctrine and dogma of all the religions of the World depend. The Holy Bible, Old and New Testaments alike, is an exegesis in allegory, simile, parable and prophecy, of the Human Temple, and this fact it will be our purpose in this monograph to demonstrate. The same great truth has been expressed in the architecture, plan and elevation of the religious edifices of the world from the very beginning of human history, as witnessed by the Temples of the Nile, even to the stone forestry of Gothic architecture of the Cathedral Age.

**Rosicrucianism has the Key.**—Since Masonry, the offspring, fails us in our search for the true exegesis, we must turn to Rosicrucianism, the parent, that strange cultus with so many ramifications closely interwoven with the esoteric doctrinalia of all great world religions and arcane societies, for enlightenment.

**Journey of Virgin Spirit.**—In this age-old Brotherhood we trace the journey of Virgin Spirit after its differentiation in the Body of the Solar God, down through myriad involutory forms until each original spark of the Divine Flame has become a true EGO, individualized, and self-conscious.

**Through countless changes.**—Through many changes, transformations and transmutations, the Divine Spark has learned to operate in mineral, vegetable and animal structures and vehicles, and now requires a specialized vehicle with which to contact the exterior, mundane, or material world through definite channels of

perception, whereby exterior impacts and vibrations can be transmuted into consciousness.

Long before a human foetus has been developed in the maternal womb, the Ego has gathered to itself in the spiritual planes of being the material and fashioned the astral archetypal form

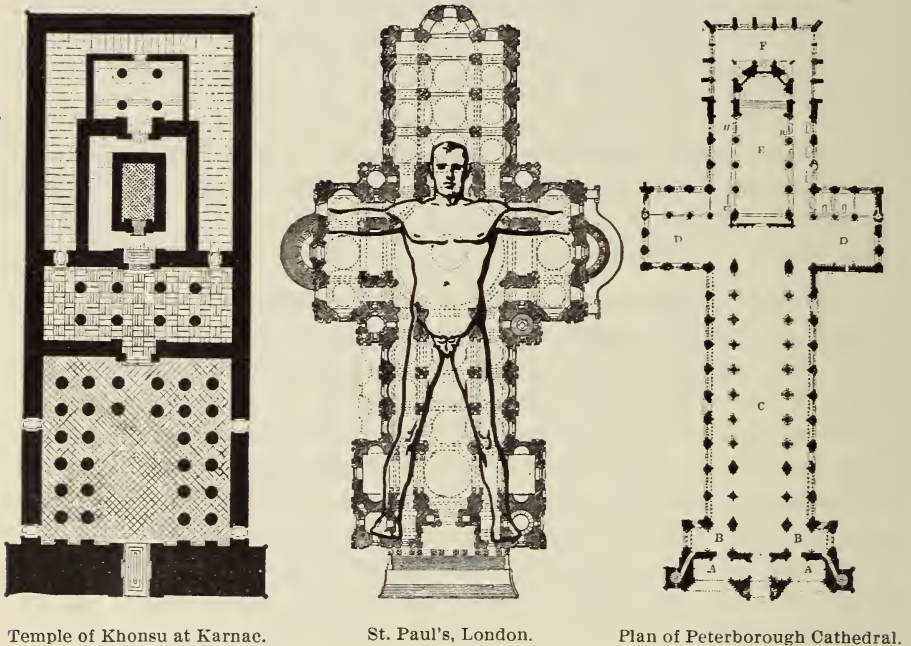


FIG. 84  
THE ANCIENT AND THE MODERN.

An Egyptian Temple and two examples of Christian Cathedrals. These plans together with similar ones of the Hebrew and Greek Temples which may be easily found, show the threefold division of the material Temples analogous to the threefold division of the Human Temple. The Plan of Peterborough Cathedral shows the average type of strictly cruciform cathedral, while the plan of St. Paul's shows the cruciform type adapted to the classic style of architecture and the circular feature at the crossing of the nave and transept is not without its appropriate symbolism from the Rosicrucian standpoint. It is asserted by some researchers that the architect of St. Paul's, Sir Christopher Wren was a Rosicrucian, although we have no positive proof, but it is certain that a Rosicrucian body was operative under the very shadow of St. Paul's at the time of the erection of the present building on that site. The cuts show Man to be the archetype of all Temples.

around which the future physical body, which is to be its home while functioning in the Physical World, is precipitated, crystallized and built.

And just as it has through countless processes of change, transmutation and so-called death, arrived at the human stage of existence, so it will continue through several more changes, deaths



or transmutations, in order to build each time more perfectly the earthly Temple in each succeeding incarnation, until from a state of aboriginal savagery it arrives at the cultural status of the present day.

**The Human Temple is not made with hands.**—Thus the Human Temple in very truth is not made with *hands*, neither is the sound of any hammer or other instrument heard in the building thereof, and in spite of passing millenia it IS eternal in the Heavens, for the visible physical structure is but the impermanent reflection or crystallization of the true, permanent archetype, which is the *real creation*, in the spiritual heavens beyond, where the models or archetypes of all that ever has been, or IS NOW, remain imperishably in Akashic preservation.

**Features of Religious Architecture.**—On examination of the religious architecture of all nations and times we find one prominent feature in common—the trinitarian or three-fold arrangement.

Thus, the Egyptian Temple had its Outer Court or Court of the People; its *Middle Chamber* or Hypostyle Hall, and its *Sanctum Sanctorum* or Holy of Holies into which none but the Hierophant entered.

The Greek Temples had their Pro-Naos or Outer Court; the Naos or Cella, or *Middle Chamber*, and the *Sanctuary* or Holy of Holies, containing the shrine or statue of the God or Goddess.

**The Hebrew Temple.**—The Hebraic Temple had its Outer Court or Place of the People; The *Middle Chamber*, or Holy Place, and the *Sanctum Sanctorum* or Holy of Holies to which similar reverence was paid by the High Priest, and which arrangement was quite evidently based upon traditions and ideas brought over from the former captivity in Egypt. The Temple as rebuilt by Herod kept the same general arrangement, with the addition of Courts for Men, Women and the Gentiles.

**The Pyramid.**—The Pyramid has its *Unfinished Chamber* on the *Ground Floor*; its *Middle* or "Queen's Chamber," and the *Sanctum Sanctorum* or "King's Chamber," although no King has ever been found there. The ceremonial occupant was a "King" in quite another sense from that of political rulership.

**Gothic Cathedrals.**—The Gothic Cathedrals and Minsters besides being cruciform in plan, which is simply the Cosmic Man under the Sign of the Cosmic Cross, have the Nave, or Place of the People; the Choir or Chancel, for the Singers and minor clergy,

corresponding to the Holy Place or Middle Chamber, and the Sanctuary or Holy of Holies into which only the highest ecclesiastical dignitaries and the Celebrant and assistants at the Altar enter. And on the Altar will be found the Tabernacle or Ark of Salvation in which is the Sacred Host, of which the Shewbread of the ancient Temples was the prototype.

Let us correlate these ideas and associate them with the facts regarding the Human Temple as given in the Greatest of our Three Great Lights.

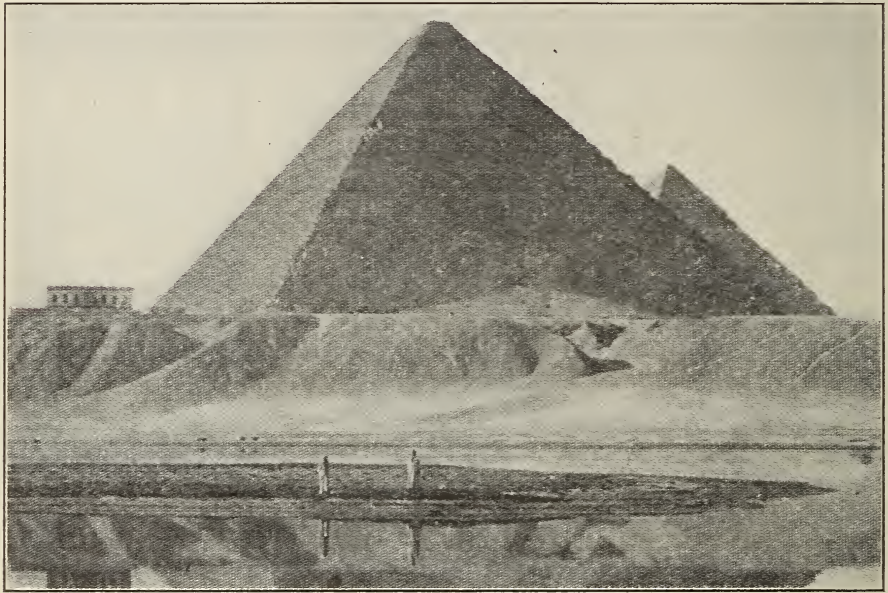


FIG. 85

THE GREAT PYRAMID.

MARVELOUS FOR ITS MATHEMATICAL CORRESPONDENCIES TO COSMIC MEASUREMENTS AND CONDITIONS. FROM THE INITIATIONS WHICH OCCURRED IN THIS VAST TEMPLE ORIGINATED THE LEGEND OF HIRAM ABIF, PREPETUATED UNDER THE ALLEGORY OF THE BUILDING OF KING SOL-O-M-ON'S TEMPLE.  
(See *Rosicrucian Symbology*, by Khei.)

1st. In 1 Cor. iii, 16, it is written, "Know ye not that ye are the Temple of God, and that the Spirit of God dwelleth in you?"

And in the 17th verse it is written, "If any man defileth the Temple of God, him shall God destroy; for the Temple of God is holy, *which Temple YE ARE.*"

**The Tabernacle in the Wilderness.**—The early Tabernacle in the Wilderness symbolized the Human Body in its earlier forms of evolution, termed by Rosicrucians "nascent Man," and represented the human corpus without head or limbs, shewing that the

eternal Spirit only is within before the Ego is fully indrawn, even in the embryonic forms of life, although head and limbs have not yet appeared in the scheme of ultimate development.

The later Temple in Jerusalem, and all the greater Temples which succeeded prototypic forms in all the world religions, symbolized the full grown and fully developed Homo. For exact details paralleling the Biblical description, the student is referred to the Historian Josephus in his "Antiquities," Book 3, Ch. vi., Sec. 4, and Book 8, Ch. iii, Sec. 2.

**Divisions of the Human Torso.**—The Human Torso is divided into three principal sections or divisions:

1. Thorax.
2. Abdomen.
3. Pelvis.

These correlate with the details previously given, as follows:

1. The Pelvis is the Ground Floor, or Porch of the Temple.
2. The Abdomen is the Middle Chamber, or Holy Place.
3. The Thorax is the Sanctum Sanctorum, or Holy of Holies.

The Thorax further symbolizes Heaven, including the vital organs, heart and lungs, and occupies one-third of the torso above the Pelvis.

The abdomen symbolizes Earth, and occupies about two-thirds of the torso above the Pelvis.

The Pelvis symbolizes the Underworld, Hell, Sheol, Hades and the Pit.

**Orientation.**—The Temple of Solomon and all the ancient Temples were accurately orientated. So, too, in the Human Temple the Head represents the East, and in ancient formularies was always buried or laid on funeral pyres in that orientation. The Right Side becomes North, and on the North side of the Thorax we find no vital organ outside the right lung, thereby symbolizing at the same time the Masonic idea of the North as a place "of darkness." The Left Side is the South and in a way symbolizes the sun at meridian, as from the center of the Thorax inclining to the left is the heart, the most vital of all the organs, astrologically ruled by Leo (the Sun) and the seat of dynamic and mechanical power. Last of all and terminating the body are the Feet, symbolizing the West.

**When Human Heart Changes are completed.**—It will be noted that three principal chambers are found within the Thorax itself, of which the Heart is chief. St. Paul tells us of being caught up

into the Third Heaven. Rosicrucianism informs us that when the gradual change in the muscular striae of the Heart is completed

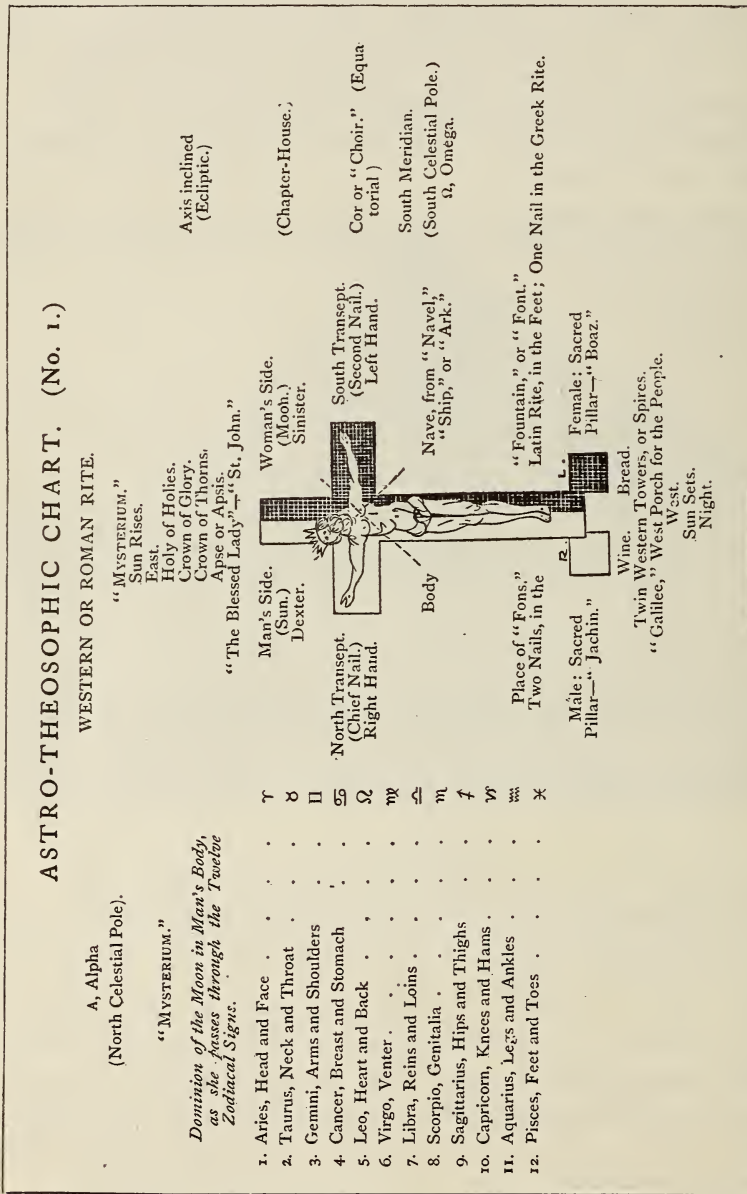


FIG. 86  
CHART SHOWING MAN CORRELATED TO THE CROSS AND THE  
CRUCIFORM TYPE OF CHURCH BUILDING.  
(From “The Rosicrucians,” by Hargrave Jennings.)

that organ will no longer be an involuntary muscle but a purely voluntary one, under the direct control of the Ego. Then indeed

will "all power be given" unto it—the Ego—"both in Heaven"—the Thorax, "and on Earth," the Abdomen, and the remainder of the Torso.

**Veils.**—In the Temples made with hands we find invariably the Veil between the Holy Place and the Sanctum Sanctorum or Holy of Holies. It may be a veil of cloth as in the ancient edifices, or it may be an elaborately carved screen or Rood in Cathedral use, or the simple Chancel Rail, but a separating device we always find. Similarly in the Human Temple we find the diaphragm acting as the "dome-like" veil or firmament separating the Holy Place from the Holy of Holies.

**Stone previously made ready.**—In 1 Kings, vi-7, 8, it is written, "And the House, when it was in building, was built of stone MADE READY BEFORE IT WAS BROUGHT THITHER; so that there was neither hammer nor axe, nor any tool of iron heard in the house while it was in building. The door for the Middle Chamber was in the right side of the house: and they went up with winding stairs into the Middle Chamber, and out of the Middle into the third." Similarly, when the Ego is about to attain mortal birth either originally or in re-incarnating, it gathers to itself the stone or earthy material, which being unorganized matter, is still mineral in its substance, and builds silently until the impregnation of the destined ovum affords opportunity for it to precipitate the spiritual mineral substance into crystallization for new birth. Neither is the symbol of iron absent from our parallel, for while the element iron was and is present in the blood as an active factor, the USE of iron always has been inimical to a true healthy normal birth, and is only resorted to by the modern physician when unnatural processes due to FAULTY CONSTRUCTION of the Temple occur.

**Winding Stairs.**—Then, too, from the Porch or Outer Court, the Ground Floor of the Human Temple, we ascend to the Middle Chamber by the Winding stairs of the colon and lower intestines, and by the winding stairs of the oesophagus into the Sanctum Sanctorum.

**Golden Pot of Manna.**—Here in the Sanctum Sanctorum we find the Ark of the Covenant, the Heart, the Home of the Seed Atom. It is the Golden Pot of Manna from which the food goes forth to the Children of Israel, the Twelve Centers of the Body, as Blood, for nourishment.

**Ark lined with Gold.**—We are told that the Ark was lined inside and out with Gold. Similarly in the Ark of the Human Temple we find the Golden-yellow endocardium inside the Heart, and the Golden-yellow epicardium outside the Heart.

**Mount Moriah.**—But the Ark of the Covenant was on a rock—Mount Moriah, or Es Sakhrah, and at Jerusalem visitors are shown the “Dome of the Rock.” This is already symbolical of the dome-like shape of the diaphragm which in the center appears to protrude through the floor of the Temple into the Holy of Holies or Sanctum Sanctorum. The four chambers of the Heart symbolize the four Cherubim.



FIG. 87  
STONEHENGE, ENGLAND.  
(Courtesy, American Museum of Natural History, N. Y.)

**Worship of Stones.**—It has been an age-old belief that Deity resides in stones. The worship of stones and the important place they occupied in prehistoric rites may be seen in the Druidical relics in Britain and Brittany. Thus the upward rise of the diaphragm gave to Mohammedan religious rites the idea of the Rock starting after Mohammed, while its suspension between Earth and Heaven is further represented by the suspension of the Heart or Ark itself in the Thorax.

**Color of the Heart.**—The red color of the Heart and its fluid content gave to the Zoroastrian his first concept of Fire or Sun

worship, believing that the solar force was imprisoned in this vital organ, and that the blood was the red "hidden fire" of the body; primitive concepts, but in generic value borne out by Rosicrucian knowledge and teaching. Thus the Heart has from remote antiquity been assumed to be ruled by Leo and the center of the Solar forces after their transmutation into dynamic and mechanical energy in the human economy.

**The Four Temples.**—In the Homo, we find Four Temples indicated, corresponding in all respects to the Four Hebraic edifices.

1. The 1st Temple, was the Tabernacle in the Wilderness, and is represented in the Human Temple by the Infancy of the structure.
2. The 2nd Temple, was the one attributed to Solomon, and is typified by the Human Body after the 7th year, indicative of the seven years of building.
3. The 3rd Temple, was that of Zerubbabel, the body of Man in his prime governed by the spiritual soul, after the conjectural 70 years captivity to the flesh.
4. The 4th Temple, is Herod's. Governed by the Great Pure Soul, after the fires of youth are allayed and the Ego has learned to subdue its passions. This Temple begins after the 70 years captivity of the flesh, and is built in 18 months but never completed.

**The Great Cloud.**—The great cloud appearing in Ezekiel's Vision is the Shekinah Cloud, the Blood spreading and rushing to every part of the body, the Human Temple; and the "fire unfolding itself" is the oxygen fire inaugurating the combustion processes in the newly completed and newly born Human Temple in its infancy, maintaining the process through the mortal life to follow.

**Noise of Wings.**—The "noise of wings" referred to by the prophet is the rhythmic pulsation of the Heart, and the "noise of waters" is the audible swish of the blood through the arteries and veins under proper conditions for hearing.

**Thousands that Ministered.**—The "thousand thousands that ministered" referred to by the prophet Daniel are the (microscopically seen) active cells and organisms in the flame-colored blood, that issued before the Ancient of Days, the Ego in its Divine aspect and nature.

**Jesus as a Builder.**—The Great Teacher Jesus was said to have been a builder. "Is not this the carpenter, the son of Mary,

the brother of James, and Joses, and of Juda and Simon?" (Mark vi, 3). "And Jesus answered the people (John ii, 19-20), destroy this Temple and in three days I will raise it up. Then said the Jews, forty and six years was this Temple in building, and wilt thou rear it up in three days? BUT *HE SPAKE OF THE TEMPLE OF HIS BODY.*"

**Theos.**—The Greeks in their writings concerning the word THEOS, or God, show that it also designated Man in his Divine aspect or the Divine nature of Man. This was in the sense of both considered as Suns—self-burning, self-luminous bodies. In the Human Temple we find this to be the status of the Brain, wherein the activity of the thought processes is maintained by continuous oxidation by the self-generated, unquenchable Fire. And the Human Sun is continuously animated by the energy from the Solar Disk or Sun, the Amen of the Egyptians, the "Something Hidden" which transfers its fiery color and power to the AB or Heart.

**Amen; Elements.**—This Amen, or "Hidden Something," was by the Egyptians to be held as shewing forth the power of Four Gods:

1. Neith, Earth, or primordial Matter.
2. Neph, Spirit, or the Air within Man.
3. Pasht, Water, or the fluid composition of the Body.
4. Sebeh, Fire, or heat generated by oxidation.

These correspond very closely to the Four Elements of the Alchemists, and it is little wonder, since the latter are but the Four Elements of Hermes, the Egyptian Avatar, and in accordance with His Gospel we find all four of these Deific attributes operative in the Body which is thus the Temple wherein the four mentioned Egyptian Gods actively functioned.

But Amen is a singular, including a plural, and both masculine and feminine. Hence we look for and find in the Human Temple the cosmic activities as set forth by Hermes. The Earth elements, feminine and passive are acted upon by the Fire element, active and masculine. And the Water elements, passive and feminine are acted upon by the Fire element, masculine and active.

Finally, the Amen which is the AUM of the East Indian cults, is revealed to us as the "true and faithful witness" recorded by Jeremiah (Jer. 42, 5) and the "everlasting to everlasting" as stated by the Psalmist (Psl. 90, 2). In the same Psalm we read, "Lord, thou hast been our dwelling place in all generations." And



later we are instructed that we should seek after the Lord, if haply we might feel after Him, **THOUGH HE BE NOT FAR OFF FROM EVERY ONE OF US** (Acts xii, 27-28), and in Him we live and move and *have our being*.

**He cometh with Clouds.**—"Behold he cometh with clouds." Note the statement with, not "in," although either would be appropriate. And when the spiritual light shall be enkindled in each human being, when he shall have attained his salvation from a world of materialism and entered into the higher life "while yet incarnate," then shall each human being see, even as he is seen (Rev. i, 7; 1 Cor. xiii, 12), "for now we see through a glass darkly, but then, face to face." In that time shall each homo see the cloud in which his neighbor cometh, namely, the auric cloud which encompasses every human being, the exterior veils to the Human Temple, and just as the Temples of old had veils of many colors, so does each Human Temple have many colors in its auric veils, colors which reveal to the seer the exact status of the spiritual fabric of the entire structure.

**The Eyes.**—In Biblical record much is said about the "eyes," "kindreds" and "tribulations." The eyes of the Human Temple are the nerves and ganglia which keep constant watch both within and without the structure. The "kindreds" are the communities and unions of cells, muscular and nerve groups, and organic relations. The "tribulation" is the pressure within the Human Body or Human Temple due to gravitative causes and temporary inequalities between internal pressure and exterior atmospheric pressure.

**Sexual Glands.**—Esoterically and physiologically, the sexual glands in both men and women are modifications of a third individuality termed by some the neuter or assexus. This is that aspect of Deity, the enshrined God which has been with each mortal unit since its initial dip into Matter, the hermaphroditic Divinity by virtue of whose power the Human Temple, male or female, becomes a source of creative power, able, even as the Gods, to create, devise, originate and bring forth.

**The Stomach.**—Curiously enough, we find the stomach referred to in many of the Gnostic cults as well as the Bible, and referred to in Rev. ii, 15, speaking of the Nicolaitans and Satan's Seat; and it is a fact that unbridled gratification of the appetite of the stomach leads many people to disease and results in the untimely destruction of the Human Temple. And again in the Tem-

ple Celestial Satan lurks even before the very throne according to the legend, and thus in the Human Temple the powers of destruction lurk closely beside the powers of life and construction.

**Real Temple contains the Ark.**—There can be but one *real* class of Temples among earthly religious edifices. No matter how gorgeous the structure may be, how wealthy and cultured the congregation, that only is a real Temple which contains the Ark. From earliest times the Temples of the Ancients contained the Ark or Shrine of the Deity with the Sacred Elements and Relics deposited therein. Among the Hebrews, the Tabernacle and Temple contained the Ark, and since its loss that race has been obliged to worship only according to the Synagogical usage. In the Christian Church the overwhelming preponderance of membership derive their spiritual sustenance from the presence of the Ark in the Tabernacle on the Altar wherein are maintained the Sacred Elements, the Shewbread, in the person of the Sacred Host. Without the presence of the Ark in true type and form, the structure becomes simply a sacred auditorium or meeting house, just as the Jewish Church is now the Synagogue instead of the Temple. Therefore we call only those structures that contain the Ark, the Temples.

**Man, Masonically designed as such.**—Similarly, when an animal is born into the world, it is classified as to species, either cat, dog, elephant, etcetera. When Man is born, however, he is called simply Man; it may be Chinese, Negro or Caucasian, but nevertheless above all and primarily MAN. In the Masonic ritual the Candidate newly born into the Order is, in the very 1st Degree, placed in the Northeast Corner of the Lodge, officially designated as a MAN and given it strictly in charge ever to walk and act as such before God and Man. Why this notable distinction? Man is simply an evolved member of the Animal Kingdom, and now considered as constituting a Kingdom of his own, but nevertheless still an Animal. It is because, just as Synagogue and Meeting House differ essentially from a true Temple, so does Man differ from all other species of organized life manifestation in that he has within himself the ARK, the true Ark of the Shekinah, the Heart; but, in the Case of Man, containing the SEED ATOM, the spiritual sustenance by virtue of which the EGO, the Divine Tenant, the God enshrined, is enabled to function. In Man alone is the Seed Atom fully indrawn and concentric, making possible and actual the gift and power of Reason, of the Divine Light of the God Consciousness.

**The "Rib Story."**—There is oftentimes more truth in ancient legend and tradition when carefully preserved, than popular imagination accepts. The tradition of the "rib story" will in later ages be better understood than now, when material science affects to scout the findings of occult science, although unconsciously day by day confirming them. Thousands of skeletons unearthed in Egypt, Babylonia and Assyria, have revealed the presence of the two extra ribs. And were we to continue the examination further it might be interesting to see just how the separation into the dual sexes in manifestation was actually accomplished, but this has been covered in the preceding Instructions and belongs also more properly to the study of anthropology in the light of occultism. Our present considerations are primarily Masonic.

**The Lightnings.**—The "lightnings" so often referred to in Biblical literature are the electric flashes along the nerve channels, while the "song day and night" so poetically described by Biblical writers is the audible rhythmic action of the Heart.

**The Place of the Soul.**—Among the Hebrews there existed the tradition and belief that the Home of the Soul was located within the Holy Place where the Name of God engraved upon a golden plate was worn between the eyebrows. And the Rosicrucian explains to us that the true Home of the Soul while incarnate in the earthly Temple of the Body IS within the Holy Place in the Golden Ether of the Divine Name, specifically located between the eyebrows, the exact position being a matter of their secret rituals and formularies.

**The Two Pillars.**—We are told in 1 Kings, vii, 21, that Solomon cast two pillars of Brass, and he set them up in the Porch of the Temple, calling the name of the right one Jachin and the left Boaz. Thus in the Human Temple we find two pillars, the legs, set up in and before the Porch of the Temple, the Pelvis, symbolical of brass from their enduring properties of strength and beauty of formation and construction.

**The Third Pillar.**—In 2nd Kings, xi, 14, and 2 Chron., xxiii, 13, we find allusion to a third pillar, the "Pillar of the Entrance." These Pillars of the Entrance are the Clitoris in the female and the Phallus in the male. The Pillar of the Entrance in each is the Pillar of Wisdom, for it is the terminus of the Creative Pole of the human organism whereby the Wisdom of the Divine Entity or Tenant, the Ego, finds outer manifestation in the ability to Create, on the basis of Strength to support and preserve, and the Beauty

to adorn the Human Temple with lines pleasing to the eye and in harmony with the rhythm of Nature.

**Sanctity of these Pillars.**—So sacred were these Pillars of the Entrance to the Ancients that oaths were sworn upon them, as we find in Genesis xxiv, 2-3, where Abraham says unto his eldest servant, "Put, I pray thee, thy hand under my thigh, and I will make thee swear by the Lord, the God of Heaven and the God of Earth." Many more instances might be adduced, but these will suffice.

**Clitoris.**—These Pillars are of such importance that they may not be passed without further consideration. The Female Pillar or Clitoris is strictly within the Porch, enfolded by the external and internal labia. This is particularly significant in consideration of the Rosicrucian teachings of the feminine aspect of Creative Power, and the consideration of the Absolute as essentially feminine in its creative aspects, the Divine Mother, the Sophia.

**The Pillars differentiated.**—Both Pillars of the Porch and the Pillars of the Entrance have much in common, but in one particular point they are differentiated. The Pillars of Entrance both male and female are hollow, as described in the Biblical account of the Pillars before the Temple Porch. BOTH are surmounted by the Chapitre so accurately described, which is none other than the glans at the extremity of each organ. Under each glans will be found the papillae answering to the Lily work, also in the retired or secret place, functioning in purity yet under conditions popularly regarded as in abasement. The pomegranates are the testes and ovaries, the sources of seed and fecundity as described in Masonic and Biblical records.

**Outer Coverings of the Temple.**—The outer coverings of the Human Temple are the layers of skin; the inner coverings being the muscles, the latter being in their natural state the color of the Biblical Acacia, Seval or Shittim Wood.

**The Great Stones.**—The colors of the skins, racially, covering the Human Temple, will be found to correspond with the Biblical requirements, and the "great stones" recorded are symbolized by the fascia of layers of white tissue.

**Seven years building.**—A little over seven years were required to complete the Solomonic Temple. Compare this with the Rosicrucian teachings regarding the birth of the Physical Body and its completion at the age of seven when the Etheric Body is then born.

**Number employed.**—In the building of the Temple over 150,000 strangers, probably slaves, were pressed into service. Of these, 70,000 were bearers of burdens, 80,000 hewers in the mountains. Over them, besides the chief of Solomon's officers, were 3,300 overseers (according to 1 Kings v, 16), or 3,600 (according to 2 Chron., ii, 18).

**Three Great Directors.**—Above the overseers were the Three Great Directors:

Solomon, King of Israel.

Hiram, King of Tyre.

Hiram Abiff, of the Tribe of Napthali, the son of a Man of Tyre.

These three potentates symbolized the Threefold Spirit of Man:

Solomon—the Divine Spirit, Consciousness, the Sun.

Hiram—the Life Spirit, Animal dynamics, Brain and Spinal cord, the Moon.

Abiff—the Human Spirit, Blood, the Master of the Lodge.

**What they constitute.**—All three taken collectively constitute the EGO or enshrined Divinity. In their operation they extract for the use of the Human Temple the essence known ultimately as Soul, and thus the structure becomes the Temple of the Soul. It is a process of continuous building which is never finished, and the Soul itself becomes three-fold, namely, the Conscious, Emotional and Intellectual Soul. It is also interesting to know that Abiff means broadly "Father."

The Vessels of the Temple are the Organs of the Human Body, made exoterically by Hiram, esoterically by the Ego.

Plato says, "Man has three souls, one in the Head, one in the Thorax and one in the Abdomen." This is literally true, for the Threefold Soul when developed will be found to correlate with the specific functions of these three divisions of the corpus of the Human Temple.

**Other Temple Veils.**—The remaining veils of the Temple are, the 2nd Veil or diaphragm of the Pelvis, a muscular fold separating the abdomen from the Pelvis, formed by the levator ani, and the coccygeous muscles. The 3rd Veil, the hanging for the Court, is the hymen of the female, guarding the entrance to the vagina, the male homologue being the verumontanum within the urethra. Lastly, in the Temple of Herod, according to Acts iii, 2, we find the Hanging for the Gate of the Temple replaced by the Gate

Beautiful, and tressoria, which from the knowledge of the phallic conditions of the times represented the virgin ripe for marriage.

Brethren, these are mysteries, and as such must be approached from the spiritual standpoint. In the words of the Psalmist, "Be still, and KNOW that I AM God" (Ps. 46, 10). The "I AM" is the great principle of Royal Arch Masonry, and if we retire into the silence and ARE "Still" we shall KNOW that the "I AM" within us is God.

**Words of St. Luke.**—Unto us as Masons come the words of the Gospel writer Luke, in the 8th chapter, 10th and 11th verses: "Unto you it is given to KNOW the mysteries of the Kingdom of God; but to *others* in *parables*; that seeing, they might not see, and hearing, they might not understand." And mark, brethren, the 11th verse: "Now the parable is this, the *SEED* is the *Word of God*." Has it ever occurred to us as Masons, that our office in tenanting the Temple of the Body is to develop, generate and supply seed, that in its propagation it may in spite of the separation of the sexes become the "Word of God" veritably MADE FLESH? Of what use the Temple without the priestly office? What higher office for the ruling Hierophant or High Priest of the Human Temple than to assist Divinity in making the *Word* of God to become incarnate flesh?

**Where True Marriage should occur.**—The Temple is the place where true marriage should occur. Marriage is a union and transmutation. If we represent man by a large circle with horizontal diameter and woman the same way but by smaller circle, we shall see that it is a matter of engrafting the larger mind, budding it on to the smaller one, and as the smaller one is to be transmuted into the larger one and become *LIKE* him and *OF* him, so she changes her NAME and NATURE to his.

**Illustration.**—In reality, however, there is no specific male mind isolated as such and represented by the horizontal diameter, and both diameters are now but fractions of the complete, unified figure. Therefore it follows that if the circle stands equally for the female, then there is as much real scientific authority for calling God "Mother" as there is for calling Him "Father."

**Jacob and the Angel.**—In Genesis xxxii, 25, we are told that Jacob wrestled with an angel and "the hollow of Jacob's thigh was out of joint as he wrestled with him." In our work as custodians of the Temple we too follow in the same path as did Jacob of old. It is the wrestling through the night of material sense,

with the Angel of Truth, and as in Jacob's case, the Angel of Truth must break the largest bone in the body of material Man before we glimpse the truth of our stewardship and receive the blessing desired, which is the Light we assumedly seek in the Degrees of Masonry. The thigh-bone symbolically represents the most tenacious and strongest erroneous beliefs of mortal mind, and the skeleton of the "Earth" man or the solid support of our Temple is the mineral foundation upon which the flesh and blood superstructure is built, and the construction of the Temple will be commendable only in so far as each support, especially the strongest ones, are correct in structure. The bones of the Human Temple represent the lowest degree of Thought, for they are the bases of low vibration upon which the more highly vibrating essentials are supported.

Real Marriage within the Temple, the union of mortal Man, or the priestly Custos of the Temple, with his Spiritual Bride or Spiritual Nature is the subduing of his animal or sex nature, equivalent to the Masonic adjuration to "learn to subdue one's passions." In this view, mortal woman viewed as a separate entity is an illusion of the sex nature and a substitute for REAL spiritual Marriage. Let us analyze the 47th Problem of Euclid so well known to Masonic initiates.

**47th Problem of Euclid.**—With the Triangle before us, let A represent the base, B the upright side forming the right angle, and C the hypotenuse. In this case also let

A represent Matter—Earth.

B represent Light—Spirit.

Now Matter is in one sense interrupted Light, confined, and thus visible to us.

Light or Spirit descends into Earth or "Her," and "She" is said to be warmed by it "Him" and to conceive by "It" or "Him."

Using the same figure, we will assume that

A represents the female, recumbent.

B represents the male upright.

Neither, under present conditions of evolution, can produce without the other, yet even when joined at the angle, they cannot unite their MINDS unless a third party or condition, C, the Hypotenuse, be present. This third party must be equal in potentiality to the other two; in other words, it must be competent to join these other two, and this third condition or Hypotenuse is none other than the spiritual perception which spans all, equal to each terminus, and thus overcoming distance and effecting unity. The

male cannot express his "Name" alone. The female cannot express her "Name" alone, thus the one is merged into the other to present to the world ONE FLESH, or duality in unity. Just as among the Three Grand Masters neither could express his secret name or word alone, but the three must be present, so in the triangle of the 47th Problem of Euclid the three, A, B, C, must be present to complete the triangle, express unity and reveal in its name the deep esoteric truth involved.

**Giving the Name.**—The Master Mason, Master Builder, Master Architect and Master Workman who is competent to utilize the material that these two Fellow Crafts A and B present, and from such material build a Temple fit for God (the Divine Mind) to live in—such a Master also has a "Name" (The Word). No one of the Three has the whole word, each has only a fractional part. Hence the tradition that the "Grand Omnific Word" cannot be expressed (spoken) except in the presence of the Three Masters, A, B, C, or Kings Solomon and Hiram, and Hiram Abiff.

**Square of the Hypothenuse.**—The square of the hypothenuse is equal to the square of the perpendicular and the square of the base. For a third figure, therefore, let each of the triangular sides be the diameter of a sphere. The C equals Truth, the Word of God.

A equals Love, the Mother Mind.

B equals Wisdom, the Father Mind.

Hence the angle of the square is the emblem of virtue, or the union of Love and Wisdom.

Love cannot express itself or herself without the assistance of Wisdom, the Father principle, and herein lies the secret of evolution and the necessity for the union of the sexes.

**Human Temple a Microcosm.**—The Human Temple is also the microcosm of the first of all known Temples, the Garden of Eden, in which God Himself was the Hierophant, Archangels and Cherubim His ministering priests, and Man—made, as we are told, a "little lower than the Angels" (Heb. ii, 7), and to whom even the Angels were to be ministering spirits—the image of Himself. Out of that Garden ran a river, the passage from the mouth to the stomach in the Human Temple. Thence it parted into the rivers Pison, Gihon, Hiddekel and Euphrates. Pison is the urinary system; Gihon the large colon leading to the rectum, Ethiopia or Darkness; Hiddekel is the circulatory system, and the Euphrates is the mystic stream of life of the Divine potency in the blood that preserves and perpetuates.



**Adam and Eve.**—Adam and Eve are the Objective and Subjective Minds in the Human Temple.

The Body symbolizes the Earth and like the Earth is bidden to be fruitful and multiply, even as the Temple is to be fruitful and multiplying in all good works, replenishing the Earth with fruits of the Spirit—meekness, gentleness, patience and love. The Serpent of the Garden is the objective mind deceiving the subjective, crossing or reversing the original conditions in the Garden, causing the Tenant or Custos to eat of the forbidden fruit of the Knowledge of Good and Evil, thence becoming the “prodigal son” wasting his substance in dissipation through the senses and sex. The Crucifixion is the recrossing to the subjective mind’s supremacy and drinking of the cup of bitterness thereby; the Fall of Man was the Fall of the Custos of the Human Temple, the Spirit falling into Materiality; and the Death on the Cross was the death of spiritual perception on the objective and subjective wills.

**Human Aura.**—The original aura of Man as the sacred custos was the golden yellow, then the blue, orange-green and outside rose-pink, but when he transgressed, the golden yellow stepped across the rose-pink and became the flaming red, the Angel with the flaming sword or guardian of the East Gate.

**Colors of the Temple.**—The colors of the Temple auras show the functions observed therein.

Golden yellow flashes show high spiritual thoughts and Divine Love.

Blue-Deep Indigo to pale Yellow, the aesthetic, beautiful and sublime.

Orange Color, physical health.

Green—pea-green, social; bottle-green, financial.

Red—deep wine to fiery, physical, excitability, energy, anger.

Red—crimson to scarlet, the lower passions.

BUT—

THOUGH YOUR SINS BE AS SCARLET, THEY SHALL BE WHITE AS SNOW; THOUGH THEY BE LIKE CRIMSON, THEY SHALL BE WHITE AS WOOL. By entering into the SILENCE we may effect this, for silence is GOLDEN, and the GOLD will transmute all lower and baser metals. That is why we remarked previously—“be STILL, and KNOW that I AM God.”

**How Sin entered into the World.**—By one man (Objective mind) sin entered into the world and death by sin. Death of peace and harmony as long as the objective mind rules the Custos of the Human Temple and his sacrifice will be in vain.

**How the Dead are Raised Up.**—But how are the dead “*raised*” up, and with what body do they come, asks the Biblical inquirer? The dead referred to is the subjective mind. It is raised up by centralizing and concentrating in the Golden Silence. All the biblical wars are symbols of the warfare between the objective and subjective minds, of the material and spiritual Man, on which the safety, preservation and usefulness of the Human Temple depend.

**The Ages.**—The first third of the last six thousand years witnessed the functions of the Pyramids and the Great Community Temples of antiquity. Then the sun was in Taurus and it was known as the Taurian Age.

Next came the Piscean Age of Messiahs, the age of the Oannes and Icthus. This was the age of amplified revelations to mankind.

Now enters the Aquarian Age, when it will be possible for the Custos of the Human Temple to actively function in the offices of the High Priest by entering into the Holy of Holies and controlling the power of the Ark of the Covenant therein. The Prince of Darkness, the objective mind, went out to deceive the Soul of Man, but the day is at hand when the Prince of Darkness shall be overthrown by the powers of Light and Life, which we as Masons are supposed to have received.

**Biblical Definitions.**—The Biblical Bethlehem is the House of Bread, the Stomach, the Manger, where the Three Wise Men, i. e., the Threefold Spirit, shall, in triumph over the appetites of flesh, witness the birth of the Christos through the light and radiance of the Solar Energy received via the Solar Plexus. The Inn is the Head; Jesus in the Temple disputing with the doctors thereof, is the Pineal Body in the Brain involved with the present inhibiting faculties of the Brain, and ultimately triumphing over and confounding them. John baptized with water, but he, Jesus, baptized with the Holy Ghost and with FIRE, the Waters of child-birth and the Fire of passion and bodily combustion during mortal life, over which we triumph to attain immortality.

**Israel in Bondage.**—The Children of Israel in bondage to Pharaoh were the reasoning faculties of primitive and present Man in bondage to the King of Egypt or the Black Land, the objective mind and sensoria. The Children of Israel are also the higher thoughts of the subjective mind, but held in bondage.

**The Disciples of Jesus.**—The Disciples of Jesus and the Levites or Servers of the Human Temple are, the Bony Man, the Venous, Muscular, Arterial, Tubular, Lymphatic, Sympathetic, Organic, Cerebro-spinal and Skin Man, and the Conscious and Sub-conscious Faculties, twelve in all.

Jesus, the mystic thirteenth, was the "Son of Man," the highest development of the Hierophant of the Human Temple, in his time.

"And he carried me away in spirit to a great and high mountain (the Pineal Body) and showed me the great city, the Holy Jerusalem (the Physical Body, the Human Temple) descending out of Heaven (crystallized or precipitated out of the spiritual regions into Matter) from God."

**The Twelve Foundations.**—The twelve foundations of the Holy City or Temple are the twelve salts of the Body.

In reference to the Rib story it is interesting to note that the letter "R" Resh, means rest. "I" is the principle of the Universe. "B" Beth, stands for House. The House is Man's Body. The masculine principle was originally within the House. After its differentiation, out of the House came the feminine principle, the Womb-man.

**The Devil.**—The serpent or devil we have still with us. Study the functions of the Liver, understand its treacherous nature and the trouble it may cause. Then reverse the letters of the word for him who has "lived" not wisely, but too well, and the Devil is present. Also note that the "Tree of Life" was and IS at present in the MIDST of the Garden or Human Temple.

**The Serpent.**—The serpent was condemned to eat the dust of the Earth. In the ancient interpretations, D stands for door, "U" for urn, "S" for sin, "T" for cross. The urn is the door through which the objective mind is condemned to go to the cross, and it is significant that Jesus died the death OF the cross, not ON the cross. When man fell, symbolically, the womb became the apparent tomb of humanity and the objective mind is the stone that seals it as the sepulchre.

**Human Temple is Divine; Number of Cells.**—Our Human Temple is divine, for its inhabitant is the God-man; Jesus as such said, "Come unto me, and I will give you rest," and again, "In my Father's House are MANY mansions." Man is a thought of God projected into manifestation. In the Human Temple it has been estimated that there are over 798 quintillion cells actively func-

tioning. There are indeed many mansions, for each cell has its individual intelligence, and the sum total of the wisdom and intelligence to be placed at the service of Humanity by our Human Temple is the sum total of the intelligence of these 798 quintillion cells. Yet how many of us as Masons use the working tools at our disposal in order, like the men in the parable of the talents, to increase our total intelligence.

Having objective eyes, we see not with the spirit.

Having objective ears, we hear not spiritually.

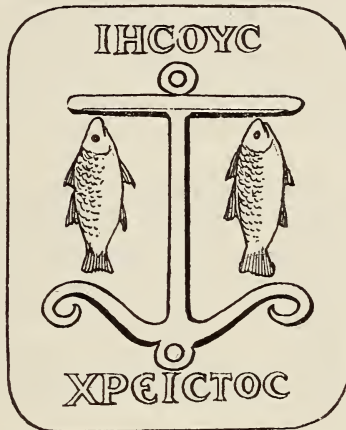
**The Mystic Life Stream.**—Day by day we waste our Divine Powers. The mystic life stream containing the Icthi or Fish in the spermatozoa sometime will cease to flow, and every day brings the dead and dying fish nearer to the Dead Sea.

**Where Jesus Was Born.**—The Man Jesus was symbolically born in Bethlehem of Judea because there was no room for him in the Inn, or the head, meaning the intellectual faculties of his day. The umbilicus or Cable Tow dividing his body signified the two Kingdoms of Israel, the upper part of the body being Israel, the lower Judah. Beth means House; Lehem means Bread. Therefore in his House of Bread the Life Force first begins its nutritive functioning. The Baptism of water in Jordan is the beginning of the spiritual ministry, when the watery fluids rise and spread over the internal parts of the corpus prior to the general distribution of the spiritual afflatus for the later work, and is the cleansing of the Human Temple. The name Jesus in one interpretation really means "Fish in the stream," and its significance will not be lost to those who may be students of the Rosicrucian Teachings.

**The Crucifixion.**—The crucifixion took place between two thieves. So are we crucified daily (as St. Paul said, "I die daily"), between the two principles of the masculine and feminine sexual urge, which would steal our powers and potencies.

**Menstruation.**—When we understand the feminine aspect of the Human Temple we shall see how the Biblical Tree yielded its fruit every month. From the Throne of God and the Lamb (the masculine and feminine principles in Nature) in the midst of the street of it (the Holy City, the Human Temple) and on either side the River (Pison) we find the outer appurtenances of the sex organs. The twelve Gates of the City are the Twelve orifices of the Human Temple; two eyes, two nostrils, two ears, mouth, anus, urethra, umbilicus, two mammae.

**Judas.**—The betrayer Judas is symbolized by the male organ without the Temple which hanged its head, and the symbolism is further carried out by the reference to the office of Judas in John xiii, 29. In the first sex relation Man meets with RESISTANCE, and in rupturing the cord and hymen the blood is sprinkled over the lintel of the entrance.



The "Ichthus" (Fish) of the Early Christians.

FIG. 88

THE "ICHTHUS" (*Fish*) OF THE EARLY CHRISTIANS.  
THE SIGN OF THE FISH.

Ancient seals, gems, etc., bearing the symbol of the Fish are well known to most occult students, especially those familiar with the philosophy of the Gnostics. The Greek word for Fish "Icthus," is made up of the initial letters of the five Greek words *I*eous *C*hristos. *T*heou *U*ios *S*oter, meaning, Jesus Christ, the Son of God, Saviour. This word and the source of its derivation are not entirely unknown to Rosicrucian students, but it is also well to point out that the symbolism of the Fish in connection with Christianity has had many more applications than that of a mere acrostic. In the life of Jesus, the *Christos*, the Miracle of the Loaves and the Fishes, the choosing of the Fishermen, the authorizing of "Fishers of Men," the Sign of *Pisces* (the Fishes) and many other features point to the symbolism of the Fish as containing much more than a superficial meaning. The Fisherman's Ring of the Roman Pontiff in itself is a persistence of an ancient occult symbology. Needless to say, the subject will prove of interest to all Rosicrucian Initiates.

So far we have considered the Biblical analogies to the Human Temple even to minutiae. But esoterically we find the same truth prevails. Thus the

1. Physical Body is the Ground Floor of the Temple.
  2. The Etheric Body is the Middle Chamber of the Temple.
  3. The Astral Boy is the Sanctum Sanctorum of the Temple.
- The last analogy obtaining only while mortal incarnation oc-

curs and shows forth the application of the Threefold Body. Each of these Bodies or divisions has its full equipment of Temple furniture in the organs and psychic centers wholly or partially developed at the present stage of evolution.

The purpose of this monograph has not been to satisfy a certain curiosity regarding the interesting analogies cited. It is a real, vital message if you will receive it as such. Human life is more than a life of sense gratification. The duty of the priestly Hierophant is vastly more than directing the orderly functioning of countless millions of active cells. Let this message come to you as Masons as the voice of one crying in the wilderness, "prepare ye, for the Kingdom of God is at hand"—is here, and WITH-IN YOU.

What can we do, small in number as we are? The last Avatar delivered his message to twelve illiterate men and the whole world has suffered convulsions of thought ever since from the active exercise of their zeal. One of those men was a traitor and such we have ever with us in every twelve. Another betrayed his Master, yet to him the Master gave the Keys of Heaven and Hell and upon him built a Church against which He said that the Gates of Hell should not prevail.

If our twentieth century intelligence has progressed ever so little beyond the intelligence of the twelve men of that day in ancient Judea, then we can do much. If we seek the flesh pots of Masonic titular honors and fame we shall accomplish nothing.

**What we should work for; Divisions of the Temple.**—Let us work first of all to rid Masonry of the lie in its philosophy, for we may be sure that never will it take its rightful place in the world while a fable originated in enthusiastic ignorance is perpetuated in tacit, unintelligent acceptance. Spiritual power does not consort with untruth. Cleanse the fabric of Masonry and a new power will rise in the world the like of which cannot now be conceived.

**Spread the Message.**—Let every member who receives it undertake to spread the message of this monograph among his Masonic acquaintances and the seed sown will in due time bear fruit. It may even be that this message will prove to be the first step in a widespread movement for a better Masonry than we have ever known, than even its Founders ever knew, because of the greater intelligence of the Age.

**The Shekinah.**—Before closing it is proper to add a few lines descriptive of the theories advanced by Bro. G. S. Faber in his book, the "Mysteries of Cabiri," 704, e, 14, 1863. In writing of

the Ark he says: "The SHEKINAH dwells between Man and Woman (Talmud, Sotah 17 B). When Israel worshipped the Lord the Kerubim in the Temple lovingly turned their faces to each other and embraced. This was the Union of God and Israel. The Covenant between God and Israel is that of the restoration of the fallen and divided sex-nature by regeneration. Of this regeneration, the ARK was the prototype.

Upon the ARK were imposed two Kerubim, male and female.

1. Of GOLD; of beaten work. The sublimated state of their lower nature.
2. Facing one another. In an act of common contemplation and ecstasy.
3. Inverted, with wings uprising above their heads, to denote the exalted nature of their aspiration. S. U. A. T.

The result of their contemplation was the manifestation of Deity midway between them, at the point of impact of their thought waves; thus joined together by God.

The crisis of animal conjunction is a shadow of the ecstasy of spiritual union. "As above, so below."

*Cf. Hebrews ix, 1-5*, "Holiness to the Lord" necessary for those who would pierce beyond the Veil (Between the commonplace and the spiritual treatment of certain topics) as High Priests by Initiation.

And here is the symbolic meaning of the objects in the ARK.

1. Aaron's Rod. The surrender of the Magical Will of the Kerubim to the Divine Will, whose emblem is the still, dark cavity of the Ark (Divine Darkness).
2. The Two Tables of the Law. The keeping of the Law and its Spirit, or the positive and negative sides.
3. The Pot of Manna. The Bread of Heaven "like wafers made with honey." Panis supersubstantialis. The white brilliance of Kether. Creative force. *Rev. ii, 17*.

**Inner Meaning.**—The Cavity and the objects represent the male and female organs of generation in a state of consecrated conjunction and equilibrium. *Cf. Logion*, "When the two shall be made one," etc., etc.

1. The Cavity, is the female womb or receptive cavity, or matrix. Kabbalistically Eve-Malkuth. He, Vau.
2. Aaron's Rod, which budded and bore fruit, male organs of generation, Kabbalistic meaning of Yod, Yesod.

3. Tables of Stone; male testes. Witnesses or Stones are the female ovaries. According to Kabbalistic tradition and Boehme, the Tables were spherical.
4. Pot of White Manna; The male semen, life force and creative essence, secreted by the action of the Stones on which the Law was imposed. This Manna (Man-hu) is to be kept for your (re)generation. *Ex. xvi, 33.*

The physical organs and functions are to be kept utterly in subjection, even as placed beneath the contemplative Cherubim—they have their correspondences in the higher portion of man's nature, as signified by the uplifting and activity of the Cherubim's wings.

Boehme says, Man is FIRE and sows soul. Woman is Water and sows spirit, and both sow flesh.

FIRE and Water in conjunction and interaction generate Air and Warmth, Spirituality and Substance; hence four arms of the Rose Cross; but this substance is that of the regenerated body of glory.

The Cherubim contemplate the rebirth of the two individuals in God. The interaction caused by contemplation transplants from the one to the other their respective male and female tinctures, each becoming impregnated with that tincture of which naturally he or she is deficient. In the divided sex nature of each an image of the bisexual paradisaical body is thus built up, undergoing a period of gestation, fixation, quickening, in correspondence with the natural process until in the appointed time—"unto us a son is born."

It is also notable that in the Graal story, the Graal Ark contained:

1. Aaron's Rod—the Lance Head.
2. Tables of Stone—the Three Nails.
3. Cavity—the Graal Dish. (Grael.)

These examples have not been cited for the purpose of dwelling upon sexual analogies unduly, but in order to show how in very truth the Human Temple is in its every aspect a true Microcosm of the Greater Cosmic Temple. When we as Masons realize the potential powers of the "I," the "ME," and the "THOU" we shall gain a concept of our responsibility not only to ourselves, not only to the Great Brotherhood of Man, but our responsibility to the Divine spark of the Great Central Flame which dwelleth in each. To enter consciously into the active assumption of such responsibility is to "KNOW OURSELVES."



**Life Work of the Individual.**—The life work of the individual is vastly more than the mere matter of directing the organization of protoplasm. That is why we are particularly instructed to take no thought of the morrow—"what we shall eat, etc." Let us keep in mind at all times that vaster, more stupendous truth, that we, Human Temples, are the microcosmic reproductions of the macrocosmic Temple, the Grand Man of the Universe, and that if from one point of vantage we could see the starry galaxy in its entirety we should behold on the cosmic scale the colossal amplification of our own selves—the universe in the shape of the Cosmic or Grand Man; of which suns and their attendant solar systems are but the organs or various vital cosmic functions. Then when we comprehend the relations borne by Mother Earth to the Grand Man of the Universe, we shall also comprehend how we are brought forth of that marriage or union as individual Temples, each having microcosmic organs and vital functions corresponding to those on the vaster scale.

**Man, a Mine.**—Lastly, Brethren, remember that Man, chemically, physiologically and alchemically is a composition of metals and minerals. Man therefore is a MINE, and whenever we speak of the "Quarries of Masonry" we should not mean the useful and agreeable occupation of delving into Masonic history, records, archives, etc., but intellectually mining Man himself, for the truer and deeper knowledge of ourselves, that shall give us the Light that our rituals symbolically confer, but which it is our bounden duty to seek in stern reality. In that way we shall enter into the light that in very truth passes all human understanding and takes us into the very presence of the Great Architect of the Universe, whose workmen we here on earth pretend to be.

#### QUESTIONS ON INSTRUCTION No. 13

1. Does the Brotherhood enter into any Masonic controversies?
2. What does it teach regarding the origin of Freemasonry?
3. Do the Rosicrucian teachings indicate the true Temple?
4. How may any degrees be misused?
5. What is the origin of each Fraternity?
6. To what House are allusions frequently made in Masonry and Rosicrucianism?
7. How may we be helped to show the identity of the true Temple?

8. When was the esoteric truth "lost"?
9. Outline the Fable of the Material Temple of Solomon.
10. What was its size? Are its ruins comparable to those of even later date?
11. What sort of Temple is required to meet conditions involved?
12. What is the REAL Temple?
13. Where is the Truth least emphasized in this matter?
14. What is the best exegesis of the Human Temple?
15. What body has the key to the mystery?
16. What journey is traced in the Tradition?
17. What changes are encountered?
18. Is the Human Temple made with hands?
19. What are the notable features of all religious architecture?
20. How is comparison made with the Hebrew Temple? The Pyramid? Gothic Cathedrals?
21. How with the Tabernacle in the Wilderness?
22. What are the divisions of the human torso?
23. Give analogies in orientation.
24. What will result when human heart changes are accomplished?
25. Describe the Veils of the Temple.
26. What is the Stone previously made ready?
27. What are the Winding Stairs?
28. What is the Golden Pot of Manna?
29. Why is the Ark lined with gold?
30. How is the "Dome of the Rock" symbolized?
31. What was the age-old belief regarding stones?
32. To what did the color of the Heart and its content give rise?
33. What were the Four ancient Temples?
34. How is each one symbolized?
35. What is the "Great Cloud"?
36. What is the "Noise of Wings"?
37. What are the "Thousands that minister"?
38. What is said of Jesus as a Builder?
39. Give the Greek definition of Theos.
40. What was the Egyptian "Amen"?
41. Give the Egyptian scheme of the elements.
42. What is meant by the line—"He cometh in clouds"?
43. What are the "Eyes, "Kindreds" and "Tribulations"?
44. Of what are the sexual glands a modification?
45. What is said esoterically of the stomach?
46. What must the REAL Temple contain?

47. Why is Man, Masonically designated as such?
48. Give an idea of the "Rib story."
49. What are the "Lightnings"?
50. What is the place of the soul?
51. What are the "Two Pillars"?
52. What is the Third Pillar?
53. What particular sanctity attaches to these pillars?
54. What is said of the Clitoris?
55. How do the Pillars differentiate?
56. What are the Outer Coverings of the Temple?
57. What are the Great Stones?
58. What was the number employed on the Temple said to be?
59. Who were the Three Great Directors?
60. What did these three directors constitute?
61. What are some other Temple Veils?
62. What is said of the "I AM"?
63. What does St. Luke say about the mysteries?
64. Where should true marriage occur?
65. Give an illustration.
66. What is the story of Jacob and the Angel?
67. How is it explained?
68. Explain the 47th Problem of Euclid esoterically.
69. How was "The Name" to be communicated originally?
70. Why cannot it be so given now?
71. Explain the Square of the Hypothenuse.
72. What is the Human Temple said to be?
73. What are Adam and Eve in relation to the Human Temple?
74. What is said of the Human Aura?
75. What were the colors of the Temple?
76. What may become of "scarlet sins"?
77. How did sin enter the world?
78. How are the Dead "Raised UP"?
79. Give the "Ages."
80. Give the biblical definitions of bodily organs.
81. What is meant by Israel in bondage?
82. Who were the Disciples of Jesus?
83. What were the Twelve Foundations?
84. How is the word "Devil" to be derived?
85. Why is the Human Temple Divine?
86. What is the number of bodily cells estimated to be?
87. What is the mystic life stream?
88. Where was Jesus born?

89. How does the Crucifixion take place?
90. Give the meaning of menstruation in connection with this legenda.
91. What is the symbolism of Judas?
92. What are the esoteric divisions of the Temple?
93. What should we work for especially?
94. What message is to be spread?
95. Where dwells the Shekinah?
96. What is the inner meaning of it?
97. What does Boehme say of Fire and Water?
98. What do the cherubim contemplate?
99. What is the life work of the individual?
100. How is man said to be a mine?



INSTRUCTION XVI.  
CHRISTIAN ROSENCREUTZ.

HIS REAL AND ALLEGED CONNECTION WITH THE ROSICRUCIAN  
ORDER AND HIS STATUS THEREIN. DETAILS OF THE  
ROSENCREUTZ LEGEND AND TRADITION.

---

“C. RC.”—Much has been written about the life, character and works of the personality known as Christian Rosencreutz, commonly referred to among Rosicrucian students as “C. RC.”

**Many accounts.**—The accounts of his life, written by exponents of nearly every school of occult thought, Masonic researchers, apologists of an historical turn of mind as well as those who sincerely desire to be recognized as accredited authorities and biographers, agree in essentials, but differ widely in their attempted explanations of the esotericism involved.

**An encyclopaedic testimony.**—One encyclopaedist states that some of the writers who assumed to be Rosicrucians “were moral and religious reformers, and utilized the technicalities of chemistry (alchemy) and the sciences generally as media through which to make known their opinions, there being a flavor of mysticism or occultism promotive of inquiry and suggestive of hidden meanings discernible or discoverable only by adepts.

**Johann Valentin Andrea.**—The same encyclopaedist continues: “The publication of the *Allgemeine und General-Reformation der ganzen weiten Welt* (Cassel, 1614), and the *Fama Fraternitatis* (Cassel, 1615), by the Lutheran theologian Johann Valentin Andrea (1586-1654), caused intense excitement throughout Europe, and they not only led to many re-issues but were followed by many pamphlets, favorable and otherwise, whose authors generally knew little, if anything, of the real aims of the original author, and doubtless not in a few cases amused themselves at the expense of the public.

**Date of First MS.**—“It is probable that the first work was circulated in MS. about 1610, for it is said that a reply was written

in 1612 (according to Herder), but if so, there was no public mention of the cult before that decade.

**Genesis overlooked.**—"The curious legend, in which the fabulous origin of the so-called society was enshrined (that a certain Christian Rosencreutz had discovered the secret wisdom of the East on a pilgrimage in the 15th century), was so improbable, though ingenious, *THAT THE GENESIS OF THE ROSICRUCIANS WAS GENERALLY OVERLOOKED OR IGNORED,*<sup>1</sup> but the worthy objects of the fratres were soon discovered and supported by several able men, the result being a mass of literature on the subject."<sup>2</sup>



FIG. 89  
JOHANN VALENTIN ANDREA.



FIG. 90  
JACOB BOEHME.

**Point of emphasis.**—The italics in the quotation noted above are ours, for they indicate the exact point that requires emphasis. First, in the discussion of the legenda, the REAL origin and antiquity of the Rosicrucians was "overlooked," and this has been the main reason for the mass of conjecture, hypothesis, imagination and guess work of later writers through all the succeeding years. Second, in the contemplation of the legenda and the romance connected therewith in the "Chymical Marriage," Christian Rosencreutz has become popularly accepted as the Founder of the Order, which, however, is not the exact truth. Third, the discussion regarding the peculiar teachings of Rosicrucian writers, real and alleged, and the relation of these writings to the moot religious controversies of the day, was the beginning of the mass of

literature, most of it speculative, which has formed the basis of nearly all subsequent writings concerning the Order and its Teachings.

**Rosicrucians agree with Jacob Boehme.**—For those students who desire to study original works on the subject, the following are recommended:

Echo of the Society of the Rosy Cross, 1597.

Confessio Fraternitatis Rosae Crucis, 1615.

Thesaurinella Chymica-aurea, Sec. 244, Raymundii Lullii Theoria.

Themis Aurea, hoc est, de legibus Fraternitatis Rosae Crucis; by Michael Maier, Cologne, 1615.

Epistola ad patres de Rosea Cruce, Frankfurt, 1617.

De Naturae secretis quibusdam at Vulcaniam artem chymicae ante omnia necessariis, addressed to the Masters of the Philosophic Fraternity of the Rosy Cross, 1618.

**Andrea leaves the Order.**—While it is certain that Andrea was at first closely identified with the Rosicrucians, he, as a Lutheran clergyman and theologian, later found himself at variance with them, and endeavored in his subsequent writings to discredit his former association with them. Later he attempted to found in Austria the "Fraternitas Christi," with which many of the Protestant Austrian nobility became identified. It was suppressed by an opposition Order founded by the Catholic Church and known as the "Blue Cross." Heckethorn publishes an amusing ritual ascribed to the Rosicrucians, which, as any initiate would easily recognize, was purely for the purpose of diverting attention from the real practice of the Art.<sup>3</sup>

**English Rosicrucians.**—It is with English Rosicrucianism that we are particularly interested and the complete chronology of the Rosicrucians can be had in detail from the interesting and authoritative volume by Mr. H. V. A. Parsell, entitled "The Rosicrucians and Freemasonry." Among English Rosicrucians, Robert Fludd (Robertus de Fluctibus), was the great exponent and is commonly referred to as "the Great English Rosicrucian." His most important works are "Apologia et Compendiaria Fraternitatem de Rosea Cruce suspicionis et infamiae maculis aspersam, vertatis quasi Fluctibus abluens et abstergens," Leyden, 1616, and "Tractatus Apologeticus integritatem Societatis de Rosea Cruce defendeus," Lugdavi Batavorum, 1617.

**Fludd and Heydon.**—After Fludd came Heydon, who was born in 1629. Notable among his writings on the Rosicrucians occur the following lines, taken from his “An Epilogue for an Apilogue”: “I shall tell you what Rosicrucians are, and that Moses was their father. Some say they were of the order of Elias, some of Ezechiel, others define them to be the officers of the generalissimo of the world; they are as the eyes and ears of the Great King, seeing and hearing all things, for they are seraphically illuminated as Moses was, according to this order of the elements, earth refined to water, water to air, air to fire.” Such a statement as this must have called forth derision among those unfamiliar with occult or



FIG. 91  
DR. ROBERT FLUDD.



FIG. 92  
MICHAEL MAIER.

especially Hermetic verbiage at that time, as it surely does now. However, the significance of this statement lies in the fact that the Rosicrucians of that time claimed an origin far antedating that of the Rosencreutz legend and agreeing with the historical record as given in the Neophyte's Degree in our modern Colleges.

**Elias Ashmole and others.**—The year 1646 was notable for the institution by Elias Ashmole, William Lilly, Dr. Thomas Wharton, Dr. J. Hewitt, Dr. J. Pearson and others, of a Rosicrucian society in London. The main purpose of their organization, it is said, was to carry out the idea of the erection of the House of Solomon, as contained in Bacon's “New Atlantis.”

**Work of the Society.**—This society was to remain as secret as the Island of Bensalem, in other words, it was to study nature esoterically. The carpet of the lodge was to represent the Pillars



Utriusque Cosmi  
 MAIORIS scilicet et MINORIS METAPYSICA, PHYSICA  
 ATQVE TECHNICA  
 HISTORIA

In duo Volumina secundum COSMI differentiam diuisa.

AVTHORE ROBERTO FLUDD *alias de Fluctibus Armigero.*

*& in Medicina Doctore Oxoniensi*

Tomus Primus

De Macrocosmi Historia in duos tractatus diuisa

Quorum	Primus de	Metaphysico Macrocosmi et Creaturarum illius ortu Physico Macrocosmi in generatione & corruptione progressu.
	Secundus de Arte Naturae sive in Macrocosmo producta & in coelestibus & multiplicata cuius filias praecipuas hic anatomia viva recensimus, nempe	

OPPENHEMII  
 EREJOHAN-THEODORI DE BRY  
 Typis HIERONYMI GALLERI  
 ANNO MDCCXVII



FIG. 93. Title Page from R. Fludd, Opera. Tome 1, Anno MDCCXVII Utriusque Cosmi Maioris Scilicet et Minoris Metaphysica, Physica Atque Technica Historia.

of Hercules; seven steps were used in the rite, the first four of which symbolized the Four Elements, Fire, Air, Water and Earth, and the remaining three steps symbolized Salt, Sulphur and Mercury. These steps led to an "exchequer" or higher court, on which were displayed the symbols of creation, or the work of the six creative days. The meetings were held in Masons' Hall, Masons' Alley, Basinghall Street, London.

**Exoteric meaning of the Name.**—It is often assumed that the name of the Soicety is derived from that of Christian Rosencreutz. Other writers assert it to have been originated from the armorial



FIG. 94  
ELIAS ASHMOLE.

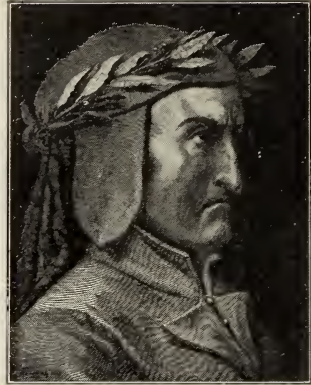


FIG. 95  
DANTE ALIGHIERI.

bearings of the Andrea family, the fallacy of which is shown by the fact that the Society antedated that family. Other speculators have concluded that the name is taken from ros—dew, and crux—the cross. The latter is assumed to symbolize LVX, or light, because the figure X represents the three letters; and Light, according to Rosicrucian teaching, also produces gold, while dew-ros, was considered a most potent solvent. Still other apologists believe that the rose and cross of the Rosicrucians were taken from the seal of Martin Luther, which was a cross-crowned heart rising from the center of a rose.

**Antiquity of the Rose and Cross.**—But we have only to turn to the Hindu mysteries, where we discover that Lakschemi, the wife of Vishnu, was found in a rose with 108 leaves, identical with the number of beads on an Indian rosary, and to the Hindus the cross was the symbol of creation. In the Eleusinian Mysteries we

find the same importance of the rose; Apuleius makes Lucius to be restored to his original form by eating roses; the "Romance of the Rose" is notable in Provençal literature.

The five fundamental laws of the Rosicrucians were:

1. To dress in the costume of the country in which they lived.
2. To heal the sick, gratuitously.
3. To attend every year the meeting of the Order.
4. When dying, to choose a successor.
5. To preserve the secret one hundred years.

**Poetical Fictions of the Rosicrucians.**—The poetical fictions regarding the Rosicrucians are best known from the writings of Joseph Francis Borri, of Milan. To his writings is largely due the "poetic splendor which surrounds the Order," and much of the enhancement of mysticism and mystery. But in his later works Borri inclined to heresy and was seized and condemned to perpetual imprisonment by the Inquisition. He died in the Castle of St. Angelo in 1695. The principal work of Borri to which reference is made is his "Key to the Cabinet of Signor Borri" and is substantially the kabalistic romance entitled "The Count de Gabbalis," published in 1670 by the Abbe de Villars.

**The Elementals in Fiction.**—According to the above named work, Man is surrounded by hosts of beautiful beings, who may be enlisted in his service. These beings are described as Elementals. It peopled the Air with Sylphs, the Fire with Salamanders, the Water with Undines and the Earth with Gnomes. These beings, according to the fanciful concept of the times, could be secured to Man's service by incorporation in mirrors, rings and precious stones, and were obliged to appear when summoned.

**Man's Superiority.**—Man was held to be superior to these beings in one great respect—he had an immortal soul. Any one of these beings, it was believed, could become partaker in Man's immortality by inspiring in one of the humans the passion of love. Thus we have Shakespeare's Ariel, a sylph; "Undine," "Rape of the Lock," "Masque of Comus," the poem "Salamandrine" and many others. The Elementals were said to be composed of the purest atomic particles of the substance of which they were habi-tant, either Earth, Air, Fire or Water, and that in consequence of having no other antagonistic element in their substance they could live indefinitely, but not immortally.

Further agreement with the Signatura Rerum.—The Rosi-crucian writers of acknowledged authority in those times further

*Integræ Naturæ Speculum, Artisquæ imago.*



FIG. 96

BEAUTIFUL ENGRAVED PLATE BY THE CELEBRATED THEODORE DE BRY FROM THE ORIGINAL EDITION OF FLUDD'S DE MACROCOSMI HISTORIA. FROM THESE PLATES THE STUDENT WILL BE ABLE TO TRACE THE VARIOUS PROCESSES IN ROSI-CRUCIAN COSMOLOGY OUTLINED IN THE INSTRUCTIONS GIVEN IN THIS BOOK.

agreed with the Signatura Rerum (a notable work by Jacob Boehme), that everything in this external world “has outwardly impressed upon it its inward spiritual character, and they taught

that by the practice of virtue the Mortal could attain to knowledge of the Spiritual while yet incarnate and discover the Philosopher's Stone, which could not be found except by the regenerate, for it is in close communion with the heavenly essence." Thus the letters INRI signified to them, *Ignis Natura Regenerando Integra*.

**Rosicrucians at the Hague.**—A strong body of Rosicrucians is known to have existed at the Hague in 1622 from the fact of the public expulsion of Montanus, or to give his true name, Ludwig Conrad, of Bingen. These Rosicrucians, while maintaining the usual "Great House," met on call of the Imperator in such cities as Amsterdam, Danzig, Nuremberg, Hamburg, Mantua and Venice. They wore in public a black silk cord, but at Convocations they wore a gold band to which were attached the Cross and Rose. Their certificate of membership consisted of a large parchment, duly inscribed with great ceremony and bearing many seals.

**Rosicrucians in Germany.**—That the Order flourished in Germany between 1641 and 1765 is known from the MS. of Dr. von Harliss.<sup>4</sup> This group followed the custom of all other known groups, in the ancient salutations. The method of addressing each other was, according to this custom, as follows: First *frater*, *Ave frater*; the answer was, *Roseae et aureae*; first *frater*, *crucis*; both together, *Benedictus Deus qui dedit nobis signum*. Then they mutually produced their seals and communicated "the name."

**New Constitution of 1714.**—A new Constitution appeared in 1714 (note its close approximation to the commonly ascribed origin of Freemasonry in 1717), which was entitled "The True and Perfect Preparation of the Philosopher's Stone of the Brotherhood of the Golden and Rosy Cross." "Published for the benefit of *Filiorum Doctrinae*, by *Sincero Renato*, Breslau." This document divides the practice of the Art into two separate groups—*Practica Ordinis Minoris* and *Practica Ordinis Majoris*; really two distinct Fraternities in one, the more important being the "Brethren of the Golden Cross," whose symbol was a red cross, and the "Brethren of the Rosy Cross," whose symbol was a green cross.

**Notable German Foundations.**—Rosicrucianism was openly professed by the Duke of Saxe-Weimar in 1742 (Duke Ernest Augustus), Frederick William of Prussia, afterward King Frederick William II. He established a Rosicrucian Lodge or College at Berlin in 1786, but the notorious Religious Edict of 1788, intended to suppress the Illuminati and restore the censorship of the Press, compelled the College to resort to such secrecy that later traces of

it are lost. A pseudo-expose entitled "The Rosicrucian in his Nakedness," by Master Pianco, supposedly an ex-member of the Society, was published in 1782 as a violent attack upon the Order at large and was given credence by many who had not the slightest idea of what Rosicrucianism really meant.<sup>5</sup>

Nuremberg, Dresden, Munich and Ancona were notable centers at about this time (1780-1790).

**Asiatic Brethren.**—Every Order has its offshoots, and this is true of Rosicrucianism. About 1780 was originated the Order of Asiatic Brethren. Its basis was Rosicrucian and its meetings were called Lodges of Melchizedek, and admitted Jews, Turks, Armenians and Persians. The complete title of the organization was "Order of the Knights and Brethren of Saint John the Evangelist from Asia in Europe." The Masters were styled "Worshipful Chiefs of the Seven Churches of Asia." While this Order manifested much hostility to the original Rosicrucians, nevertheless the Third Degree members were officially styled "True Rosicrucians." The full names of the degrees follow:

- 1st Degree. Knights and Brother-Initiates from Asia in Europe.
- 2nd Degree. Wise Masters.
- 3rd Degree. Royal Priests, or True Rosicrucians of the Degree of Melchizedek.

**Ritual of the "Theoretical Brethren."**—A book entitled "The Theoretical Brethren or Second Degree of Rosicrucians" appeared in 1785. According to this ritual, which, if it ever really existed is now obsolete, the Candidate must first be initiated on the Scotch Rite. He is then conducted into a large room illuminated by candles. At the east end is a square Altar, with a black cloth cover bearing an open Bible, the Laws and Landmarks of the Order and a black embroidered apron.

On the central cloth there was a globe with two rings, from the outer one of which rays proceed into clouds, in which are seen the Seven Planets. Above Mars is the Cubical Stone, and above the Globe the Blazing Star. Opposite Saturn was an Unhewn Stone. The symbolism is thus explained; the Planets promote the growth of the Seven Metals; the Blazing Star typifies Nature; the Two Circles the agens and patiens or male and female principles. The Unhewn Stone represents the *Materia Prima Philosophorum*; the Cubical Stone the *Patiens Philosophorum*. The Globe represents the Universality of the Lodge. The Brothers wore an apron of white, lined with black and embroidered.

The Jewel was of gilt brass and consisted of two triangles with rays, and the Hebrew Name of Jehovah. On the reverse were the signs of Venus and Mercury. It was attached to a black ribbon. The Sign was made by raising the right hand with the thumb and two forefingers extended and answered by placing the thumb and two forefingers over the heart. The grip consisted of taking the opposite person with the right hand around the waist. The word was Chaos.

The Third Degree was called Bracheus and the Word was Majim, answered by Brocha. The Fourth Degree was Philosophus; the Word Ruachhiber, and the Ninth Degree was Magus.

**Rosicrucians in Mauritius.**—In 1794 a College of Rosicrucians was known to have been flourishing in the Island of Mauritius, but of its subsequent history practically nothing is known, and while the Society forbade at that time the admission of women, it is known that the Abbess of Clermont, Leona Constantia, was actually received as a practicing member and master in 1736.

**Object of Alchemy.**—As the student has already noted, the object of Alchemy was threefold; the search of the Alkahest or Universal Solvent; the Lapis or stone or powder of transmutation, and the Elixir or Universal Medicine. The secret Mystery of Alchemy undoubtedly originated amongst a people given to metallurgy. This is the physical side of the Art. Alchemy is also psychological in its interpretation, and as such is related to Gnosticism. It is moral in its relation to humanity. It aimed in this sense at converting the lead of the body and the silver of the soul into the gold of the spirit, and it is this meaning that Aristotle employs when he says that all men have the Stone within them and that its conversion is the labor of wise men. The Mystic Marriage of the Sun and Moon, in its spiritual and operative sense, is the Union of Soul and Spirit to form the Gnostic Crestos (or Chrestos-Christ).

**What the Hermetic System Unites.**—“The Hermetic system united all nature, inasmuch as ‘that which is above is the same as that which is below.’ When it descends to the mineral kingdom, and the vegetable, it finds in these the same three principles as in Man, namely, a visible body, a virtue or soul, and a spark of the spirit, termed salt, sulphur and mercury, a divine triad; whilst the four lower principles are earth, air, fire and water, but which in another phase represent the physical, psychic, mental and spiritual planes of existence; which are, again, fixed, volatile and unstable. In operations, Alchemy held that ‘all things proceed from the

WILL of One,' and so all were again resolvable to first principles, and that metals might be separated, refined and reunited. They claimed that Moses was an Adept because he possessed the difficult process of reducing the golden calf to powder."<sup>6</sup>

**This Philosophy included in Modern Rosicrucianism.**—Rosicrucian students will observe that all this philosophy is incorporate in the teachings of advanced Rosicrucianism today, and so far as we have any record, always has been. We find evidences of it in the Rosicrucian MS. at Cologne, under the nom-de-plume of Omnis Moriar, recording a Rosicrucian Society in that city in 1115. Also in the Rosary of Arnold de Villanova, circa, 1230. In the Theatrum Chemicum Argentoratum, 1628, in connection with Count von Falkenstein, Prince Bishop of Treves in the 14th century, styled "Most Illustrious and Serene Prince and Father of Philosophers," the same teachings are brought out.

**Rosicrucians in Denmark.**—In 1484 traces of a Rosicrucian Society in Denmark appear under the name "Fraternitatus Rosarii Sleswicii condito, anno 1484." There are also evidences that in the early 17th century the King was at the head of the Order.

**Militia Crucifera Evangelica.**—A Society allied to the Rosicrucians and incorporating much of their philosophy was founded at Lunenberg in 1571, under the name Militia Crucifera Evangelica. The MS. of the Society refers to the Rose and Cross. This organization co-operated with another in Holland, known as the "Friends of the Cross."

**Illuminati.**—The Illuminati, founded May, 1776, by Professor Weishaupt, of Ingoldstadt, has been often confounded with the Rosicrucians, but was a distinct and separate organization.

**Reason of the Resume.**—This brief resume of known Rosicrucian activities and centers dating from even before the year 1300 and continuing almost to 1800 A. D. has been for the purpose of acquainting the student with somewhat of the various works both for and against the Order during a period when its very existence was most stoutly maintained and also most stoutly denied.

**Name of Christian Rosencreutz a focal point.**—All through this period the name of Christian Rosencreutz stands out as the central focal point around which the assumed existence of the Order is built. Many writers on Rosicrucian lore have attempted to identify him with various historical characters—Comte de St. Germain, Francis Bacon, Lord St. Albans, and several others. Some writers have even assumed to give his earlier incarnations,



as Melchizedek, from the obscurity of his origin and commission; the Masonic Hiram A., later becoming the Lazarus of the Gospel Jesus; Giordano Bruno, and still later concepts of him as reincarnate among the "Masters" of the modern theosophical organizations.

**Advice to the credulous.**—It is not our province to comment upon such assumptions, for reasons which the true occult student not blessed with too credulous emotionalism and imagination will divine. First of these reasons is that the ability of various well meaning writers to give authoritative statements regarding personalities in various incarnations is not yet so well attested as to entitle such assertions to merit serious consideration. It may be, and undoubtedly is, possible to read much in Akashic Records concerning cosmological processes, but we are well aware that in each individual homo there is a Holy of Holies, namely, the exact habitat of the Ego, and thus far no human eye has ever seen an EGO. We may clairvoyantly observe and study auras, and read the Memory of Nature, but the Ego is of the Substance of God, the Divine Resident Spark of the Great Central Flame, and—NO MAN HATH SEEN GOD AT ANY TIME.

**Human Lives are Secrets, Past and Present.**—Some things, in the ineffable wisdom of the higher spheres, are reserved from mortal exploitation, and chief among them is the privilege of preserving secret one's past lives. The individual may by development recover his or her own previous incarnations, but unless he or she gives to the clairvoyant examiner PERMISSION or AUTHORITY TO DO SO, no one, however well developed, can enter into the Holy of Holies of individual personal life careers. Otherwise a power would be placed within human possibility that would be inestimable in its danger. Observe, IT CAN BE DONE, BUT ONLY BY PERMISSION.

**Canon of Occult Law.**—Second among the reasons mentioned is that the Canon of Occult Law, up to the present time, is not sufficiently understood by modern psychics to entitle their observations and speculations in the domain of the previous incarnations to serious acceptance, with one single exception—the cases of personages who by their meritorious evolutionary progress have emerged from the privacy of individualism and become historical characters, thus belonging, not to themselves, but to the world and to all time. The life voyages of such personages as the Messiahs of all ages have become so plainly and indelibly written on the Akashic pages, that the developed psychic may read with a

considerable degree of accuracy, and such readings by many psychics will be found to agree in essentials.

**Rosencreutz not an Historical Character.**—But this rule does not apply in the case of Christian Rosencreutz. He may not be considered as an historical character. His existence is a matter of pure mythos to many scholars who have devoted a life-time to the research of Rosicruciana. The Brotherhood itself teaches that the existence, study, work and accomplishment of Christian Rosencreutz IS A FACT, BUT IT MUST ALSO BE STATED THAT THERE IS NO HISTORICAL OR EXTERNAL EVIDENCE TO PROVE IT. Therefore the Brotherhood leaves the matter to the developing ability of the individual student, after giving a definite amount of instruction regarding the matter in the Degrees of the Grades, and realizes that to each student will be given such interior illumination and revelation as his capacity therefor may permit.

**Christian Rosencreutz not the real Name of the person using it.**—We will try to amplify the preceding paragraph. We have stated that the Brotherhood teaches the actual existence of Christian Rosencreutz, but that there is no historical evidence to prove it. We are fully mindful of our Obligations of Secrecy, but we may state that the name "Christian Rosencreutz" was NOT THE REAL NAME OF THE PERSON WHO ASSUMED IT, which perhaps will make the matter clearer to initiate students.

**Where it was derived.**—In the Fama Fraternitatis (1610) the derivation of the Society from an unknown founder is given, and invariably the initials C. RC. Father R. C. and A. C. R. C. are used. No name has ever been given, although his life history is apparently a matter of more or less exact knowledge. Christian Rosencreutz is the name of the hero of the Chymical Marriage and is *supposed* to be identical with the initials given in the Fama. The allegory of Christian Rosencreutz is said by many writers to have been written by Francis Bacon, but of this initiate students must judge for themselves.

**The Three Great Treatises.**—The three great Treatises from which much of the Rosicruciana have sprung are:

1. Fama Fraternitatis of the Meritorious Order of the Rosy Cross. Written 1610, and addressed to the learned in general, and the Governors of Europe. Published at Cassel, 1614.
2. The Confession of the Rosicrucian Fraternity, 1615.

3. The Chymical Marriage of Christian Rosencreutz, anno 1459, circulated in MS. up to 1601. Published in 1616.

C. RC. CHRISTIAN ROSENCREUTZ (ROSYCROSS)



FIG. 97

*"POST CXX ANNOS PATEBO"*

THIS IS AN EXCEEDINGLY RARE PICTURE, THE ONLY PORTRAIT OF C.R.C. EVER SEEN BY THE AUTHOR IN THE COURSE OF MANY YEARS OF ROSICRUCIAN STUDY AND RESEARCH. IT IS TAKEN FROM MR. A. E. WAITE'S SPLENDID WORK "ON *"THE SECRET TRADITION OF FREEMASONRY,"*

**C. RC. begins his Travels.**—According to the Fama, he whom we shall call Christian Rosencreutz was born in 1378. The nar-

rator, one of the Brothers to whom the account of Father R.C. had been handed down and who was supposedly present at the opening of the Symbolic Tomb, continues—"the most godly and highly illuminated Father, our Brother C. RC." . . . "while yet in his growing years journeyed to the East, and there visited the Wise Men of Arabia." By them he was received, called by name and treated as one long expected.

**Damascus, Egypt and Fez.**—Prior to the beginning of his journey he had been educated in the cloister in 1383 and the journey itself was begun in 1393. This is sometimes spoken of as his journey to Damascus (Damasco). He arrived in the latter city in 1394 and was received by the Magi. The narrative continues—"Bro. C. RC. shipped himself over Sinus Arabicus (the Red Sea) into Egypt (1397) and later came to Fez, whither he had been directed by the Arabians. 1398 was the year of his arrival in Morocco.

**Damcar.**—The visit of Rosencreutz to Arabia and Egypt is spoken of as his visit to Damcar (Damascus and Cairo, the House of Wisdom being in the last named city) and it was during his Arabian studies that he translated the Book M. (Marginal, Liber Mundi) from Arabic into "good Latin."

**Visits Spain.**—After completing his studies in Fez, Rosencreutz "sailed with many costly things into Spain, hoping well, as he himself had so well and profitably spent his time in his travel, that the learned in Europe would highly rejoice with him . . . but it was to them a laughing matter." Spain was at that time a center of learning. His arrival in that country is known to have been in 1400.

**Returns to Germany.**—Disappointed in his efforts to enlist Spanish learning, he returned to Germany in 1402 and in 1407 associated with himself three Brothers, monks from the same cloister in which he had his early training; Brothers G. V., I. A. and I. O. With them he built the House of the Holy Spirit (Spiritus Sancti) in 1409, and also wrote the Book "M."

**Four becomes Eight.**—When the building of the House of the S. S. was completed, the original four Brethren concluded to augment their number to eight. Accordingly, Bros. R. C. (a cousin of C. RC.), G. G., F. B. and P. D. were accepted in 1410.

**The Eight Disperse.**—In 1412 the eight dispersed according to agreement into different countries, Bros. F. B. and P. D. remaining

with C. RC., while the other five departed on travels of benevolence and instruction.

**First Death.**—In 1413 we find C. RC. alone once more with R. C., his cousin, and I. O. This year witnessed the first loss by transition of a member of the original group. Frater I. O. passed to the Higher Life, and his passing is recorded in these words: “The first of this Fraternity which dyed, and that in England, was I. O., as Bro. C. long before had foretold him.” His transition was followed by that of Bro. P. D.

**Construction of the Vault.**—In 1415 the construction of the Tomb of the Master was begun, as stated in the F. F.—“After the death of I. O. Bro. R. C. rested not, but as soon as he could, called the rest together, and then, as we suppose, his grave was made.”

**Hermetic Romance; Passing of Christian Rosencreutz.**—In 1459 the “Hermetic Romance, or the Chymical Marriage of Christian Rosencreutz,” was written in High Dutch by Rosencreutz, himself, and in 1484 C. RC. himself passed to the Higher Life. The Corpus was buried and the Vault was Closed and Sealed. Yet in the F. F. we find these quaint words: “We did not know *when* our loving Father R. C. died.”

**Second Circle formed.**—After the construction of the Vault, begun in 1415, the Second Circle was formed. In 1600 Frater I. A. passed to the Higher Life and Frater K. N. became Magus.

**The Secret comes to the Third Row.**—1604 was a notable year for the Order. The writer of the F. F. says: “We (the Fraternity) . . . had no more but the bare names of the beginners (first Circle?), and all their successors to us. Yet there came into our memory a secret, which, through dark and hidden words and speeches of the Hundred Years, Bro. A., the successor of Bro. D., (who was of the last and second row of succession, and had lived amongst many of us), did impart unto us of the Third Row (Circle?) and succession.” “After that A. was deceased there succeeded to his place our loving Brother N. N.”

**Opening of the Vault.**—Christian Rosencreutz was born in 1378 and lived to be one hundred and six years old. One hundred and twenty years from this time brings us to the present year, 1604. In this year, the secret of the Tomb having been lost, Frater N. N. (K. N.?) “was minded to travel (or build, the terms being used alternately) and in the course of the alterations to his ‘building’ the Door of the Tomb of Rosencreutz was revealed, bear-

ing the following line: "POST CXX ANNOS PATEBO." (After One Hundred and Twenty Years I Shall Rise Again.)

The F. F. continues: "In the morning we opened the door and there appeared to our sight a vault of seven sides. . . . Although the sun never shined in the vault, nevertheless it was enlightened with another sun, which hath learned this from the sun, and was situated in the upper part of the center of the sieling. In the midst, instead of a tombstone, was a round altar, covered with a plate of brass, and thereon this engraven—"A. C. R. C. Hoc universi compendium unius mihi sepulchrum feci." (I have made this tomb a compendium of the universe.) Round the brim were the words "Jesus mihi omnia." (Jesus is all things to me.) In the middle were four figures, inclosed in circles, whose circumscription was:

#### The Legends.....

1. Nequaquam vacuum. (There is never a vacuum.)
2. Legis Jugum. (The Yoke of the Law.)
3. Libertas Evangelii. (The Liberty of the Gospel.)
4. Dei Gloria Intacta. (The untouched or unspoiled glory of God.)

**Discovery of the Corpus.**—Now, as we had not yet seen the dead body of our careful and wise Father, we therefore removed the altar aside; then we lifted up a strong plate of brass, and found a fair and worthy body, whole, and unconsumed. . . . In his hand he held a parchment called T., the which, next unto our Bible is our greatest treasure."

**Complete exegesis cannot be given.**—The complete exegesis of the Tomb of the Master cannot be given in print, as it is definitely formulated in the Instruction of the Degrees of the Grades as practiced in the Fraternity today. We give, however, for the information of the reader the following suggestion offered in an excellent little treatise. Construct a figure showing a circle surrounded by a seven sided one or heptagon, in turn surrounded by a dodecagon or twelve sided figure. The altar in itself will represent unity. Its four points will represent N. E. S. W. The heptagon will represent the seven sided tomb and the dodecagon the digits on the number written outside the Door of the Tomb.<sup>7</sup>

**The Figures.**—The figures are thus explained: "The Elements are ONE, the altar; FOUR, the quarters; SEVEN, the Vault, and TWELVE, the number outside the doorway.

“If the seven sided vault were represented by seven concentric circles, the diagram would serve for that of the Solar System, and A (the altar) would be the Sun, N. E. S. W. the quarters, B (the heptagon) the seven planets and C (the dodecagon) the Zodiac.” The tomb *would* in this case be a veritable compendium of the Universe.

**An alternate explanation.**—The same authors also liken the figure to the Vision of St. John. The altar becomes the Throne; N. E. S. W. become the Four Living Creatures; the heptagon represents the Seven Spirits that are before the Throne and the dodecagon the Twenty-four Elders (twice twelve).

**Jennings’ presentiment.**—Hargrave Jennings gives a diagrammatic figure which is not without interest in this connection. The small circle represents the ceiling of the Tomb and the large circle represents the floor of the Tomb. The Seven Sides of the Tomb represent the Seven Planets. The twelve outside the door are shown by the twelve Signs of the Zodiac and the Hierarchies. The connection between the terrestrial and the celestial suns is shown by the lines from the ceiling to the central circle on the floor of the Tomb.<sup>8</sup>

The F. F. closes with the words: “Sub umbra alarum tuarum, Jehova.” (Under the shadow of thy wings, Jehovah.)

**Identity of the Author of the Fama.**—That Francis Bacon, Lord Verulam, was the real author of the Fama is believed by some critics to be proven by a comparison with his work the “New Atlantis,” written just prior to his death in 1626. In this treatise is an account of a wondrous isle in the southern seas, the Island of Bensalem, ruled over by King Solamona (Solomon, Sol-Om-On). Of the inhabitants of the island it was said, they knew well most habitable parts of the world, but were themselves unknown. Of the Brethren of the Rosy Cross it was also said that although in the world, the world knew them not. (See note.)

**Parallels in the New Atlantis.**—The New Atlantis certainly identifies the inhabitants of the mystic isle with the Brothers of the Rosy Cross; it takes up two important features of the Fama, namely, the Society that was in the world yet unknown to the world except by suspicion, and the nature and general characteristics of the Rosy Cross Fraternity. The signature of the F. F. appears three times in the New Atlantis, and the Cavern or Vault, the Tomb of the Master, is likewise a central feature in the book.

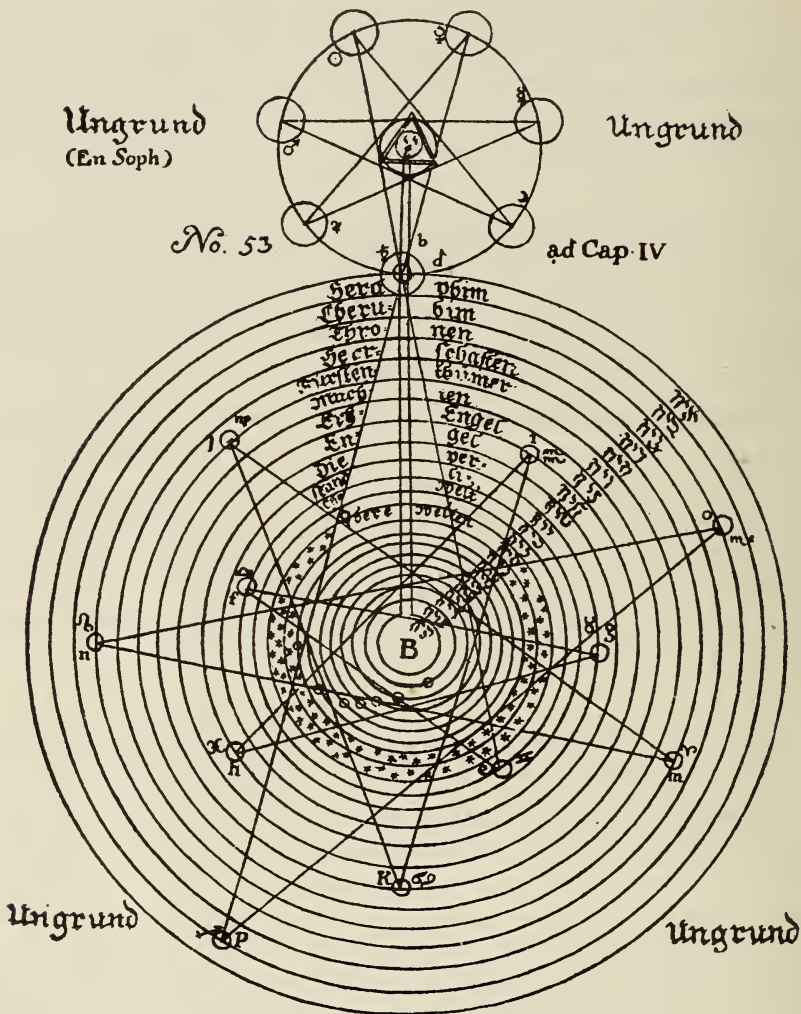


FIG. 98  
 A DIAGRAMMATIC PRESENTMENT OF THE TOMB  
 SYMBOLISM.  
 (From "The Rosicrucians," by Hargrave Jennings.)

**Elogium (Eulogium).**—The Parchment called "T" closes with the following Elogium:

Granum pectori Jesu insitum.

C. RC. ex nobili atque splendida Germaniae R. C. familia oriundus, vir sui seculi divinis revelationibus, subtilissimis imaginationibus, indefessis laboribus ad coelestia atque humana mysteria; arcanave admissus postquam suam (quam Arabico at Africano itineribus collejerat) plus quam regiam atque imperatoriam



Gazam suo seculo nondum convenientem, posteritati eruendam custodivisset et jam suarum Artium, ut et nominis, fides ac conjunctissimos heredes instituisset, mundum minutum omnibus motibus magno illi respondentem fabricasset hocque tandem preteritarum, praesentium, et futurarum, rerum compendio extracto, centenario major, non morbo (quem ipse nunquam corpore expertus erat, nunquam alios infestare sinebat) ullo pellente sed Spiritis Dei evocante, illuminatam animam (inter Fratrum amplexus et ultima oscula) fidelissimo Creatori Deo reddidisset, Pater delictissimus, Frater suavissimus, praeceptor fidelissimus, amicus integerimus, a suis ad 120 annos hic absconditus est.

**Signatures to the Fama.**—Beneath this Elogium the Brethren subscribed their names:

1. Fra. I. A. Fra. C. H. electione Fraternitatis caput.
2. Fra. G. V. M. P. C.
3. Fra. F. R. C. Junior hoeres S. Spiritus.
4. Fra. F. B. M. P. A. Pictor et Architectus.
5. Fra G. G. M. P. I. Cabalista.

Secundi Circuli

1. Fra. P. A. Successor, Fra. I. O. Mathematicus.
2. Fra. A. Successor, Fra. P. D.
3. Fra. R. Successor, Patris C. RC., cum Christo triumphantis.

At the end was written:

Ex Deo nascimur, in Jesu morimur, per Spiritum Sanctum reviviscimus.

**Closing Words of the Fama.**—We may appropriately close this account and digest, with the following lines from the Fama itself addressed to the learned of Europe, and as appropriately addressed to thinkers of today:

“So, according to the wil and meaning of Fra. C. RC., we his brethren request again all the learned in Europe who shal read (sent forth in five languages) this our Fama and Confessio, that it would please them with good deliberation to ponder this our offer, and to examine most nearly and sharply their arts, and behold the present time with all diligence, and to declare their minde, either communicato consilio or singulatim by print. And although at this time we make no mention either of our name or meetings, yet nevertheless every one’s opinion shal assuredly come to our hands, in what language soever it be, nor any body shal fail, whoso gives but his name, to speak with some of us, either by

word of mouth, or else, if there be some lett, in writing. And this we say for a truth, that whosoever shall earnestly, and from his heart, bear affection unto us, it shall be beneficial to him in goods, body and soul; but he that is false-hearted, or onely greedy of riches, the same first of all shal not be able in any manner of wise to hurt us, but bring himself to utter ruine and destruction. Also our building, although one hundred thousand people had very near seen and beheld the same, shal forever remain untouched, undestroyed, and hidden to the wicked world.

Sub umbra alarum tuarum, Jehova.

**Anagrams.**—The student who is expert in the solution or construction of anagrams will find a mine of research in the Latin texts written in the Tomb which if properly divined will reveal a wealth of information concerning the actual intent of the Rosicrucians at the time the legenda of the Tomb were given out.

**Dante, a Rosicrucian.**—The works of Dante are replete with Rosicrucian analogies and symbols. Reghellini of Scio treats of Dante as both Cabalist and Rosicrucian. The 18th Canto of the Purgatory contains the profoundest symbolism, the eagle, mystic ladder, Rose and Cross, pelican, Supper of the Lamb, Pillars of Faith, Hope and Charity, symbolic colors, geometrical figures, etc.<sup>9</sup>

**Greatest Treasure of the Rosicrucians.**—The greatest treasure of the Rosicrucians is, as it always has been, the Holy Bible. A work entitled "The Echo of the Divinely Illuminated Fraternity of the R. C.," 1615, asks the question whether the Gospel terminated the Secret Tradition of antiquity. It then proceeds to answer the question as follows: "By no means; CHRIST ESTABLISHED A NEW COLLEGE OF MAGIC AMONGST HIS DISCIPLES, AND THE GREATER MYSTERIES WERE REVEALED TO ST. JOHN AND ST. PAUL."

**Result of failure to understand the Holy Bible.**—It is the inability to appreciate, much less to understand, that the Holy Bible is itself a text book of the Lesser and Greater Mysteries that has caused so much dissention and denominationalism in the Christian Church of the New Dispensation. Rightly understood, it proves that Christ came not to change the Law but to fulfil it, and shows the continuity of organic religious revelation from the earliest times of the Hebraic dispensation up to the Apocalypse.

**Oath of the Alchemists.**—This faithful adherence to the teachings of the Bible and Gospel Sacraments is shown by the following, from the "Theatrum Chemicum Britannicum," by Elias

Ashmole, in the Breviary of Philosophy. It is the Oath of the Alchemists, whom he divided into Sons and Fathers.

“Will you with me tomorrow be content,  
*Faithfully to receive the Blessed Sacrament,*  
 Upon the Oath that I shall heere you give,  
 For ne gold, ne silver, so long as you live;  
 Neither for love you beare towards your kinne,  
 Nor yet to no great man, preferment to wynne,  
 That you disclose the seacret I shall you teach,  
 Neither by writing, nor by swift speech,  
 But only to him, which you be sure,  
 Hath ever searched after the seacrets of Nature,  
 To him you may reveal the seacrets of this Art,  
 Under the cover of Philosophie, before the world you depart.”

**What our Father Rosencreutz really was.**—Our Father Rosy Cross was to the Order what the Messiahs have been to Humanity in all ages, the reviver of the ancient teachings and practices, a living illustration of the potency of the underlying principles of the philosophy; and the parallels between him and the Master Jesus are numerous and interesting. Religion existed among men ages before Jesus came with his last and greatest revelation. In early boyhood we find him among the Wise Men of the Temple. So, too, with Christian Rosencreutz, the Order had its foundation and inception ages before his time, but he ushered in its renaissance at a time when further revealments were necessary, and to furnish the stimulus to the wave of philosophic, occult and scientific inquiry that is now manifesting in all its fullness of fruition. Somewhat like Jesus, we find him at the age of five entering the cloister, and at fifteen starting on his journey to the Wise Men of Arabia.

**Rosencreutz an Esoteric Name.**—Rosencreutz was an esoteric name, but the master-mind that it identified was intended to be and is, an example to all who seek the Hidden Mysteries and who have the perseverance to go forward with good intent to learn the wonders of God in the Natural World.

#### **Rosicrucianism not a matter of gloom.**—

NOTE—That Rosicrucianism is far from being a philosophy of asceticism, morbidity or gloom, is shown by the statement given by Bulwer Lytton, a Rosicrucian, in his “Zanoni”—The Rosicrucians lived among men, yet were apart from them. They could not be found because they had no *visible* organization or society. They are humble and quiet in exterior and yet judge the world somewhat beneath them in exterior show. They are quite indifferent as to putting their knowledge to commercial use. They do not seek

fame, and care not for distinction or honors. THEY ARE GENERALLY QUITE SOCIABLE." Initiates will understand what is meant by the term "Visible."

**Secrecy of the Rosicrucians.**—Because of the secrecy with which the Rosicrucians have always clothed themselves, doubt as to their existence has always existed. This doubt has usually emanated or originated from amongst those who sought information, not for the unselfish use of enhanced personal powers to be used for the benefit and uplift of humanity and the spread of Liberty, Equality and Fraternity throughout the world, but solely for personal preferment and advancement. SUCH HAVE ALWAYS FAILED TO FIND THE FRATERNITY, and if by chance their initial sincerity of intent did lead them to the doors of the Temple, its weakening or failure of maintenance resulted in their finding themselves lost to it.

**Charlatanism.**—This very secrecy has had an unfortunate result, namely, the creation of opportunity for imposture and charlatanism, which has been practised in every guise, under the name of Roscrucianism. But modern intelligence is showing thoughtful people the true way, and earnest seekers are finding that it is possible to discover the true Society, now, as always for centuries, not only existent but very much alive and at work. To him who is ready, a Teacher will be given, and to him who knocks at the Door of the Temple, entrance will be given.

**To Those Who Seek.**—Readers who are interested in the Rosicrucian Philosophy and Tradition, who seek entrance to the GRADES OF THE PATH and are willing to Obligate themselves to the serious study and work of the Society may find the Way thereto by addressing

THE SECRETARY GENERAL, S. . R. . I. . A. .

1429 Masonic Hall,

46 West 24th Street,

New York City.

#### QUESTIONS ON INSTRUCTION No. 14

1. What personage has been mostly written about in connection with Rosicrucianism?
2. Who have been the most prolific writers?
3. What does one encyclopaedist say?
4. What did Johann Valentin Andrea do?
5. What was the date of the first MS.

6. What was overlooked in connection with this?
7. What is the particular point of emphasis?
8. On what do Rosicrucians and Jacob Boehme agree?
9. What original works are recommended to students?
10. What attitude did Andrea later take toward the Order?
11. Who was the "Great English Rosicrucian"?
12. Who followed Fludd?
13. What did Elias Ashmole and others do?
14. How was the work of the Society to remain?
15. What is given as the exoteric meaning of the name "Rosicrucian"?
16. What is the antiquity of the Rose and Cross?
17. From what are the best poetic fictions of the Rosicrucians known?
18. How does the above picture the Elementals?
19. In what way is Man held to be superior?
20. What further agreement have the Rosicrucians with the Signatura Rerum?
21. What is known of the Rosicrucians at the Hague?
22. What is said of them in Germany?
23. When did the new Constitution appear?
24. Instance a notable German foundation.
25. Who were the Asiatic Brethren?
26. What were their degrees called?
27. Give an idea of the ritual of the "Theoretical Brethren."
28. Are Rosicrucians known to have existed in Mauritius?
29. What is the object of Alchemy stated to be in this Instruction?
30. What does the Hermetic System unite?
31. Is this philosophy included in Modern Rosicrucianism?
32. Are there any traces of Rosicrucianism in Denmark?
33. What was the Militia Crucifera Evangelica?
34. Were the Illuminati connected with the Rosicrucians?
35. What is the reason for the resume given in this Instruction?
36. What does the name of Christian Rosencreutz constitute?
37. What advice is given to the credulous?
38. Are Human Lives secret or exposed to any psychic?
39. Is the Canon of Occult Law perfectly understood at the present time?
40. Was Rosencreutz an historical character?
41. Was Rosencreutz the real name of the person who bore it?
42. Where was it derived?

43. What were the Three Great Treatises?
44. When did C. RC. begin his travels?
45. When did he go to Egypt and Morocco?
46. When did he go to Spain?
47. When did he return to Germany, and what did he do there?
48. What is the meaning of Damcar?
49. Did the original four ever increase their number?
50. Did the Eight remain together?
51. When was the first death in the original group? Who died?
52. When was the construction of the Vault begun?
53. When was the Hermetic Romance written, and by whom?
54. When did C. RC. die?
55. When was the Second Circle formed?
56. Who inherited the Secret of the Tomb?
57. When was the Vault opened, and how was it found to be?
58. What were the inscriptions?
59. How was the body of C. RC. found to be?
60. Give an idea of the symbolism of the Tomb.
61. What was Hargrave Jennings' presentiment?
62. Who is claimed as the real C. RC.?
63. What signatures are contained in the Fama?
64. Give a brief resume of the closing words of the Fama.
65. What is said of anagrams?
66. What was Dante said to be?
67. What is the Greatest Treasure of the Rosicrucians?
68. What has resulted from failure to understand the Bible?
69. What was the Oath of the Alchemists?
70. What does it show us?
71. Why so much secrecy in connection with Rosicrucianism?
72. How did charlatanism get the use of the name "Rosicrucianism"?
73. What was our Father Rosy Cross in reality?
74. What was the person who bore it intended to be to us?
75. Is Rosicrucianism a philosophy of asceticism, morbidity or gloom?

ADDENDA

## THE ROSIKRUCIAN TREE OF LIFE.

Arranged and drawn by Rt. Wor. Fr. Firmus IX° (Metropolitan).

EDITORIAL NOTE: The following chart of the Races was not drawn to accompany the text of this book, but was prepared as a special feature for "MERCURY," the official organ of the Societas Rosicruciana In America. The Races named thereon are those known and recognized by modern ethnological science. The Semites and Mongolians and a few others listed on this chart must be understood as belonging to the Post Atlantean times or the Aryan Epoch, and not the original Atlanteans themselves. The principal value of this chart lies in its excellent illustration of the progress of the Life Stream from its Divine Source through the Four Elements, focussing the Idea in the Divine Mind in the World's Humanity as we know it today. The title "Fifth Race" applies to the Fifth Great Root Race from Divinity and will include the seven general races indicated for the Aryan Epoch. One race will compose the Sixth Great Root Race to follow in the Sixth Epoch. This chart will be found to amplify the text of the book excellently, if the student will keep in mind that the seven races assigned to the Aryan Epoch on page 26 will be found on the chart to be included under the general classification of Homo Caucasicus, which was considered advisable to conform as closely as possible with accepted ethnological teachings.

This chart has been most carefully compiled, corrected and revised, and we believe it will be found one of the most accurate and complete presentations of the races of the world, ever put forth. It is a splendid symbolism of the famous Tree whose roots are in Heaven, and whose branches are on earth. This chart should be preserved by all occult students to whom it may come, for reference when studying the evolution of races, regardless of school, cult, or sect.

In the beginning the appointed God of a new creation took up his work in a space of the firmament which we now visualize and conceive of as the location of the Sun. In the beginning was "the Word," the seven-toned Ray of creation, — sent forth under the WILL of God; focussed through the Mind plane, or WISDOM of God; upon the zodiacal ethers, therein beginning the ACTIVITY of God, or, the Creation. Thus "The Lord made Heaven," (Fire and Air,) "and the Earth," (Water and Earth,) the Four Elements. The Life Ray, focussed through the archetypal patterns, "into the Water, into the Air," — "brought forth" the manifested forms upon the Earth of "every living creature;" — and "the Earth re-constructs the types which she receives," "in a constantly ascending scale of evolution."

In this evolution, four Life waves have surged forth and spent themselves; and the fifth, of our own evolution, having surged almost to its highest force is now manifesting in four lesser waves: — Homos Americanus, Mongolicus, Caucasicus and Ethiopicus. Each of these in turn has sent out numerous lesser vibrations or sub-races; 104 Americanus, 76 Mongolicus, 107 Caucasicus and 40 Ethiopicus. These comprise such races as occult and non-occult anthropology consider sufficiently individual to be accounted a distinct division of the Life-wave.

The Brotherhood teaches that there is already gathering behind one last surviving ripple of this wave, the power of the next great Surge, which will become the sixth in evolution. Some point to Australia, and some to North America as the scene of this resurgence. But it seems that North America will be the theatre of this evolution, since types and ideals evolve faster in those latitudes upon which the Sun works through Aries-Libra, or under the "Royal Arch," symbolizing the Spring, Summer and Harvesting evolution of the great Cosmic seasons.



## THE GREAT "SUN SPOT."



FIG. 100

Instruction VI, Page 136, Supplementary to the data already given regarding the physical features of our sun, we present the accompanying illustration from a drawing by Prof. Langley. This illustration shows the great Sun Spot of September 1870, and the structure of the photosphere. The grains or nodules that appear like snow flakes are from 400 to 600 miles each, across.

In the second instance, that of enabling the deaf to hear via the eyes, the instrument is known as the vocal Phonoscope. It is the invention of Mr. Linder, instructor of deaf mutes in Liepzig. It produces a visualization of sound vibrations by variations in the intensity of a tiny electric light and by rhythmic fluctuations of vibratory waves. *Pop. Sci. Mthly.*, July, 1920.

Music for the deaf is made possible by the instrument known as the Physiophone, said to be the invention of Mr. Gernsback. In this case the rhythm is communicated by electrode contact to the nervous system and music is actually translated directly *into* the individual. *Elec. Exper.*, April, 1920.

Instruction IV, Page 71. In regard to the state of consciousness of the Vegetable Kingdom, the researches of Sir Jagadis Chandra Bose of Calcutta are most illuminating. Sir Jagadis says,—“The activities which underlie life are imperceptible but we have been successful in devising various instruments of extreme sensibility which record the twitching throb of a plant under a shock, the time taken to perceive it, and the rate of impulse at which the message is sent along the conducting path of the plant. Automatic records are made of the living pulsation and the stupor that comes after the action of narcotics; and a definite signal is obtained at the exact moment of plant

death under various poisons." He describes trees as "mimic human beings." Needless to say, his researches open up vast fields for investigation. The effect of alcohol upon plants is the same as upon animals. Carbonic acid affects them as it does human life. Chloroform and ether stupefy and kill plants. The speed of the snail growth is the slowest we can understand. Researches show that plant growth is 6000 times slower. Darwin's researches in what he terms "Plant Minds" are also most interesting.

Instruction VI. Page 131. In reference to elements, it is stated that there are seventy. The Rosicrucian teachings hold to this postulate regardless of the fact that modern science would *appear* to have added many more. But scientists are not all agreed by any means upon the proper classification of these new additions, nor is there as yet a concensus of opinion regarding them. We affirm that when a new and accurate Table of Periodicity is prepared, all the new elements will be found to have their proper places and groupings still within the established seventy.

Instruction VI. Page 133. Value of Radium. At the time of going to press the market quotation for a gram of radium was \$120,000. At this figure, the purchase of  $2\frac{1}{4}$  grams of radium at a cost of \$225,000 is said to be the largest single order in the world. It was made by the State of New York for extensive cancer treatments. To give an idea of what this price means, we may say that gold is worth \$20.57 an ounce at the mint. There are 28.35 grams in an ounce. Therefore radium is worth at present market quotations, \$3,402,000 an ounce.



## DIETETICS

Much stress is laid upon dietetics by various organizations. The Societas Rosicruciana in America has no place in its curriculum for faddism of any kind. With this in mind, we will make clear our position in regard to vegetarianism. With the usual argument that eating flesh foods makes a charnel house of the human stomach and kindred pleasant postulates we have no sympathy. Flesh foods have been the staple of the human race in all ages and we have no latter day revelation to the contrary. They are required for muscle building for those who engage in muscular occupations. It is absurd to state that eating flesh foods reduces the vibrations of the human being to those of the Animal Kingdom. If this were true then the vegetarian argument would stand twice condemned, for confining one's self to a vegetable diet would obviously reduce one's vibrations to those of a vegetable. The truth is that the Animal or Human raises the vibrations of the food it eats, to its own vibratory status. A vegetarian diet IS useful under developmental conditions and for the period of development only, for the following reason. Vegetable products hold in suspension the requisite mineral and chemical constituents required by the human organism in such a state that they are more easily digested and assimilated than in the flesh foods. This means that less energy is required to be expended in the digestive processes.

Therefore, in developmental work, this energy may be conserved, and directed to the specific centers the student is seeking to energize and a vegetarian diet at such times is exceedingly valuable.

It is recorded of the Lord Buddha that on several occasions he defiled himself with pork which was one of the greatest contraventions of custom he could have committed, simply that he might not wound the feelings of some of his humble followers who had prepared a feast for him. It seems to be quite notable however among present day devotees of vegetarianism, that those who practice it expect to be made exceptions of wherever they may be and it is also notable that these devotees do not extend similar consideration to those who may not be followers of the cult. The true Initiate is above faddism and in no case have the Messiahs of Humanity set any such example for us to follow.

For most people a certain amount of flesh food is absolutely necessary. For others, a vegetarian diet is surely as necessary when it is indicated as a dietetic necessity. For still others, even, a more nearly fruit diet is indicated. The rule is, that one should eat what one's system requires as a matter of diagnostic indication, and not as the adherence to a more or less popular fad. The student whose life is quite sedentary will do much better on a purely vegetarian diet, and those engaged almost exclusively in spiritual work will wisely include a greater percentage of pure fruits in their diet. In other words, the individual human system will indicate its requirements according to the nature of the work or development demanded of it.

For those who desire to exercise intelligent selection of food values and constituents, we give herewith tables of the Nutritive Value of Food, prepared by W. O. Atwater, Ph. D., in the booklet known as Farmer's Bulletin No. 142, issued by the United States Department of Agriculture.

TABLES OF AVERAGE COMPOSITION  
OF COMMON AMERICAN FOOD PRODUCTS.

TABLE 1.

Food materials (as purchased).	Refuse.	Water.	Protein.	Fat.	Carbohy- drates.	Ash.	Fuel value per pound.
ANIMAL FOOD.							
Beef, fresh:	<i>Per ct.</i>	<i>Per ct.</i>	<i>Per ct.</i>	<i>Per ct.</i>	<i>Per ct.</i>	<i>Per ct.</i>	<i>Calo- ries.</i>
Chuck ribs.....	16.3	52.6	15.5	15.0	.....	0.8	910
Flank.....	10.2	54.0	17.0	19.0	.....	.7	1,105
Loin.....	13.3	52.5	16.1	17.5	.....	.9	1,025
Porterhouse steak.....	12.7	52.4	19.1	17.9	.....	.8	1,100
Sirloin steak.....	12.8	54.0	16.5	16.1	.....	.9	975
Neck.....	27.6	45.9	14.5	11.9	.....	.7	1,165
Ribs.....	20.8	43.8	13.9	21.2	.....	.7	1,135
Rib rolls.....	.....	63.9	19.3	16.7	.....	.9	1,055
Round.....	7.2	60.7	19.0	12.8	.....	1.0	890
Rump.....	20.7	45.0	13.8	20.2	.....	.7	1,090
Shank, fore.....	36.9	42.9	12.8	7.3	.....	.6	545
Shoulder and clod.....	16.4	56.8	16.4	9.8	.....	.9	715
Fore quarter.....	18.7	49.1	14.5	17.5	.....	.7	895
Hind quarter.....	15.7	50.4	15.4	18.3	.....	.7	1,045
Beef, corned, canned, pickled, and dried:							
Corned beef.....	8.4	49.2	14.3	23.8	.....	4.6	1,245
Tongue, pickled.....	6.0	58.9	11.9	19.2	.....	4.3	1,010
Dried, salted, and smoked.....	4.7	53.7	26.4	6.9	.....	8.9	790
Canned boiled beef.....	.....	51.8	25.5	22.5	.....	1.3	1,410
Canned corned beef.....	.....	51.8	26.3	18.7	.....	4.0	1,270
Mutton:							
Flank.....	9.9	39.0	13.8	36.9	.....	.6	1,770
Leg, hind.....	18.4	51.2	15.1	14.7	.....	.8	890
Loin chops.....	16.0	42.0	13.5	28.3	.....	.7	1,415
Fore quarter.....	21.2	41.6	12.3	24.5	.....	.7	1,235
Hind quarter, without tallow.....	17.2	45.4	13.8	23.2	.....	.7	1,210
Lamb:							
Breast.....	19.1	45.5	15.4	19.1	.....	.8	1,075
Leg, hind.....	17.4	52.9	15.9	13.6	.....	.9	860
Soups:							
Celery, cream of.....	.....	88.6	2.1	2.8	5.0	1.5	235
Beef.....	.....	92.9	4.4	.4	1.1	1.2	120
Meat stew.....	.....	84.5	4.6	4.3	5.5	1.1	305
Tomato.....	.....	90.0	1.8	1.1	5.6	1.5	185
Poultry:							
Chicken, broilers.....	41.6	43.7	12.8	1.4	.....	.7	305
Fowls.....	25.9	47.1	13.7	12.3	.....	.7	765
Goose.....	17.6	38.5	13.4	29.8	.....	.7	1,475
Turkey.....	22.7	42.4	16.1	18.4	.....	.8	1,060
Fish:							
Cod, dressed.....	29.9	58.5	11.1	.2	.....	.8	220
Halibut, steaks or sections.....	17.7	61.9	15.3	4.4	.....	.9	475
Mackerel, whole.....	44.7	40.4	10.2	4.2	.....	.7	370
Perch, yellow, dressed.....	35.1	50.7	12.8	.7	.....	.9	275
Shad, whole.....	50.1	35.2	9.4	4.8	.....	.7	380
Shad, roe.....	.....	71.2	20.9	3.8	2.6	1.5	600
Fish, preserved:							
Cod, salt.....	24.9	40.2	16.0	.4	.....	18.5	325
Herring, smoked.....	44.4	19.2	20.5	8.8	.....	7.4	755
Fish, canned:							
Salmon.....	.....	63.5	21.8	12.1	.....	2.6	915
Sardines.....	5.0	53.6	23.7	12.1	.....	5.3	950
Shellfish:							
Oysters, "solids".....	.....	88.3	6.0	1.3	3.3	1.1	225
Clams.....	.....	80.8	10.6	1.1	5.2	2.3	340
Crabs.....	52.4	36.7	7.9	.9	.6	1.5	200
Lobsters.....	61.7	30.7	5.9	.7	.2	.8	145

\* Refuse, oil.

TABLE 2.

Food materials (as purchased)	Refuse.	Water.	Protein.	Fat.	Carbohydrates.	Ash.	Fuel value per pound.
ANIMAL FOOD—continued.							
Eggs: Hens' eggs.....	Per ct. 11.2	Per ct. 65.5	Per ct. 13.1	Per ct. 9.3	Per ct. ....	Per ct. 0.9	Calories. 635
Dairy products, etc.:							
Butter.....		11.0	1.0	85.0	.....	3.0	3,410
Whole milk.....		87.0	3.3	4.0	5.0	.7	310
Skim milk.....		90.5	3.4	.3	5.1	.7	165
Buttermilk.....		91.0	3.0	.5	4.8	.7	160
Condensed milk.....		26.9	8.8	8.3	54.1	1.9	1,430
Cream.....		74.0	2.5	18.5	4.5	.5	865
Cheese, Cheddar.....		27.4	27.7	36.8	4.1	4.0	2,075
Cheese, full cream.....		34.2	25.9	33.7	2.4	3.8	1,885
VEGETABLE FOOD.							
Flour, meal, etc.:							
Entire-wheat flour.....		11.4	13.8	1.9	71.9	1.0	1,650
Graham flour.....		11.3	13.3	2.2	71.4	1.8	1,645
Wheat flour, patent roller process—							
High-grade and medium.....		12.0	11.4	1.0	75.1	.5	1,635
Low grade.....		12.0	14.0	1.9	71.2	.9	1,640
Macaroni, vermicelli, etc.....		10.3	13.4	.9	74.1	1.3	1,645
Wheat breakfast food.....		9.6	12.1	1.8	75.2	1.3	1,680
Buckwheat flour.....		13.6	6.4	1.2	77.9	.9	1,605
Rye flour.....		12.9	6.8	.9	78.7	.7	1,620
Corn meal.....		12.5	9.2	1.9	75.4	1.0	1,635
Oat breakfast food.....		7.7	16.7	7.3	66.2	2.1	1,800
Rice.....		12.3	8.0	.3	79.0	.4	1,620
Tapioca.....		11.4	.4	.1	88.0	.1	1,650
Starch.....					90.0		1,675
Bread, pastry, etc.:							
White bread.....		35.3	9.2	1.3	53.1	1.1	1,200
Brown bread.....		43.6	5.4	1.8	47.1	2.1	1,040
Graham bread.....		35.7	8.9	1.8	52.1	1.5	1,195
Whole-wheat bread.....		38.4	9.7	.9	49.7	1.3	1,130
Rye bread.....		35.7	9.0	.6	53.2	1.5	1,170
Cake.....		19.9	6.3	9.0	63.3	1.5	1,630
Cream crackers.....		6.8	9.7	12.1	69.7	1.7	1,925
Oyster crackers.....		4.8	11.3	10.5	70.5	2.9	1,910
Soda crackers.....		5.9	9.8	9.1	73.1	2.1	1,875
Sugars, etc.:							
Molasses.....					70.0		1,225
Candy <sup>b</sup> .....					96.0		1,680
Honey.....					81.0		1,420
Sugar, granulated.....					100.0		1,750
Maple sirup.....					71.4		1,250
Vegetables: <sup>c</sup>							
Beans, dried.....		12.6	22.5	1.8	59.6	3.5	1,520
Beans, Lima, shelled.....		68.5	7.1	.7	22.0	1.7	540
Beans, string.....	7.0	83.0	2.1	.3	6.9	.7	170
Beets.....	20.0	70.0	1.3	1	7.7	.9	160
Cabbage.....	15.0	77.7	1.4	.2	4.8	.9	115
Celery.....	20.0	75.6	.9	.1	2.6	.8	65
Corn, green (sweet), edible portion.....		75.4	3.1	1.1	19.7	.7	440
Cucumbers.....	15.0	81.1	.7	.2	2.6	.4	65
Lettuce.....	15.0	80.5	1.0	.2	2.5	.8	65
Mushrooms.....		88.1	3.5	.4	6.8	1.2	185
Onions.....	10.0	78.9	1.4	.3	8.9	.5	190
Parsnips.....	20.0	66.4	1.3	.4	10.8	1.1	230
Peas ( <i>Pisum sativum</i> ), <sup>e</sup> dried.....		9.5	24.6	1.0	62.0	2.9	1,565
Peas ( <i>Pisum sativum</i> ), <sup>e</sup> shelled.....		74.6	7.0	.5	16.9	1.0	440
Cowpeas, dried.....		13.0	21.4	1.4	60.8	3.4	1,505
Potatoes.....	20.0	62.6	1.8	.1	14.7	.8	295
Rhubarb.....	40.0	56.6	.4	.4	2.2	.4	60
Sweet potatoes.....	20.0	55.2	1.4	.6	21.9	.9	440
Spinach.....		92.3	2.1	.3	3.2	2.1	95
Squash.....	50.0	44.2	.7	.2	4.5	.4	100
Tomatoes.....		94.3	.9	.4	3.9	.5	100
Turnips.....	30.0	62.7	.9	.1	5.7	.6	120
Vegetables, canned:							
Baked beans.....		68.9	6.9	2.5	19.6	2.1	555
Peas ( <i>Pisum sativum</i> ), green.....		85.3	3.6	.2	9.8	1.1	235
Corn, green.....		76.1	2.8	1.2	19.0	.9	430
Succotash.....		75.9	3.6	1.0	18.6	.9	425
Tomatoes.....		94.0	1.2	.2	4.0	.6	95

<sup>a</sup> Refuse, shell.

<sup>b</sup> Plain confectionery not containing nuts, fruit, or chocolate.

<sup>c</sup> Such vegetables as potatoes, squash, beets, etc., have a certain amount of inedible material, skin, seeds, etc. The amount varies with the method of preparing the vegetables, and can not be accurately estimated. The figures given for refuse of vegetables, fruits, etc., are assumed to represent approximately the amount of refuse in these foods as ordinarily prepared.

TABLE 3.

Food materials (as purchased).	Refuse.	Water.	Protein.	Fat. <sup>a</sup>	Carbohy- drates.	Ash.	Fuel value per pound
VEGETABLE FOOD—continued.							
<b>Fruits, berries, etc., fresh: <sup>a</sup></b>	<i>Per ct.</i>	<i>Per ct.</i>	<i>Per ct.</i>	<i>Per ct.</i>	<i>Per ct.</i>	<i>Per ct.</i>	<i>Calo- ries.</i>
Apples.....	25.0	63.3	0.3	0.3	10.8	0.3	190
Bananas.....	35.0	48.9	.8	.4	14.3	.6	260
Grapes.....	25.0	58.0	1.0	1.2	14.4	.4	295
Lemons.....	30.0	62.5	.7	.5	5.9	.4	125
Muskmelons.....	50.0	44.8	.3	.....	4.6	.3	80
Oranges.....	27.0	63.4	.6	.1	8.5	.4	150
Pears.....	10.0	76.0	.5	.4	12.7	.4	230
Persimmons, edible portion.....	.....	66.1	.8	.7	31.5	.9	550
Raspberries.....	.....	85.8	1.0	.....	12.6	.6	220
Strawberries.....	5.0	85.9	.9	.6	7.0	.6	150
Watermelons.....	59.4	37.5	.2	.1	2.7	.1	50
<b>Fruits, dried:</b>							
Apples.....	.....	28.1	1.6	2.2	66.1	2.0	1,185
Apricots.....	.....	29.4	4.7	1.0	62.5	2.4	1,125
Dates.....	10.0	13.8	1.9	2.5	70.6	1.2	1,275
Figs.....	.....	18.8	4.3	.3	74.2	2.4	1,280
Raisins.....	10.0	13.1	2.3	5.0	68.5	3.1	1,265
<b>Nuts:</b>							
Almonds.....	45.0	2.7	11.5	30.2	9.5	1.1	1,515
Brazil nuts.....	49.6	2.6	8.6	33.7	3.5	2.0	1,485
Butternuts.....	86.4	.6	3.8	8.3	.5	.4	385
Chestnuts, fresh.....	16.0	37.8	5.2	4.5	35.4	1.1	915
Chestnuts, dried.....	24.0	4.5	8.1	3.3	56.4	1.7	1,385
Cocanuts.....	<sup>b</sup> 48.8	7.2	2.9	25.9	14.3	.9	1,295
Cocanut, prepared.....	.....	3.5	6.3	57.4	31.5	1.3	2,865
Filberts.....	52.1	1.8	7.5	31.3	6.2	1.1	1,430
Hickory nuts.....	62.2	1.4	5.8	25.5	4.3	.8	1,145
Pecans, polished.....	53.2	1.4	5.2	33.3	6.2	.7	1,465
Peanuts.....	24.5	6.9	19.5	29.1	18.5	1.5	1,775
Piñon ( <i>Pinus edulis</i> ).....	40.6	2.0	8.7	36.8	10.2	1.7	1,730
Walnuts, black.....	74.1	.6	7.2	14.6	3.0	.5	730
Walnuts, English.....	58.1	1.0	6.9	26.6	6.8	.6	1,250
<b>Miscellaneous:</b>							
Chocolate.....	.....	5.9	12.9	48.7	30.3	2.2	2,625
Cocoa, powdered.....	.....	4.6	21.6	28.9	37.7	7.2	2,160
Cereal coffee, infusion (1 part boiled in 20 parts water) <sup>c</sup> .....	.....	98.2	.2	.....	1.4	.2	30

<sup>a</sup> Fruits contain a certain proportion of inedible materials, as skin, seeds, etc., which are properly classed as refuse. In some fruits, as oranges and prunes, the amount rejected in eating is practically the same as refuse. In others, as apples and pears, more or less of the edible material is ordinarily rejected with the skin and seeds and other inedible portions. The edible material which is thus thrown away, and should properly be classed with the waste, is here classed with the refuse. The figures for refuse here given represent, as nearly as can be ascertained, the quantities ordinarily rejected.

<sup>b</sup> Milk and shell.

<sup>c</sup> The average of five analyses of cereal coffee grain is: Water 6.2, protein 13.3, fat 3.4, carbohydrates 72.6, and ash 4.5 per cent. Only a portion of the nutrients, however, enter into the infusion. The average in the table represents the available nutrients in the beverage. Infusions of genuine coffee and of tea like the above contain practically no nutrients.

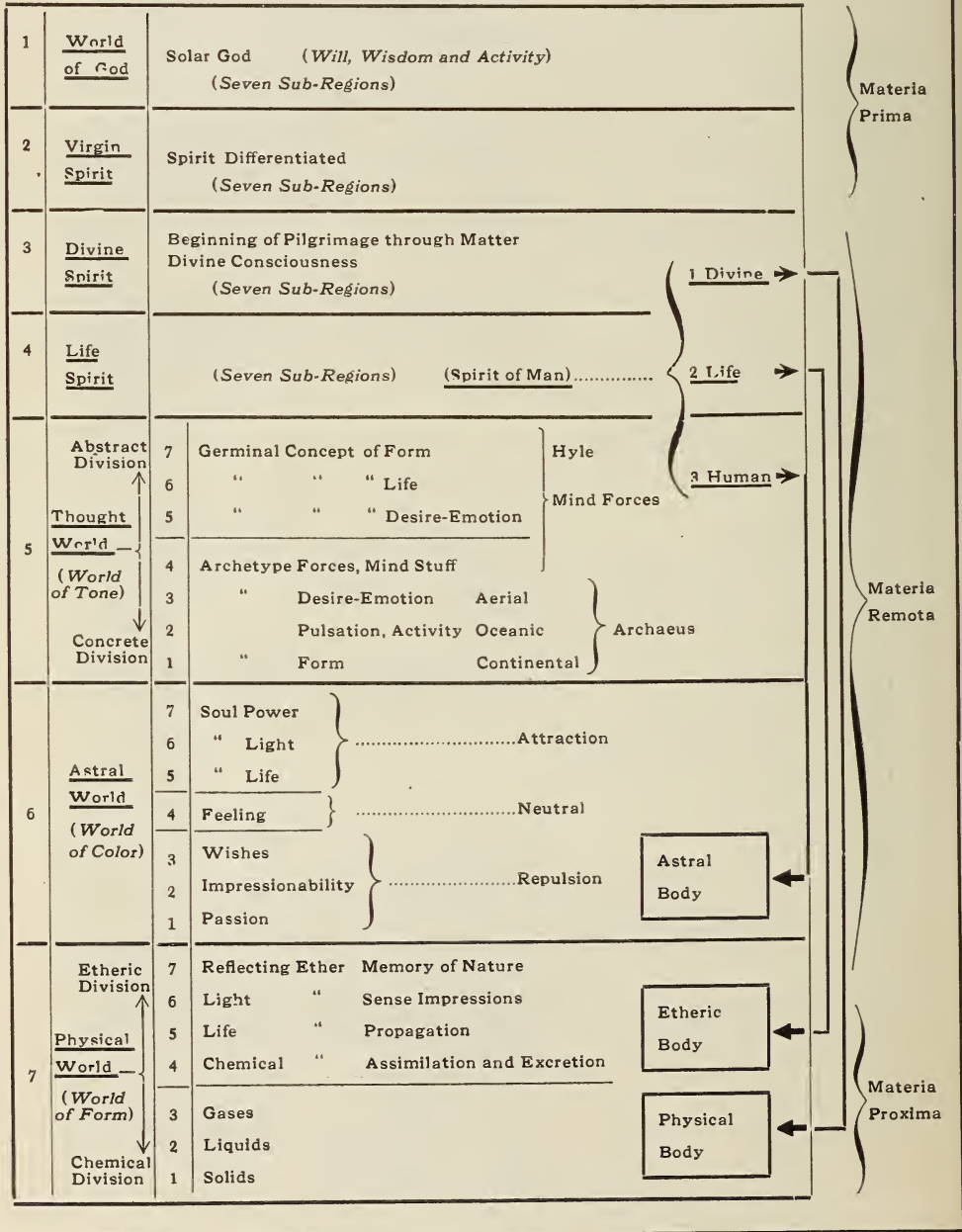
## TABLE

## COMPARATIVE PROGRESSIONAL DEVELOPMENT OF THE MICROCOSMIC BRAIN.

How the fetal human brain develops progressively in strict analogy to the evolutionary development of animal correspondences.

GEOLOGICAL		ANIMAL	HUMAN
Time : Age :	Archæan. Eozoic. Azoic.		
1. Time : Age : Era : Period : Rocks :	Paleozoic. Invertebrate Silurian, Upper and Lower. Cambrian to Lower Heidelberg. Sandstones, Limestones, Shale, Clay, Slate, and Gneiss.	Animal vestiges, All invertebrates, Mollusca, Crustacea, Polypes, Crustaceous Fishes.	Fœtal Human Brain, at one month, resembles that of Invertebrates.
2. Time : Age : Era : Period : Rocks :	Paleozoic. Fishes—Acrogens. Devonian and Carboni- ferous. Oriskany to Permian. Old Red Sandstones, Slate, Limestones, sec- ond and third Coal Mea- sures, Lower Red Sand- stones, Magnesian Lime- stones.	Animal vestiges. Primitive, but notably True Fishes.	Fœtal Human Brain at two months, resembles the brain of a Fish.
3. Time : Age : Era : Period : Rocks :	Mesozoic. Reptiles. Jura-Trias (Triassic, and Jura Triassic). Lower to Purbeck. New Red Sandstone, Marlstones.	Animal vestiges. All Reptiles, Lizards, Crocodiles, Frog Species, Turtles, Gigantic Reptiles and Extinct Monsters.	Fœtal Human Brain at three months, resembles a Turtle's.
4. Time : Age : Era : Period : Rocks :	Mesozoic. Reptiles. Cretaceous. Lower to Saranac. Upper and Lower Chalks, Marl, Oxford and Bath Oolites, Neo- comian.	Animal vestiges. Platipi, Semi-Aquatic and Land Animals, and Birds.	Fœtal Human Brain at four months is like to that of a Bird.
5. Time : Age : Era : Period : Rocks :	Cenozoic. Mammals. Tertiary. Eocene, Oligocene, Mio- cene. Green River, Igneous, and Nummulitic.	Animal vestiges. Marsupials, Rodents, Ruminati, and Animals that walk on their toes, as distinguished from fins and web feet.	Fœtal Human Brain at five months, resembles that of a Rodent; at six months, a Rumi- nant; at seven months, a Digitigrade.
6. Time : Age : Era : Period : Rocks :	Cenozoic. Mammals. Tertiary. Pliocene. English Crag, and Sub- Appennine Beds.	Animal vestiges. All the foregoing, with the addition of Four- Handed Animals or Quadrumanas, Monkeys and Anthropoids.	Fœtal Human Brain at eight months' develop- ment, resembles that of a Quadrumanus or Monkey.
7. Time : Age : Era : Period : Rocks :	Cenozoic. Mammal. Quaternary or Post- Tertiary. Glacial, Champlain, Recent. Pleistocene, Contempo- rary Deposits, Meteor- ites, Cavernous.	Animal vestiges. Practically all the fore- going with excessive in- crease of class, genus, species, and type, also MAN, the first true two-handed animal or Bimana.	Fœtal Human Brain at nine months' develop- ment has become that of a true Human Being or Bimana.

**Chart of the Seven World Regions in the Seventh Cosmic Region**  
**823, 543 Hierarchies**







A ROSICRUCIAN PRAYER SYMBOL.

By FR. FIRMUS, IX°.

The Christ taught that prayer was very important. He gave instructions how to pray, and gave actual prayers. St. Paul said, "*continue*" in prayer.

Definitions as to what prayer really is or should be, differ. One's conception of prayer is determined by his conception of the Power to whom he prays. Different religions of the world teach prayer in widely different ways:—the Mohammedan to Allah via Mahomet; Protestants to God principally through Jesus Christ; Catholics largely through the Blessed Virgin Mary, Mother of Jesus.

But Rosicrucians have the most sublime conception of prayer that has ever been revealed to worshippers in this world. It is profound in Wisdom, Cosmic in conception and must, other things being equal be the most potent of all forms of prayer.

A brief summary of the following symbol will show what the Rosicrucian concentrates upon in making his invocation.

The Circle is the symbol of the Cosmic ALL—the ABSOLUTE.

The Aspirational Triangle (Apex upward), is the symbol of the SUPREME BEING.

The Operative Triangle (Apex downward), is the symbol of the SOLAR GOD.

The Cross is the symbol of the INDWELLING SPIRIT of our Planet Earth, the CHRISTOS.

The Rose is the symbol of the Virgin Spirit EGO.

The power of the Rosicrucian Prayer is greatly intensified by the concept of unity, which runs in unbroken potency from the EGO *through* and *in* each of these exalted Powers. The symbol illustrates this unity. It shows the Supreme Being as differentiated *not from* but *within* the Absolute.

This is indicated by the influx of the Absolute at the points of the Triangle. It also shows the Solar God as differentiated *within* the Supreme Being (note influx at outer points of the triangle), and influx from the Absolute at inner points of the triangle.

It also shows the Christos differentiated *within* the Solar God, but still the Unity through the Solar influx (Arms of the Cross) and from the Supreme Being and the Absolute (Pillar of the Cross).

And in the center of the Super Trinity, with its roots in the Absolute, its stem in the Supreme Being and the Solar God, and its Flower in the Heart of the Christos, is "the Sacred Symbolic "ROSE."

Through this symbol the Rosicrucian may open veil after veil of the Temple, until his prayer can ascend to the veritable Holy of Holies.

## A SPLENDID GEOLOGIC EXHIBIT IN NEW YORK CITY.



FIG. 101  
AN OVERTURNED FOLD BETWEEN NELSON AND SHAKESPEARE  
AVES., BRONX, NEW YORK CITY.

(Photo by Khei.)

One of the many interesting features presented by a study of the geology of New York City and its Metropolitan District. This example is recommended to the consideration of Rosicrucian students, and we would be glad to have opinions as to whether it represents the "competent" or "incompetent" types. Rosicrucianism is not necessarily a study of geology, but it is a study of Nature, for Nature is the Book in which the character of God is written.

## CHANGES IN THE EARTH'S CRUST.

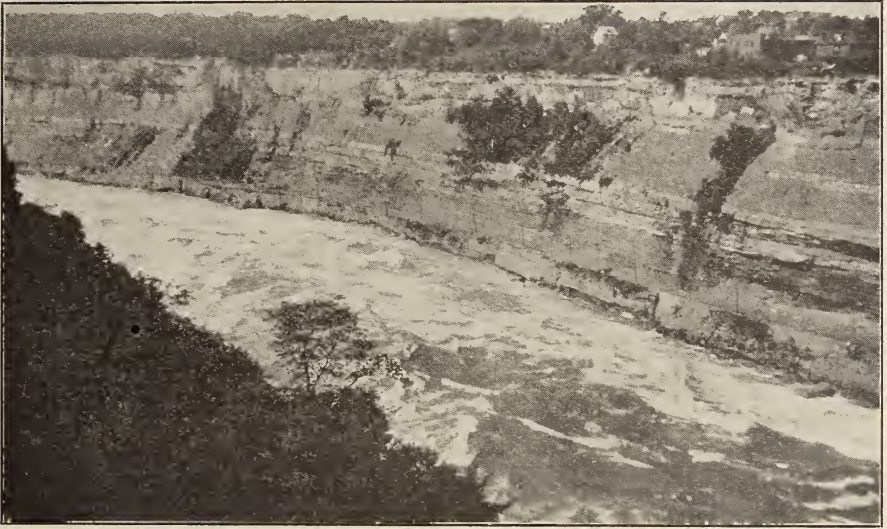


FIG. 102  
 NIAGARA RIVER AND GORGE, SHOWING RIVER MARKS  
 AND PRESENT RAPIDS.

(Photo by G. E. S. Miller.)

This excellent photograph was obtained after our Instructions on the activities of the Earth Regent and the changes in the Earth's Crust had gone to press. The picture illustrates the large way in which the "Nature Forces" work. Originally there was but one fall, located at Queenston fed only by Lake Erie. That was between 35,000 and 50,000 years ago. At that time the Great Lakes as then constituted emptied either through the Mississippi or the Ottawa Valley. A gradual tilting of the earth's crust threw the balance in favor of the St. Lawrence Valley, which gives us the Niagara of history and today. Some geologists believe that a reversal of this tilting is now going on and that at some remote period Lakes Huron, Superior and Michigan will again empty into the Mississippi. The cataract flows over limestone formations older than Alps, Pyrenees or Himalayas. In 1678 there were three falls and the Canadian Cataract was as far down stream as the American. The Canadian Cataract has receded several hundred feet in the past 242 years and goes back at the rate of about five feet per year while the American Cataract is comparatively stationary. The water is said to be 30 feet deep where it goes over the Canadian fall, and over 20,000,000 tons of water pass over the Cataract every hour, 95% over the Canadian and 5% over the American. The Cataract has eaten its way up from Queenston forming the gorge shown in the photograph.



## REFERENCES

In order to show the close approximation between the Rosicrucian teachings and those of academic science, religion and philosophy, quotations have been freely made from the following well known authorities, together with references to the works of occult writers of repute.

The numbers in the left hand column correspond to those given in the paragraphs of the text of each Instruction. The numbers in the extreme right hand column indicate the page in the present volume in which the reference number occurs.

## INSTRUCTION No. 1.

1 Sandivogius, Adept, 1650.....	1
2 Bible, Genesis i-26, 27.....	2
3 Secret Doctrine, 1-650, 295,—ii-675.....	3
4 Kabalah Unveiled, Mathers, p. 177, Ch. xxvii.....	4
5 Secret Doctrine, Vol. 1, p. 107.....	4
6 Hartmann, Secret Symbols of the Rosic. Voc. p. 5, "Life.".....	5
7 John iv-24. ....	6
8 Heindel, Cosmo Concep. p. 374. ....	6
9 " " " " p. 374 and Nicene Creed. ....	6
10 " " " " p. 375 " " " " ....	6
11 " " " " p. 375. ....	7
12 Nicene Creed. ....	7
13 Ros. Rit. O-O ....	7
14 Heindel, Cosmo Concep. p. 374, John. i-3. ....	7
15 Hartmann, Sec. Symb. Voc. p. 2 ....	7
16 " " " " p. 4 ....	8
17 " " " " p. 2 ....	13
18 Steiner, Out. Occ. Sci. p. 31 ....	15
19 " " " " p. 44 ....	15
20 " " " " p. 35 ....	15
21 " " " " p. 33 ....	15
22 Rosic. Mass. ....	15

## INSTRUCTION No. 2.

1 Men of the Old Stone Age, Henry Fairfield Osborn, p. 18.....	29
2 " " " " " " " " " " p. 13.....	33
3 " " " " " " " " " " p. vii, Preface. ....	34
4 " " " " " " " " " " p. vii, " " ....	35

## INSTRUCTION No. 3.

All References Noted in the Text.

## INSTRUCTION No. 4.

1 Standard. (Crystalloid) .....	66
2 Standard. (Protoplasm) Botany, p. 1, C. E. Bessey, .....	67
3 " " " " " " " " " " Chemical Physiology, p. 186, .....	67
4 Steiner, Outlines of Occult Science, p. 177, .....	67
5 Heindel, Cosmo-Conception, p. 78, .....	68
6 Standard. (Reason) .....	73
7 Steiner, Outlines of Occult Science, p. 172, .....	81
8 " " " " " " " " " " p. 33, .....	83

## INSTRUCTION No. 5.

1 Rosicrucian Creed. Other references are given in the text. ....	90
2 Steiner, Out. Occ. Sci. p. 88. ....	109

## INSTRUCTION No. 6.

1	Standard.	113
2	Henry Smith Williams, In "Miracles of Science," p. 5	113
3	Standard.	115
4	"	115
5	"	115
6	Henry Smith Williams, In "Miracles of Science," p. 6	115
7	" " " " " " " " p. 7	115
8	" " " " " " " " p. 7	115
9	" " " " " " " " p. 8	117
10	" " " " " " " " p. 9	117
11	" " " " " " " " p. 10	117
12	" " " " " " " " p. 18	118
13	" " " " " (Prof. Svante Arrhenius) p. —	118
14	" " " " " "Miracles, etc. etc. p. 21	118
15	" " " " " " " " p. 21	118
16	" " " " " " " " p. 23	118
17	" " " " " " " " p. 9	119
18	" " " " " " " " p. 43	121
19	" " " " " " " " p. 51	121
20	Prof. W. W. Campbell, Lick Observatory.	121
21	Henry Smith Williams, in Miracles, etc. etc. p. 51-52	122
22	Young.—General Astronomy p. 401	122
23	" " " " p. 407	123
24	Henry Smith Williams, In "Miracles of Modern Science, p. 58	123
25	" " " " " " " " p. 71	125
26	" " " " " " " " p. 72	125
27	" " " " " " " " p. 84	125
28	" " " " " " " " p. 111	125
29	Standard, (Mass)	126
30	Robert Kennedy Duncan, in "The New Knowledge" p. 11	126
31	" " " " " " " " p. 11	126
32	Standard	126
33	"	126
34	Robt. Kennedy Duncan, F. C. S., in "The New Knowledge" p. 250	127
35	" " " " " " " " p. 250-1	127
36	Sir J. J. Thomson, quoted by Williams in "Miracles" etc p. 135	128
37	" " " " " " " " p. 135	128
38	" Joseph Thomson	128
39	" " " " " " " "	128
40	Prof. Osborne Reynolds, Owens College, Manchester. Explained by Prof. John Mackenzie, of Mineapolis. Quoted by Williams, p. 136	128
41	" " " " " " " " p. 136	128
42	" " " " " " " " p. 137	128
43	" " " " " " " " p. 137	129
44	" " " " " " " " p. 140	129
45	Profs. Stewart and Tait, Quoted by Duncan, p. 242	130
46	Sir J. J. Thomson " " Williams, p. 130	130
47	Henry Smith Williams, in "Miracle of Science" p. 109	130
48	Robt. Kennedy Duncan, in "The New Knowledge" p. 1	131
49	" " " " " " " " p. 6	131
50	" " " " " " " " p. 76-7	131
51	" " " " " " " " p. 248	132
52	" " " " " " " " p. 171	132
53	" " " " " " " " p. 82	132
54	" " " " " " " " p. 148	133
55	" " " " " " " " p. 148	133
56	" " " " " " " " p. 95	133
57	" " " " " " " " p. 147	133
58	" " " " " " " " p. 151	134

59	Henry Smith Williams	" Miracles, etc.	p. 123	134
60	"	"	p. 117	134
61	Robt. Kennedy Duncan, in	"The New Knowledge,"	p. 179	134
62	"	"	p. 187	134
63	"	"	p. 205	135
64	Prof. Chas. A. Young, Princeton, quoted by	Duncan,	p. 228	135
65	Lord Kelvin	"	p. 228	135
66	Prof. Ernest Rutherford, Manchester University.		p. 231	136
67	Prof Clerk-Maxwell	"	p. 233	136
68	Sir William Ramsey,	"	p. 256	137
69	Robt. Kennedy Duncan, in	"The Knowledge"	p. 257	137
70	H. B. Curtis, Lick Observ. Quo. in	"Miracles of Science.	p. 46	137

## INSTRUCTION, No. 7.

1	Britannica, "Creed," look up individual author.	144
2	"	145
3	Steiner, Outlines of Occult Science. p. 292	158
4	"	158
5	"	160
6	Britannica, "Creed," look up individual author.	160

## INSTRUCTION No. 8.

1	Isabel M. Lewis, Naut. Almanac Off. U. S. Naval Obser., Wash., Aug., 1919,	166
2	Key to the Universe, Curtis p. 230.	172
3	Outlines of Occult Science, Steiner, p. 427	173
4	"	173
5	Mackey's Sphinxiad, The Mythological Astronomy of the Ancients Demonstrated. p. 68	178
6	Where did Life Begin? G. Hilton Scribner.	179
7	"	179
8	"	180
9	"	180
10	"	182
11	"	182
12	"	183
13	Prof. Wm. Crookes, Address, Brit. Assn. Sc.	184
14	Where Did Life Begin? Scribner.	187
15	Elec. Experimenter, July, 1920.	189

## INSTRUCTION No. 9.

1	Rev. Text Book of Geology, Dana. p. 7-8. Also quoting Murray.	195
2	Dana, p. 204	195
3	" p. 236	196
4	" p. 204-205	196
5	" p. 206	196
6	Extract from J. H. Jeans, in "Popular Astronomy," June-July, 1919. Vol. xxvii No. 6, Whole No. 266	196
7	Blavatsky. Secret Doctrine, Vol. 1, p. 40	197
8	Dana, p. 125	198
9	" p. 137	198
10	" p. 168	198
11	" p. 170	198
12	Mackey's Sphinxiad. (Cyclops) p. 67	199
13	Dana, p. 171	199
14	" p. 122	200
15	" p. 183	201
16	" p. 204	201
17	" p. 189-190	201
18	" p. 189	201
19	New York Herald, N. Y. World, Journal, May 27th.	202

20	Heindel, Cosmo Conception, p. 510	202
21	Dana, p. 404	204
22	Britannica, Vol. 28, p. 179	206
23	“ “ p. 191	207
24	“ “ p. 191	207
25	“ “ p. 192	207
26	“ “ p. 192	208
27	Heindel, Cosmo-Conception, p. 506	210
28	“ “ p. 278	213
29	Steiner, Outlines of Occult Science, p. 243	213
30	“ “ “ “ p. 243	214
31	Heindel, Cosmo-Conception, p. 289-291	214
32	Steiner, Outlines of Occult Science, p. 245-246	215
33	“ “ “ “ p. 247	215
34	“ “ “ “ p. 147	216
35	Steiner, Outlines of Occult Science, p. 158	216
36	“ “ “ “ p. 241	216
37	“ “ “ “ p. 250	216

## INSTRUCTION No. 10.

1	Dana, Rev. Text Book of Geology, p. 204	222
2	“ “ “ “ “ “ p. 204	222
3	“ “ “ “ “ “ p. 406-407	225
4	“ “ “ “ “ “ p. 410	226
5	Barnum Brown, Nat'l. Geog. Mag. May, 1920.	228
6	Osborn, Origin and Evolution of Life, p. 231	232
7	“ “ “ “ “ “ p. 226	235
8	Webster,	235
9	Minchin, E. A., 1916, (Osborn, P. 92). p. 32	237
10	Osborn, (As above). p. 93	237
11	Nageli. (1884).	238
12	Osborn. p. 94	238
13	“ p. 94	238
14	“ p. 95	238
15	“ p. 98	239
16	Wilson, E. B. 1906. p. 434	239
17	Osborn, p. 77-78	239
18	“ p. 99	239
19	Wager, Harold, 1915. p. 468	240
20	Pirsson, L. V. and Schuchert, Ch., 1915. p. 164	241
21	Osborn, p. 101	241
22	“ p. 103	241
23	“ p. 245	241
24	“ p. 249-251	243
25	“ p. 255	243
26	“ p. 255	244
27	C. C. Adams, Mercury, Vol. 4, No. 5.	248
28	Holy Bible, Galatians vi-7.	248
29	Holy Bible, Matthew v-26.	249
30	“ “ “ “ “ “ xxv, 23.	249

## INSTRUCTION No. 11.

1	Standard. (Monera)	257
2	“ (Ameba)	257
3	Rosicrucian Symboloy, Khei.	258
4	Prof. H. E. Walter, "The Human Skeleton." p. 57-58	258
5	Haeckel, Ernst. Hist. of Creation. Vol. 1, p. 85	261
6	“ “ “ “ “ “ p. 12	261
7	“ “ “ “ “ “ p. 12	261
8	“ “ “ “ “ “ p. 13	262
9	“ “ “ “ “ “ p. 14	262
10	“ “ “ “ “ “ p. 15	262
11	“ “ “ “ “ “ p. 86	262
12	“ “ “ “ “ “ p. 313	262



13	Heindel, Cosmo Conception, p. 228 .....	262
14	C. G. Leland, The Alternate Sex, p. 34 .....	262
15	" " " " " p. 35 .....	263
16	Haeckel, Hist. Crea. Vol. 1. p. 98-99 .....	263
17	" " " " " p. 65 .....	264
18	" " " " " p. 100 .....	264
19	" " " " " p. 202 .....	266
20	Leland, Alternate Sex, p. 35 .....	266
21	Haeckel, Hist. Crea. Vol. 1. p. 281 .....	267
22	" " " " " p. 183 .....	269
23	Leland, Alt. Sex. p. 129 .....	269
24	Dr. W. H. Ballou, N. Y. American, Aug. 17, 1919 .....	270
25	Nat'l Geog. Mag. Dr. Jos. (Wm.) Showalter, Vol. xxxvi, No. 2, p. 177.....	270
26	Nat'l. Geog. Mag. Dr. Jos. (Wm.) Showalter, p. 169 .....	270
27	" " " " " " " p. 167 .....	270
28	World Almanac, 1919 p. 52 .....	270
29	Prof. Herbert Eugene Walter, (Human Skeleton) .....	271
30	" " " " " " " .....	271
31	" " " " " " " .....	272
32	" " " " " " " .....	272
33	Dr. Dudley H. Morris, Dept. Pathology, N. Y. Coll. P. & S. ....	272
34	H. E. Walter, (Genetics) .....	274
35	Dr. Richard S. Lull, Yale. Organic Evolution. ....	275
36	American Museum of Natural History, N. Y. ....	275
37	Prof. Simon Newcomb. ....	275
38	Alfred Binet, The Psychic Life of Organisms p. 28 .....	276
39	" " " " " " " p. 77 .....	277
40	Dr. Daniel Trembly MacDougall, Director, Bot. Dept. Carnegie Institu. Wash. Quoted by John W. Harding. ....	278
41	Standard, .....	278
42	Prof. Osborn, Origin and Evolution of Life. p. 32 .....	279
43	" " " " " " " p. 32-36 .....	280
44	" " " " " " " p. 37 .....	281
45	" " " " " " " p. 90 .....	281
46	" " " " " " " p. 104 .....	281
47	Ernst, A. The New Thoma, See note. Osborn, p. 286. ....	281
48	Prof. Osborn, Origin and Evolution of Life. p. 286 .....	282
49	" " " " " " " p. 286 .....	282
50	" " " " " " " p. 286 .....	283
51	Prof. C. Wm. Beebe, The Bird, its Form and Function. Curator of Orni- thology at N. Y. Zoological Park. ....	285
52	Dr. W. H. Ballou, D. Sc. N. Y. American, Sun. 1916. ....	285
53	Dr. W. H. Ballou, A. M., Ph. D., D. S., N. Y. American. ....	286
54	N. Y. Times, Sun. Oct. 21, 1906. ....	286
55	A. J. Atkins, M. D., "The Life Principle." 1905. ....	287

## INSTRUCTION No. 12.

1	Britannica, (Kabalah) Vol. xv. p. 620 .....	296
2	Sacred Writings (Books) Vol. 4, p. 157-158 .....	297
3	Buddhist Catechism, p. 31 .....	300
4	" " " p. 32 .....	301
5	" " " p. 37 .....	301
6	" " " p. 37 .....	301
7	" " " p. 40 .....	302
8	" " " p. 46 .....	302
9	" " " p. 96 .....	303
10	A Suggestive Inquiry into the Hermetic Mystery, Atwood, p. 105-106.....	308
11	A Suggestive Inquiry into the Hermetic Mystery, Atwood, p. 106.....	308
	(See note of refs. bottom of Note 4) .....	308
12	A Suggestive Inquiry into the Hermetic Mystery, Atwood, p. 109 .....	308
	(See note of refs. Note 9.) .....	308

13 A Suggestive Inquiry into the Hermetic Mystery, Atwood, p. 139 .....	308
(See note 70 refs.)	
14 A Suggestive Inquiry into the Hermetic Mystery, Atwood, p. 533-534.....	309
15 Electrical Experimenter, April, 1919. p. 860 .....	311
16 Secret Doctrine, Vol.1, p. 105 .....	312
17 " " " Ft. Note, p. 105 .....	312
18 Also quoted by Heindel, Cos. Con. 2nd Ed. p. 416 .....	313
19 Max Heindel, Cos. Con. 2nd. Ed. p. 421 .....	313

## INSTRUCTION No. 14.

1 Italics ours .....	352
2 Britannica, Vol. xxiii-p. 737 Art. Rosicrucian. Also see Gardiner's Catalog Raisonne of Works on the Occult Sciences. London, 1903.....	352
3 Heckethorn's "The Secret Societies of all Ages and Countries. Vol. 1, p. 223. ....	353
4 Jacob Bohme and the Alchemists. Dr. von Harliss. Leipzig, 1882, 2nd. ed.	359
5 Heckethorn, Vol. 1, p. 230 .....	360
6 John Yarker,—Arcane Schools, p. 204. ....	362
7 The Rosicrucians. By Bros. H. C. and K. M. B. London. ....	368
8 Hergrave Jennings, The Rosicrucians, Their Rites and Mysteries, Plate 8. ....	369
9 King. Remains of the Gnostics. ....	372









Deacidified using the Bookkeeper process.  
Neutralizing agent: Magnesium Oxide  
Treatment Date: Nov. 2004

## Preservation Technologies

A WORLD LEADER IN PAPER PRESERVATION  
111 Thomson Park Drive  
Cranberry Township, PA 16066  
(724) 779-2111



**APR 82**

N. MANCHESTER,  
INDIANA 46962



LIBRARY OF CONGRESS



0 012 903 099 9

